AIP

AERONAUTICAL INFORMATION PUBLICATION

UNITED STATES OF AMERICA

TWENTY−EIGHTH EDITION **DATED 21 MARCH 2024**

AMENDMENT 2

20 FEB 2025

CONSULT NOTAM FOR LATEST INFORMATION

DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

FEDERAL AVIATION ADMINISTRATION

AIP Amendment 2

Page Control Chart

20 FEBRUARY 2025

REMOVE PAGES	DATED	INSERT PAGES	DATED
GEN 0.4−1 through GEN 0.4−3	5 SEP 24	GEN 0.4− through GEN 0.4−3	20 FEB 25
GEN 1.7−39	21 MAR 24	GEN 1.7−39	21 MAR 24
GEN 1.7−40	21 MAR 24	GEN 1.7−40	20 FEB 25
GEN 1.7−67	5 SEP 24	GEN 1.7−67	5 SEP 24
GEN 1.7−68 and GEN 1.7−69	5 SEP 24	GEN 1.7−68 and GEN 1.7−69	20 FEB 25
GEN 1.7−70	5 SEP 24	GEN 1.7−70	5 SEP 24
GEN 1.7−101	5 SEP 24	GEN 1.7−101	5 SEP 24
GEN 1.7−102 and GEN 1.7−103	5 SEP 24	GEN 1.7−102 and GEN 1.7−103	20 FEB 25
GEN 1.7−104	5 SEP 24	GEN 1.7−104	5 SEP 24
GEN 1.7−105	5 SEP 24	GEN 1.7−105	20 FEB 25
GEN 1.7−106	5 SEP 24	GEN 1.7−106	5 SEP 24
GEN 3.2−1	21 MAR 24	GEN 3.2−1	20 FEB 25
GEN 3.2−2	21 MAR 24	GEN 3.2−2	21 MAR 24
GEN 3.2−9	21 MAR 24	GEN 3.2−9	20 FEB 25
GEN 3.2−10	21 MAR 24	GEN 3.2−10	21 MAR 24
GEN 3.4−11	21 MAR 24	GEN 3.4−11	21 MAR 24
GEN 3.4−12	21 MAR 24	GEN 3.4−12	20 FEB 25
GEN 3.4−19 and 3.4−20	21 MAR 24	GEN 3.4−19 and 3.4−20	20 FEB 25
GEN 3.5−9	21 MAR 24	GEN 3.5−9	21 MAR 24
GEN 3.5−10 through GEN 3.5−94	21 MAR 24	GEN 3.5−10 through GEN 3.5−95	20 FEB 25
ENR 0.4−1 through ENR 0.4−4	5 SEP 24	ENR 0.4−1 through ENR 0.4−4	20 FEB 25
ENR 1.4−11	21 MAR 24	ENR 1.4−11	20 FEB 25
ENR 1.4−12	21 MAR 24	ENR 1.4−12	21 MAR 24
ENR 1.4−15	21 MAR 24	ENR 1.4−15	21 MAR 24
ENR 1.4−16 through ENR 1.4−19	21 MAR 24	ENR 1.4−16 through ENR 1.4−19	20 FEB 25
ENR 1.5−15	5 SEP 24	ENR 1.5−15	5 SEP 24
ENR 1.5−16 through ENR 1.5−18	5 SEP 24	ENR 1.5−16 through ENR 1.5−18	20 FEB 25
ENR 1.5−19 through ENR 1.5−28	21 MAR 24	ENR 1.5−19 through ENR 1.5−28	20 FEB 25
ENR 1.5−29 through ENR 1.5−31	5 SEP 24	ENR 1.5−29 through ENR 1.5−31	20 FEB 25
ENR 1.5−32 through ENR 1.5−71	21 MAR 24	ENR 1.5−32 through ENR 1.5−71	20 FEB 25
ENR 1.5−72	5 SEP 24	ENR 1.5−72	20 FEB 25
ENR 1.5−73 through ENR 1.5−91	21 MAR 24	ENR 1.5−73 through ENR 1.5−92	20 FEB 25
ENR 1.10−3	21 MAR 24	ENR 1.10−3	21 MAR 24
ENR 1.10−4	21 MAR 24	ENR 1.10−4	20 FEB 25
ENR 7.1−1 and ENR 7.1−2	21 MAR 24	ENR 7.1−1 and ENR 7.1−2	20 FEB 25
ENR 7.1−5	21 MAR 24	ENR 7.1−5	20 FEB 25
ENR 7.1−6	21 MAR 24	ENR 7.1−6	21 MAR 24
ENR 7.1−7 and ENR 7.1−8	21 MAR 24	ENR 7.1−7 and ENR 7.1−8	20 FEB 25

ENR 7.2−1	21 MAR 24	ENR 7.2−1	20 FEB 25
ENR 7.2−2	21 MAR 24	ENR 7.2−2	21 MAR 24
ENR 7.4−3 through ENR 7.4−5	21 MAR 24	ENR 7.4−3 through ENR 7.4−5	20 FEB 25
ENR 7.10−1	21 MAR 24	ENR 7.10−1	20 FEB 24
ENR 7.11−1 and ENR 7.11−2	21 MAR 24	ENR 7.11−1 and ENR 7.11−2	20 FEB 25
ENR 7.14−1	21 MAR 24	ENR 7.14−1	20 FEB 25
ENR 8.2−1 and ENR 8.2−2	21 MAR 24	ENR 8.2−1 and ENR 8.2−2	20 FEB 25
AD 0.4−1	5 SEP 24	AD 0.4−1	20 FEB 25
AD 0.6	21 MAR 24	AD 0.6	20 FEB 25
AD 2−1 through AD 2−631	5 SEP 24	AD 2−1	20 FEB 25
. . . .	N/A	AD 3−1	20 FEB 25
Index 1−1 through Index 1−8	21 MAR 24	Index 1−1 through Index 1−8	20 FEB 25
Appendix I−22	5 SEP 24	Appendix I−22	5 SEP 24
Appendix I−23	5 SEP 24	Appendix I−23	20 FEB 25
Appendix I−24	5 SEP 24	. . . .	N/A

GEN 0.4 Checklist of Pages

PAGE	DATE
PART 1 − GENERAL (GEN)	
GEN 0	
0.1−1	21 MAR 24
0.1−2	21 MAR 24
0.1−3	21 MAR 24
0.2−1	21 MAR 24
0.4−1	20 FEB 25
0.4−2	20 FEB 25
0.4−3	20 FEB 25
0.6−1	21 MAR 24
GEN 1	
1.1−1	21 MAR 24
1.2−1	21 MAR 24
1.2−2	21 MAR 24
1.2−3	21 MAR 24
1.2−4	21 MAR 24
1.2−5	21 MAR 24
1.3−1	21 MAR 24
1.4−1	21 MAR 24
1.4−2	21 MAR 24
1.4−3	21 MAR 24
1.4−4	21 MAR 24
1.5−1	21 MAR 24
1.6−1	21 MAR 24
1.7−1	21 MAR 24
1.7−2	21 MAR 24
1.7−3	21 MAR 24
1.7−4	21 MAR 24
1.7−5	21 MAR 24
1.7−6	21 MAR 24
1.7−7	21 MAR 24
1.7−8	21 MAR 24
1.7−9	21 MAR 24
1.7−10	21 MAR 24
1.7−11	21 MAR 24
1.7−12	21 MAR 24
1.7−13	21 MAR 24
1.7−14	21 MAR 24
1.7−15	21 MAR 24
1.7−16	21 MAR 24
1.7−17	21 MAR 24
1.7−18	21 MAR 24
1.7−19	21 MAR 24
1.7−20	21 MAR 24
1.7−21	21 MAR 24
1.7−22	21 MAR 24

PAGE	DATE
1.7−23	21 MAR 24
1.7−24	21 MAR 24
1.7−25	21 MAR 24
1.7−26	21 MAR 24
1.7−27	21 MAR 24
1.7−28	21 MAR 24
1.7−29	21 MAR 24
1.7−30	21 MAR 24
1.7−31	21 MAR 24
1.7−32	21 MAR 24
1.7−33	21 MAR 24
1.7−34	21 MAR 24
1.7−35	21 MAR 24
1.7−36	21 MAR 24
1.7−37	21 MAR 24
1.7−38	21 MAR 24
1.7−39	21 MAR 24
1.7−40	20 FEB 25
1.7−41	21 MAR 24
1.7−42	21 MAR 24
1.7−43	21 MAR 24
1.7−44	21 MAR 24
1.7−45	21 MAR 24
1.7−46	21 MAR 24
1.7−47	21 MAR 24
1.7−48	21 MAR 24
1.7−49	5 SEP 24
1.7−50	5 SEP 24
1.7−51	5 SEP 24
1.7−52	5 SEP 24
1.7−53	5 SEP 24
1.7−54	5 SEP 24
1.7−55	5 SEP 24
1.7−56	5 SEP 24
1.7−57	5 SEP 24
1.7−58	5 SEP 24
1.7−59	5 SEP 24
1.7−60	5 SEP 24
1.7−61	5 SEP 24
1.7−62	5 SEP 24
1.7−63	5 SEP 24
1.7−64	5 SEP 24
1.7−65	5 SEP 24
1.7−66	5 SEP 24
1.7−67	5 SEP 24
1.7−68	20 FEB 25
1.7−69	20 FEB 25
1.7−70	5 SEP 24

PAGE	DATE
1.7−71	5 SEP 24
1.7−72	5 SEP 24
1.7−73	5 SEP 24
1.7−74	5 SEP 24
1.7−75	5 SEP 24
1.7−76	5 SEP 24
1.7−77	5 SEP 24
1.7−78	5 SEP 24
1.7−79	5 SEP 24
1.7−80	5 SEP 24
1.7−81	5 SEP 24
1.7−82	5 SEP 24
1.7−83	5 SEP 24
1.7−84	5 SEP 24
1.7−85	5 SEP 24
1.7−86	5 SEP 24
1.7−87	5 SEP 24
1.7−88	5 SEP 24
1.7−89	5 SEP 24
1.7−90	5 SEP 24
1.7−91	5 SEP 24
1.7−92	5 SEP 24
1.7−93	5 SEP 24
1.7−94	5 SEP 24
1.7−95	5 SEP 24
1.7−96	5 SEP 24
1.7−97	5 SEP 24
1.7−98	5 SEP 24
1.7−99	5 SEP 24
1.7−100	5 SEP 24
1.7−101	5 SEP 24
1.7−102	20 FEB 25
1.7−103	20 FEB 25
1.7−104	5 SEP 24
1.7−105	20 FEB 25
1.7−106	5 SEP 24
GEN 2	
2.1−1	21 MAR 24
2.1−2	21 MAR 24
2.2−1	21 MAR 24
2.2−2	21 MAR 24
2.2−3	21 MAR 24
2.2−4	21 MAR 24
2.2−5	21 MAR 24
2.3−1	21 MAR 24
2.4−1	21 MAR 24

PAGE	DATE
2.5−1	21 MAR 24
2.6−1	21 MAR 24
2.6−2	21 MAR 24
2.6−3	21 MAR 24
2.6−4	21 MAR 24
2.6−5	21 MAR 24
2.6−6	21 MAR 24
2.6−7	21 MAR 24
2.7−1	21 MAR 24

GEN 3

PAGE	DATE
3.1−1	21 MAR 24
3.1−2	21 MAR 24
3.1−3	21 MAR 24
3.1−4	21 MAR 24
3.1−5	21 MAR 24
3.2−1	20 FEB 25
3.2−2	21 MAR 24
3.2−3	21 MAR 24
3.2−4	21 MAR 24
3.2−5	21 MAR 24
3.2−6	21 MAR 24
3.2−7	21 MAR 24
3.2−8	21 MAR 24
3.2−9	20 FEB 25
3.2−10	21 MAR 24
3.2−11	21 MAR 24
3.2−12	21 MAR 24
3.2−13	21 MAR 24
3.2−14	21 MAR 24
3.3−1	21 MAR 24
3.3−2	21 MAR 24
3.3−3	21 MAR 24
3.3−4	21 MAR 24
3.3−5	21 MAR 24
3.3−6	21 MAR 24
3.3−7	21 MAR 24
3.3−8	21 MAR 24
3.3−9	21 MAR 24
3.3−10	21 MAR 24
3.3−11	21 MAR 24
3.3−12	21 MAR 24
3.3−13	21 MAR 24
3.3−14	21 MAR 24
3.3−15	21 MAR 24
3.3−16	21 MAR 24
3.3−17	21 MAR 24
3.3−18	21 MAR 24
3.3−19	21 MAR 24

PAGE	DATE
3.3−20	21 MAR 24
3.3−21	21 MAR 24
3.3−22	21 MAR 24
3.3−23	21 MAR 24
3.3−24	21 MAR 24
3.3−25	21 MAR 24
3.3−26	21 MAR 24
3.3−27	21 MAR 24
3.4−1	21 MAR 24
3.4−2	21 MAR 24
3.4−3	21 MAR 24
3.4−4	21 MAR 24
3.4−5	21 MAR 24
3.4−6	21 MAR 24
3.4−7	21 MAR 24
3.4−8	21 MAR 24
3.4−9	21 MAR 24
3.4−10	21 MAR 24
3.4−11	21 MAR 24
3.4−12	20 FEB 25
3.4−13	21 MAR 24
3.4−14	21 MAR 24
3.4−15	21 MAR 24
3.4−16	21 MAR 24
3.4−17	21 MAR 24
3.4−18	21 MAR 24
3.4−19	20 FEB 25
3.4−20	20 FEB 25
3.4−21	21 MAR 24
3.4−22	21 MAR 24
3.4−23	21 MAR 24
3.5−1	21 MAR 24
3.5−2	21 MAR 24
3.5−3	21 MAR 24
3.5−4	21 MAR 24
3.5−5	21 MAR 24
3.5−6	21 MAR 24
3.5−7	21 MAR 24
3.5−8	21 MAR 24
3.5−9	21 MAR 24
3.5−10	20 FEB 25
3.5−11	20 FEB 25
3.5−12	20 FEB 25
3.5−13	20 FEB 25
3.5−14	20 FEB 25
3.5−15	20 FEB 25
3.5−16	20 FEB 25
3.5−17	20 FEB 25
3.5−18	20 FEB 25

PAGE	DATE
3.5−19	20 FEB 25
3.5−20	20 FEB 25
3.5−21	20 FEB 25
3.5−22	20 FEB 25
3.5−23	20 FEB 25
3.5−24	20 FEB 25
3.5−25	20 FEB 25
3.5−26	20 FEB 25
3.5−27	20 FEB 25
3.5−28	20 FEB 25
3.5−29	20 FEB 25
3.5−30	20 FEB 25
3.5−31	20 FEB 25
3.5−32	20 FEB 25
3.5−33	20 FEB 25
3.5−34	20 FEB 25
3.5−35	20 FEB 25
3.5−36	20 FEB 25
3.5−37	20 FEB 25
3.5−38	20 FEB 25
3.5−39	20 FEB 25
3.5−40	20 FEB 25
3.5−41	20 FEB 25
3.5−42	20 FEB 25
3.5−43	20 FEB 25
3.5−44	20 FEB 25
3.5−45	20 FEB 25
3.5−46	20 FEB 25
3.5−47	20 FEB 25
3.5−48	20 FEB 25
3.5−49	20 FEB 25
3.5−50	20 FEB 25
3.5−51	20 FEB 25
3.5−52	20 FEB 25
3.5−53	20 FEB 25
3.5−54	20 FEB 25
3.5−55	20 FEB 25
3.5−56	20 FEB 25
3.5−57	20 FEB 25
3.5−58	20 FEB 25
3.5−59	20 FEB 25
3.5−60	20 FEB 25
3.5−61	20 FEB 25
3.5−62	20 FEB 25
3.5−63	20 FEB 25
3.5−64	20 FEB 25
3.5−65	20 FEB 25
3.5−66	20 FEB 25
3.5−67	20 FEB 25
3.5−68	20 FEB 25

PAGE	DATE
3.5−69	20 FEB 25
3.5−70	20 FEB 25
3.5−71	20 FEB 25
3.5−72	20 FEB 25
3.5−73	20 FEB 25
3.5−74	20 FEB 25
3.5−75	20 FEB 25
3.5−76	20 FEB 25
3.5−77	20 FEB 25
3.5−78	20 FEB 25
3.5−79	20 FEB 25
3.5−80	20 FEB 25
3.5−81	20 FEB 25
3.5−82	20 FEB 25
3.5−83	20 FEB 25
3.5−84	20 FEB 25
3.5−85	20 FEB 25
3.5−86	20 FEB 25
3.5−87	20 FEB 25
3.5−88	20 FEB 25
3.5−89	20 FEB 25
3.5−90	20 FEB 25
3.5−91	20 FEB 25
3.5−92	20 FEB 25

PAGE	DATE
3.5−93	20 FEB 25
3.5−94	20 FEB 25
3.5−95	20 FEB 25
3.6−1	21 MAR 24
3.6−2	21 MAR 24
3.6−3	21 MAR 24
3.6−4	21 MAR 24
3.6−5	21 MAR 24
3.6−6	21 MAR 24
3.6−7	21 MAR 24
3.6−8	21 MAR 24
3.6−9	21 MAR 24
3.6−10	21 MAR 24
3.6−11	21 MAR 24
3.6−12	21 MAR 24
3.6−13	21 MAR 24
3.6−14	21 MAR 24
3.6−15	21 MAR 24

PAGE	DATE
3.6−16	21 MAR 24
3.6−17	21 MAR 24
3.6−18	21 MAR 24
3.6−19	21 MAR 24
3.6−20	21 MAR 24
3.6−21	21 MAR 24
3.6−22	21 MAR 24
3.6−23	21 MAR 24
3.6−24	21 MAR 24
3.6−25	21 MAR 24
3.7−1	21 MAR 24
3.7−2	21 MAR 24
GEN 4	
4.1−1	21 MAR 24
4.1−2	21 MAR 24
4.2−1	21 MAR 24

GEN 0.5 List of Hand Amendments to the AIP − Not applicable

9.9.2	Danger Areas do not exist in the U.S. Prohibited and Restricted airspace, Military Operations Areas, Warning Areas, Alert Areas, and National Security Areas exist and are charted when requested by procedure developer.
9.9.3	The FAA refers to Minimum Sector Altitudes as Minimum Safe Altitudes
9.9.3.2	Area minimum altitudes are not shown.
9.9.4.1.1	Coordinates for NAVAIDs and Significant Points are shown in degrees, minutes and hundredths of minutes. Bearings are shown to the nearest degree and distances to the nearest mile. DME antenna elevation is not shown. Obstacles are depicted textually with position and height, and without regard for penetration of OIS. Minimum vectoring altitudes are not shown.
Chapter 10	**Standard Arrival Chart − Instrument (STAR) − ICAO**
10.2	Charts are provided only when a procedure has been established.
10.3.2	Charts are not generally drawn to scale.
10.3.3	Scale bar is not shown.
10.4.2	Parallels and meridians are not shown.
10.4.3	Graduation marks are not shown.
10.5	Procedure route is identified in accordance with FAA Order JO 7100.9
10.6.1	Culture and topography are not shown.
10.6.2	Contour relief is not shown. Obstacles are listed textually.
10.7	Magnetic variation is not shown.
10.8.1 10.8.2	Bearings and tracks are not provided as True values.
10.8.3	Bearings, tracks, and radials are not provided as True/Grid values.
10.9.1.1	Airports are shown by symbol vice pattern.
10.9.1.2	Airports are shown by symbol vs runway pattern.
10.9.2	Danger Areas do not exist in the U.S. Prohibited and Restricted airspace, Military Operations Areas, Warning Areas, Alert Areas, and National Security Areas exist and are charted when requested by procedure developer.
10.9.3.1	Minimum Sector Altitude is not shown.
10.9.3.2	Area minimum altitudes are not shown.
10.9.4.1.1	Bearings are shown to the nearest degree and distances to the nearest mile. Coordinates for NAVAIDs and Significant Points are shown in degrees, minutes and hundredths of minutes. DME antenna elevation is not shown. Minimum vectoring altitudes are not shown.
Chapter 11	**Instrument Approach Chart − ICAO**
11.3.3	Scale is not shown.
11.3.3.1	Distance circle is not shown.
11.3.3.2	Distance between components and between last component and runway shown.
11.4	Sheet size is 8.25 inches by 5.375 inches
11.5.2	Graduation marks are not shown.
11.7.1	Culture information is not shown. Shaded hydrographic features are shown, but not labeled.
11.7.2	Terrain charting criteria does not include approach gradient steeper than optimal due to terrain.
11.7.3	Terrain is not charted if Std 11.7.2 is not met.
11.8.1	Magnetic variation is shown only in areas of compass instability and on charts North of 67 degrees of latitude.
11.9.1	Bearings, tracks, and radials are not shown as true values for RNAV segments.
11.9.2	Only magnetic north values are shown.
11.9.3	Bearings, tracks, and radials are not provided in true/grid values.
11.10.1.1	Only airports specifically requested for charting are shown.
11.10.1.2	Only airports specifically requested for charting are shown.
11.10.2.2	Obstacles that are the determining factor for an OCA/OCH are not necessarily shown.
11.10.2.4	Obstacle heights are only shown in MSL.

11.10.2.7	Absence of obstacle free zones are not shown.
11.10.3	Danger Areas do not exist in the U.S. Prohibited and Restricted airspace, Military Operations Areas, Warning Areas, Alert Areas, and National Security Areas exist and are charted when requested by procedure developer.
11.10.4.3	Geographic final approach fix coordinates are not shown.
11.10.5	Minimum Safe Altitudes vice Minimum Sector Altitudes. Terminal Arrival Areas vice Terminal Arrival Altitude.
11.10.6.1	Arrowed dotted line is used for MA track. Arrowed dashed line used for Visual track. Times required for the procedure are not shown.
11.10.6.2	Distance to airport from final approach NAVAID is not shown.
11.10.6.3	Missed approach segment is shown by arrowed, dotted line. Arrowed, dashed line is used for visual segments. Times required for the procedure are not shown. Distance between components is shown vice a distance scale.
11.10.6.4	Parentheses are not shown.
11.10.6.5	Ground profile and shaded altitude blocks are not shown.
11.10.7.1	Procedure landing minima are shown vice aerodrome operating minima.
11.10.7.2	Decision Altitude/Height (DA/H) and Minimum Descent Altitude/Height (MDA/H) are shown vice OCA/H.
11.10.8.2	Altitude/height table is not shown.
11.10.8.3	Altitude/height table is not shown.
11.10.8.4	Rate of descent table is not shown on individual plates, but a combined climb/descent table is available digitally or with printed procedure publication.
11.10.8.5	Descent gradient not shown, threshold crossing height shown in feet, vertical descent angle shown to hundredths of a degree.
11.10.8.6	Threshold crossing height shown in feet. Descent angle shown to the nearest hundredth of a degree.
11.10.8.8	Cautionary note is dependent on multiple criteria.
11.10.8.9	Simultaneous operations notes do not always contain references to runways or procedures.
Chapter 12	**Visual Approach Chart − ICAO**
12.2	Chart provided only when visual approach procedure has been established.
12.3.2	The scale can vary and also be not−to−scale.
12.3.3	Charts are shown at scale of 1:250,000, IAPs at 1:500,000 or smaller.
12.4	Sheet size is 8.25 inches by 5.375 inches.
12.5.2	Graduation marks are not shown
12.8	Magnetic variation is shown only in areas of compass instability and on charts North of 67 degrees of latitude.
12.9.2	Bearings, tracks, and radials are not shown as true/grid values.
12.9.3	Grid meridian is not shown.
12.10.1.1	Only airports specifically requested for charting are shown.
12.10.1.2	Airport elevation is not shown.
12.10.2.3	Height of obstacle above Mean Sea Level is shown.
12.10.2.3.1	Datum height not shown. Parentheses are not shown.
12.10.3	Vertical limits of areas are not shown. Danger Areas do not exist in the U.S. Prohibited and Restricted airspace, Military Operations Areas, Warning Areas, Alert Areas, and National Security Areas exist and are charted when requested by procedure developer.
12.10.4	Control zones and Traffic zones are not shown.
12.10.5.3	VASI, MEHT, and angle of displacement are not shown.
Chapter 13	**Aerodrome/Heliport Chart − ICAO**
13.1	Helicopter movement is supported only with the location of helipads.
13.3.2	Latitude and longitude graticules are shown vice linear scale.

2.6.2.1.1 and 2.6.2.1.2	The US frequency protections for ILS localizers are 3 dB more stringent than the ICAO protections (i.e. 23 dB vs. 20 dB for co−channel, −4 dB vs. −7 dB for interim 1st adjacent channels, −31 dB vs.−34 dB for final 1st adjacent channels, −43 dB vs. −46 dB for 2nd adjacent channels, and −47 dB vs. −50 dB for 3rd adjacent channels).
2.6.2.2.1	The US frequency protections for ILS localizers are 3 dB more stringent than the ICAO protections (i.e. 23 dB vs. 20 dB for co−channel, −4 dB vs. −7 dB for interim 1st adjacent channels, −31 dB vs. −34 dB for final 1st adjacent channels, −43 dB vs. −46 dB for 2nd adjacent channels, and −47 dB vs. −50 dB for 3rd adjacent channels).
3.4.6.1 a),b),c) 3.4.6.2 a),b),c)	The US frequency protections for co−channel, 1st and 2nd adjacent channels for VOR are 3 dB more stringent than the ICAO protections (i.e. 23 dB vs. 20 dB for co−channel, −4 dB vs. −7 dB for interim 1st adjacent channels, −31 dB vs. −34 dB for final 1st adjacent channels, −43 dB vs. −46 dB for 2nd adjacent channels).
3.4.6.1 d) 3.4.6.2 d)	The US does not provide any VOR frequency protection for 3rd adjacent channels. The ICAO protection provides −50 dB for 3rd adjacent channels.
7.1.8.1 7.1.8.2 Table C−6	The US frequency protections for co−channel and 1st adjacent channels for DME are 3 dB more stringent than the ICAO protections (i.e. 11 dB vs. 8 dB for co−channel, −39 dB vs. −42 dB for 1st adjacent channels). The US frequency protection for 2nd adjacent channels for DME is 28 dB more stringent than the ICAO protection (i.e. − 47 dB vs. − 75 dB).
Attachment D	**INFORMATION AND MATERIAL FOR GUIDANCE IN THE APPLICATION OF THE GNSS STANDARDS AND RECOMMENDED PRACTICES**
7.2.1.5 and Table D−4	In the U.S., the LAAS/LAAS co−channel geographical separation is 159 nm at 10,000 and 20,000 ft. ICAO separation is 195 nm at 10,000 ft. The first adjacent channel in the U.S. is equivalent to the ICAO second adjacent channel or +/− 50 kHz. The ICAO separation requirement for GBAS/GBAS second adjacent channel separation is 24 NM. In the U.S., geographical separations are not required between LAAS facilities, which differ in frequency by more than 25 kHz.
7.2.1.6 and Table D−5	Distances shown in ICAO Table D−5 are different from the distances in FAA Order 6050.32B figures 203 and 204 since in the U.S. the separation distances are calculated using the same method as for VOR described in FAA Order 6050.32B.
ANNEX 10 − VOLUME II − COMMUNICATION PROCEDURES INCLUDING THOSE WITH PANS STATUS	
Chapter 3	**General Procedures for the International Aeronautical Telecommunication Service**
3.2.2, 3.2.3	US regulations do not have any specific procedures for closing down international aeronautical stations. All international aeronautical stations in the U.S. operate continuously (24 hours a day and seven days a week)
Chapter 5	**Aeronautical Mobile Service − Voice Communications**
5.1.5	US regulations do not require pilots to wait 10 seconds before making a second call. US regulations only require “a few seconds” instead of “10 seconds.”
5.2.1.4.1.1	The United States directs that, for air carriers and other civil aircraft having FAA authorized call signs, the call sign should be followed by the flight number in group form; and for air carriers of foreign registry, the flight number should be stated in group form, or using separate digits if that is the format used by the pilot.
5.2.1.4.1.1	The United States issues surface wind using the word “wind” followed by the separate digits of the indicated wind direction to the nearest 10−degree multiple, the word “at” and the separate digits of the indicated velocity in knots, to include any gusts.
5.2.1.4.1.3	The United States issues the separate digits of a frequency, inserting the word “point” where the decimal point occurs.

5.2.2.7.1.2	US regulations do not specifically require pilots to send a message twice preceded with the phrase "TRANSMITTING BLIND". US regulations provides general procedures which allow pilots to make blind transmissions in case of emergency.
5.2.2.7.1.3.1	US regulations do not specifically require pilots to make a blind transmission preceded by "TRANSMITTING BLIND DUE TO RECEIVER FAILURE" with respect to the continuation of the flight of the aircraft. US regulations provide general procedures which allow pilots to make appropriate blind transmissions.
5.2.2.7.3.1	US regulations do not specifically require pilots to make a blind transmission preceded by "TRANSMITTING BLIND DUE TO RECEIVER FAILURE". US regulations provide general procedures which allow pilots to make appropriate blind transmissions.
5.3.1.2	The initial communication, and if considered necessary, any subsequent transmissions by an aircraft in distress "should" begin with the signal MAYDAY…
ANNEX 10 − VOLUME III − COMMUNICATION SYSTEMS	
PART I − DIGITAL DATA COMMUNICATION SYSTEMS	
Chapter 7	**Aeronautical Mobile Airport Communications System (AeroMACS)**
7.4.5.1 (d)	In the U.S., the power spectral density of any frequency removed from the assigned frequency above 150% of the authorized frequency is 50 dB or 55 + log (P) dB, whichever is the lesser attenuation. ICAO requires 50 dB.
PART II − VOICE COMMUNICATION SYSTEMS	
Chapter 2	**Aeronautical Mobile Service**
2.2.1.2	ICAO recommends a signal−in−space field strength of 75 uv/m (−109dBW/m^2), which translates to –82.5 dBm at the input of the receiver assuming 0 dB system losses. In the U.S., per RTCA DO−186a MOPS, the input power to the aircraft receiver should be −87 dBm.
2.3.3.1 2.3.3.2 2.3.3.3 2.3.3.4	The US does not require aircraft flying within the US airspace to meet the interference immunity performance of paragraphs 2.3.3.1, 2.3.3.2, and 2.3.3.3 and the recommendation of paragraph 2.3.3.4 of Annex 10, Vol 3, Part 2, Chapter 2. The FAA, based on the recommendations of the. Aviation Rulemaking Advisory Committee, made a decision, in 1996, not to adopt the FM interference immunity performance standards in the U.S. The U.S. continues to use its own FM immunity standards to avoid FM interference in aircraft.
2.3.3.4	The U.S. does not require airborne VHF communications receiving systems to meet the FM broadcast immunity performance standards recommended by ICAO.
ANNEX 10 − VOLUME IV − SURVEILLANCE AND COLLISION AVOIDANCE SYSTEMS	
Chapter 3	**Surveillance Systems**
3.1.1.7.13	SPI required to be transmitted for 18 +/− 1 second.
Chapter 4	**Airborne Collision Avoidance System**
4.2.3.3.4	The TSO−C118 (RTCA DO−197) implements this requirement. However, the requirement of limiting Mode S power to the level of Mode A/C (paragraph 4.2.3.4) is not implemented.
4.3.1.1.1	Specifies a nominal cycle of 1 second
4.3.2.1.2	The US specifies a false track probability of less than 1.2% for Mode A/C and less than 0.1% for Mode S.
4.3.5.3.1	Software versions 6.04A, version 7.0 and version 7.1 are all approved for operations in U.S. airspace.

4.3.5.3.2	No changes planned to the current U.S. guidance. Per Advisory Circular (AC) 120−55C, Change 1, Section 11 (MAINTENANCE), para c., TCAS Software Updates: "when necessary, operators should ensure that appropriate TCAS software updates are incorporated. The latest version of software for TCAS II is version 7.1. To ensure compatibility with international standards, the FAA encourages the installation of this software as practical. Software version 6.04A, version 7.0 and version 7.1 are all approved for operations in U.S. airspace."
4.3.5.3.3	No changes planned to the current U.S. guidance. Per Advisory Circular (AC) 120−55C, Change 1, Section 11 (MAINTENANCE), para c., TCAS Software Updates: "when necessary, operators should ensure that appropriate TCAS software updates are incorporated. The latest version of software for TCAS II is version 7.1. To ensure compatibility with international standards, the FAA encourages the installation of this software as practical. Software version 6.04A, version 7.0 and version 7.1 are all approved for operations in U.S. airspace."
ANNEX 10 − VOLUME V − AERONAUTICAL RADIO FREQUENCY SPECTRUM UTILIZATION	
Chapter 2	**Distress frequencies**
2.1.1	All emergency locator transmitters installed on or after 1 January 2002 and carried in compliance with Standards of Annex 6, Parts I, II and III may operate on both 406 MHz and 121.500 MHz or on 121.5 MHz.
Chapter 4	**Utilization of frequencies above 30 MHz**
4.1.2.4	FAA has not issued a mandatory carriage of VDL Mode 3 and VDL Mode 4. Participation in CPDLC (VDL Mode 2) "is at the discretion of the flight crew and/or operator" (NAS Data Communications Guide, version 11 dated May 26, 2021).
4.1.2.4.1	FAA has not issued a mandatory carriage of VDL Mode 3 and VDL Mode 4. Participation in CPDLC (VDL Mode 2) "is at the discretion of the flight crew and/or operator" (NAS Data Communications Guide, version 11 dated May 26, 2021).
4.1.4.1	The US does not provide the 20 dB desired−to−undesired signal protection for VHF frequency assignments. The US provides 14 dB.
4.1.4.2	The US does not require aircraft flying within the US airspace to meet one of the characteristics dealing with the FM interference immunity performance. The U.S. Aviation Rulemaking Committee made a decision not to adopt the FM interference immunity performance standards in the U.S. The U.S. continues to use its own FM immunity standards to avoid FM interference in aircraft.
4.1.6.1.2	Assignable frequencies in 25 KHz steps in the US are 121.550 − 123.075 MHz instead of 121.550 – 123.050 MHz, and 123.125 – 136.975 MHz instead of 123.150 – 136.475 MHz.
4.2.3	The US does not follow the VOR assignment priority as defined in Section 4.2.3. Due to severe frequency congestion in the U.S., the ICAO frequency assignment priority order would result in inefficient use of the radio spectrum.

ANNEX 11 − AIR TRAFFIC SERVICES	
Chapter 1	**Definitions**
Accepting Unit	The term "receiving facility" is used.
Advisory Airspace	Advisory service is provided in terminal radar service areas and the outer area associated with class C airspace areas as well as Class E airspace.
Advisory Route	Advisory service is provided in terminal radar service areas and the outer area associated with class C airspace areas as well as Class E airspace.
ACAS– Airborne Collision Avoidance System	Traffic Alert and Collision Avoidance System (TCAS) – An airborne collision avoidance system based on radar beacon signals which operates independent of ground−based equipment. 14 CFR 1.1 further defines and breaks down TCAS into TCAS 1 – provides traffic advisories 2 – provides traffic advisories and resolution advisories in the vertical plane and 3 – provides traffic advisories and resolution advisories in the vertical and horizontal planes.
AIRMET	FAA Pilot Controller Glossary defines (in part) AIRMET as "A concise description of an occurrence or expected occurrence of specified en route weather phenomena that may affect the safety of aircraft operations, but at intensities lower than those that require the issuance of a SIGMET." The ICAO definition of AIRMET narrows the purpose of the advisory to "low-level aircraft operations", where the FAA has a more broad definition to encompass "all aircraft and…aircraft having limited capability…" Also, ICAO uses the term "forecast…for the flight information region" where the FAA uses "area forecast". Difference in character (terminology) for area forecast. FAA uses AIRMETS for broader purpose.
Air taxiing	The U.S. does not limit this definition to apply only to above the surface of an aerodrome.
Air traffic control service	The U.S. uses "Air Traffic Control" with a definition of "A service operated by appropriate authority to promote the safe, orderly and expeditious flow of air traffic."
Air traffic flow management (ATFM)	The U.S. does not define air traffic flow management.
Air traffic control unit	The U.S. uses the term "air traffic control facility". (i.e., En Route, Terminal, or Flight Service)
Air traffic services reporting office	FAA Pilot Control Glossary defines (in part) Flight Service Stations (FSS) as "air traffic facilities which provide pilot briefing, en route communications and VFR search and rescue services, assist lost aircraft in emergency situations, relay ATC clearances, originate Notices to Air Missions, broadcast aviation weather and NAS information, receive and process IFR flight plans...." FSSs are available to receive any reports concerning air traffic services as well as accept and file flight plans.
Air traffic services unit	The U.S. uses "Air Route Traffic Control Center".
Airway	A Class E airspace area established in the form of a corridor, the centerline of which is defined by radio navigational aids.
Alert Phase	Alert – a notification to a position that there is an aircraft−to−aircraft or aircraft−to−airspace conflict as detected by automated problem detection.
Altitude	Height above ground level (AGL), mean sea level (MSL) or indicate altitude.
Approach Control Service	The U.S. not only includes arriving and departing controlled flights but also includes en route controlled flights. Additionally, as opposed to Annex 2 Amdt 47, the U.S. specifies the control facility that provides the service.
Approach Control Unit	The U.S. uses "Approach Control Facility" and also includes the possibility of providing ATS to en route aircraft.

ANNEX 17 − SECURITY − SAFEGUARDING INTERNATIONAL CIVIL AVIATION AGAINST ACTS OF UNLAWFUL INTERFERENCE
There are no reportable differences between U.S. regulations and the Standards and Recommended Practices contained in this Annex.

ANNEX 18 − THE SAFE TRANSPORT OF DANGEROUS GOODS BY AIR
There are no reportable differences between U.S. regulations and the Standards and Recommended Practices contained in this Annex.

ANNEX 19 − SAFETY MANAGEMENT	
Chapter 3	**State Safety Management Responsibilities**
3.3.2.1	U.S. does not currently require the implementation of SMS for: − approved training organizations that are exposed to safety risks related to aircraft operations during the provision of their services; − approved maintenance organizations providing services to operators of aeroplanes or helicopters engaged in international commercial air transport. U.S. does require the implementation of SMS for: − organizations responsible for type design that hold a production certificate for the same product; − operators of certain aerodromes that do not satisfy criteria in 14 CFR § 139.401.
3.3.2.3	The U.S. has not established criteria for international general aviation operators of large or turbojet aeroplanes to implement an SMS.

PANS − OPS − 8168/611	
VOLUME I − Flight Procedures	
PART III	
Table III−1−1 and Table III−1−2	Max speeds for visual maneuvering (Circling)" must not be applied to circling procedures in the U.S. Comply with the airspeeds and circling restrictions in ENR 1.5, paragraphs 11.1 and 11.6, in order to remain within obstacle protection areas.
PART IV	
1.2.1	The airspeeds contained in ENR 1.5 shall be used in U.S. **CONTROLLED AIRSPACE**.
VOLUME II − Construction of Visual and Instrument Flight Procedures	
In toto	The United States does not construct Visual nor Instrument Flight Procedures per Volume II. The U.S. constructs Visual and Instrument Flight Procedures following the cited FAA Orders 8260.3, 8260.19, 8260.46, 8260.58, and 8260.61.
In toto	See ENR 1.5−6 Approach Clearance. Feeder routes may connect an instrument approach to the en route structure.
PART I	
Section 2 − General Principles	
Chapter 1	
1.1.4d	See ENR 1.5−3.1 Standard Terminal Arrival (STAR) Procedures and 1.5−35 Departure Control. The United States has En Route Transitions promulgated on SIDs and STARs that facilitate transitions between en route and instrument flight procedures.
Section 4 − Arrival and Approach Procedures	
Chapter 5	
5.4.1.5	See ENR 1.5−11 Approach and Landing Minimums. The United States publishes landing minima on instrument approach charts.
5.4.6.1	See ENR 1.5−12.9. Obstacles may penetrate the visual segment surface.
Chapter 7	
7.3	See ENR 1.5−11 Approach and Landing Minimums. The United States uses a minimum obstacle clearance of 300' instead of 394' for CAT C and D circling minima.
Appendix (to Chapter 7)	See ENR 1.5−26 Charted Visual Flight Procedures (CVFPs). The United States publishes CVFPs instead of Visual Maneuvering using Prescribed Track and provides no minimum obstacle clearance assurance.
Chapter 10	
10.1.1	See ENR 1.5−10 Side−step Maneuver. The United States may authorize a side−step maneuver to transition from the final approach course aligned to one runway to land on a parallel runway.
Part III	
Section 5 − Publication	
Chapter 1	

1.4.2.3	See ENR 1.5−9.2 for RNP AR APCH, 12.13 for RNP APCH. The United States naming convention for RNP APCH approaches is ”RNAV (GPS) RWY ##”. The naming convention for RNP AR APCH approaches is ”RNAV (RNP) RWY ##”.
Part IV	
In toto	See ENR 1.5−12.8 Visual Descent Point (VDP). The United States may publish a VDP on a nonprecision approach where a pilot can make a stabilized descent from the MDA. Volume II, Part IV does not contain an equivalent provision.
VOLUME III − Aircraft Operating Procedures	
Section 3 − Simultaneous operations on parallel or near−parallel instrument runways	
1.5c3	The United States does not require the final vector to final to enable the aircraft to be established on the final approach course track, in level flight for at least 3.7 km (2.0NM) prior to intercepting the glide path or vertical path for the selected instrument approach procedure. FAA Order JO 7110.65 requires that when conducting dual or triple simultaneous independent approaches the aircraft is cleared to descend to the appropriate glideslope/glidepath intercept altitude soon enough to provide a period of level flight to dissipate excess speed. Also, the aircraft must be provided at least 1 mile of straight flight prior to the final approach course intercept.
Section 10 − Flight Tracking	
1.2.1	The United States has notified differences to the distress tracking standards in Annex 6, Part I, 6.18. Consistent with those differences, the United States does not require U.S. operators to establish training programs and procedures specific to autonomous distress tracking and will not perform surveillance of implementation by U.S. operators.
1.2.2	FAA Order JO 7210.632, Air Traffic Organization Occurrence Reporting, establishes mandatory occurrence reporting (MOR) requirements and format for FAA employees, including reports sourced from operators and missed position reporting. The MOR Report form includes most, but not all, of the template in the Appendix to Ch. 1.
1.2.3	The United States has notified differences to the distress tracking standards in Annex 6, Part I, 6.18. Consistent with those differences, the United States does not require U.S. operators to maintain contact details in the ICAO OPS CTRL.

PAN − ABC − DOC 8400
Differences between abbreviations used in U.S. AIP, International NOTAMs Class I and Class II, and Notices to Air Missions Publication and ICAO PANS − ABC are listed in GEN 2.2**.** For other U.S. listings of abbreviations (contractions) for general use, air traffic control, and National Weather Service (NWS), which differ in some respects, see U.S. publication Contractions Handbook (FAA Order JO 7340.2). In addition, various U.S. publications contain abbreviations of terms used therein, particularly those unique to that publication.

GEN 3.2 Aeronautical Charts

1. General

1.1 Civil aeronautical charts for the U.S. and its territories, and possessions are produced by Aeronautical Information Services (AIS), https://www.faa.gov/air_traffic/flight_info/aeronav/safety_alerts/, which is part of FAA's Air Traffic Organization, Mission Support Services.

2. Obtaining Aeronautical Charts

2.1 Public sales of charts and publications are available through a network of FAA approved print providers. A listing of products, dates of latest editions, and print providers is available on the AIS website at: https://www.faa.gov/air_traffic/flight_info/aeronav/safety_alerts/.

3. Selected Charts and Products Available

VFR Navigation Charts
IFR Navigation Charts
Planning Charts
Supplementary Charts and Publications
Digital Products

4. General Description of Each Chart Series

4.1 VFR Navigation Charts

4.1.1 Sectional Aeronautical Charts. Sectional Charts are designed for visual navigation of slow to medium speed aircraft. The topographic information consists of contour lines, shaded relief, drainage patterns, and an extensive selection of visual checkpoints and landmarks used for flight under VFR. Cultural features include cities and towns, roads, railroads, and other distinct landmarks. The aeronautical information includes visual and radio aids to navigation, airports, controlled airspace, special−use airspace, obstructions, and related data. Scale 1 inch = 6.86nm/1:500,000. 60 x 20 inches folded to 5 x 10 inches. Revised every 56 days. (See FIG GEN 3.2−1 and FIG GEN 3.2−2.)

4.1.2 VFR Terminal Area Charts (TAC). TACs depict the airspace designated as Class B airspace. While similar to sectional charts, TACs have more detail because the scale is larger. The TAC should be used by pilots intending to operate to or from airfields within or near Class B or Class C airspace. Areas with TAC coverage are indicated by a • on the Sectional Chart indexes. VFR Transition Routes may also be depicted and/or described on this chart. Scale 1 inch = 3.43nm/1:250,000. Revised every 56 days. (See FIG GEN 3.2−1 and FIG GEN 3.2−2.)

4.1.3 U.S. Gulf Coast VFR Aeronautical Chart. The Gulf Coast Chart is designed primarily for helicopter operation in the Gulf of Mexico area. Information depicted includes offshore mineral leasing areas and blocks, oil drilling platforms, and high density helicopter activity areas. Scale 1 inch = 13.7nm/1:1,000,000. 55 x 27 inches folded to 5 x 10 inches. Revised every 56 days.

4.1.4 Grand Canyon VFR Aeronautical Chart. Covers the Grand Canyon National Park area and is designed to promote aviation safety, flight free zones, and facilitate VFR navigation in this popular area. The chart contains aeronautical information for general aviation VFR pilots on one side and commercial VFR air tour operators on the other side. Revised every 56 days.

FIG GEN 3.2−1

Sectional and VFR Terminal Area Charts for the Conterminous U.S., Hawaii, Puerto Rico, and Virgin Islands

FIG GEN 3.2−2

Sectional and VFR Terminal Area Charts for Alaska

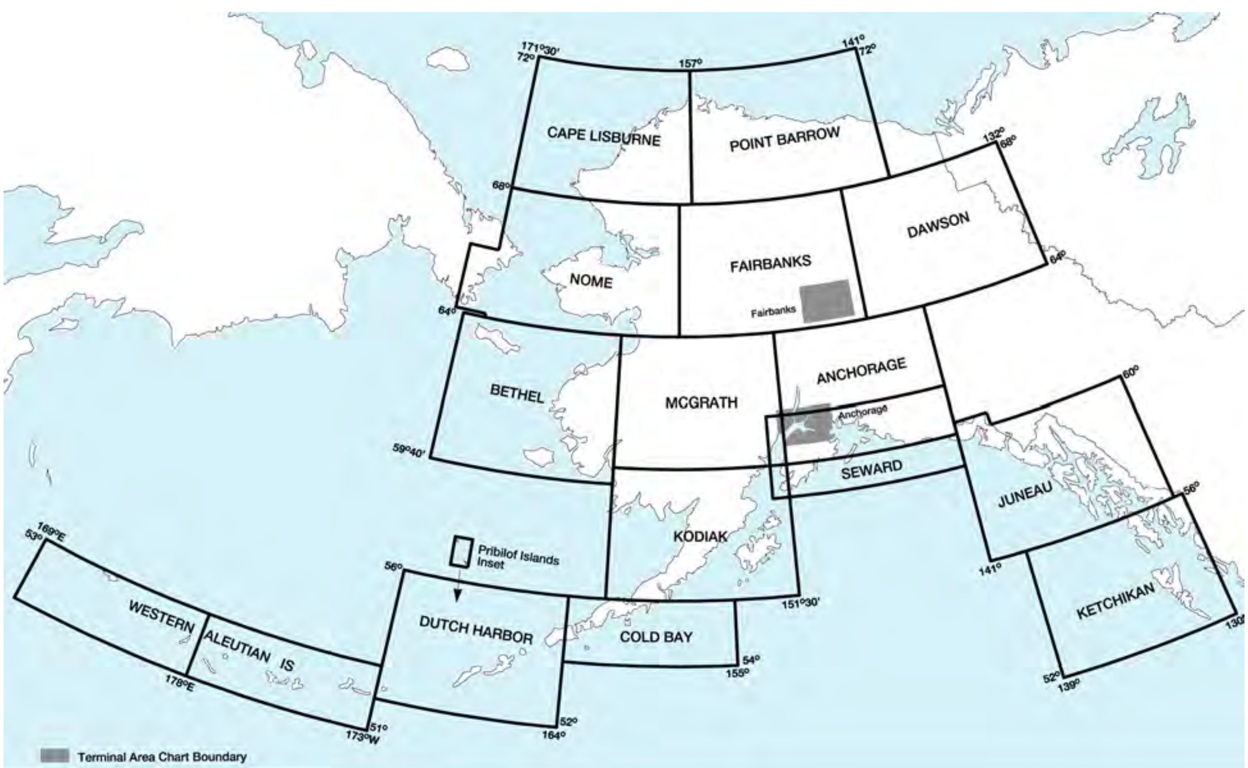


FIG GEN 3.2−11
U.S. VFR Wall Planning Chart

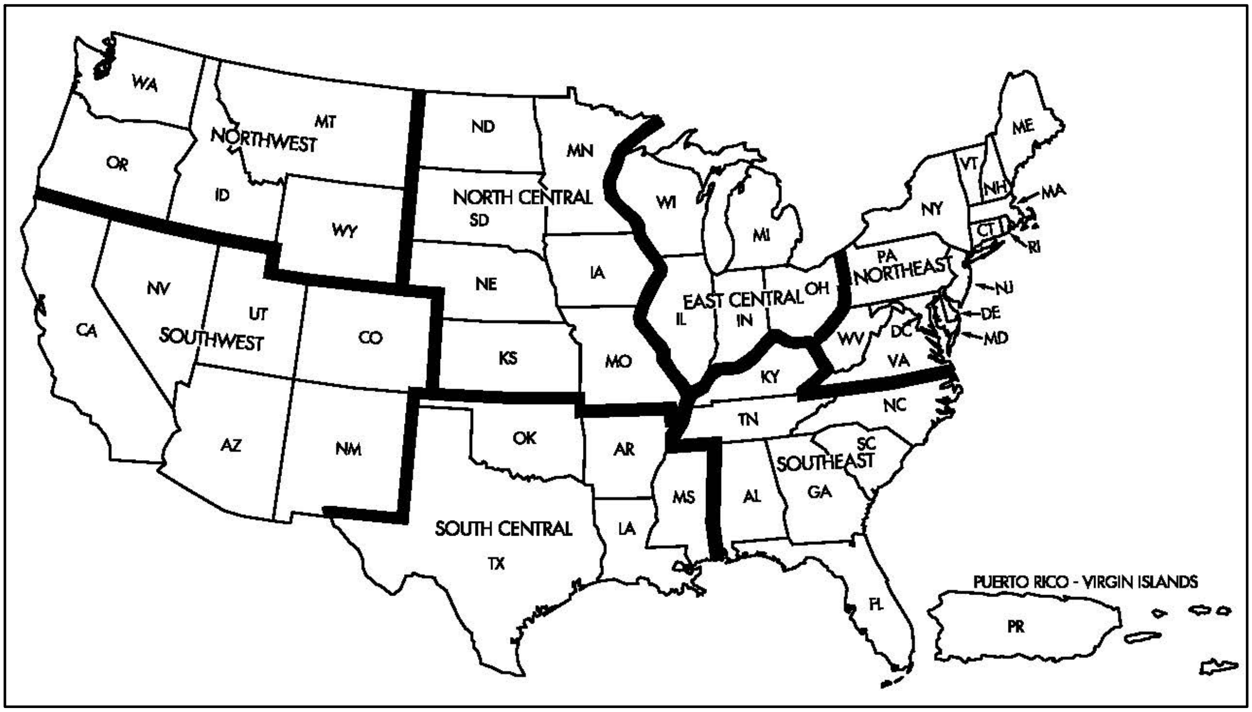
4.3.5 VFR Flyway Planning Charts. This chart is printed on the reverse side of selected TAC charts. The coverage is the same as the associated TAC. Flyway planning charts depict flight paths and altitudes recommended for use to bypass high traffic areas. Ground references are provided as a guide for visual orientation. Flyway planning charts are designed for use in conjunction with TACs and sectional charts and are not to be used for navigation. VFR Transition Routes may also be depicted and/or described on this chart. Chart scale 1 inch = 3.43nm/1:250,000.

4.4 Supplementary Charts and Publications

4.4.1 Chart Supplement refers to a series of civil/military flight information publications issued by the FAA every 56 days consisting of the Chart Supplement U.S., Chart Supplement Alaska, and Chart Supplement Pacific.

4.4.2 Chart Supplement U.S. This is a civil/military flight information publication. This 7-volume book series is designed for use with appropriate IFR or VFR charts and contains data including, but not limited to, airports, NAVAIDs, communications data, weather data sources, special notices, non-regulatory operational procedures, and airport diagrams. Coverage includes the conterminous U.S., Puerto Rico, and the Virgin Islands. The Chart Supplement U.S. shows data that cannot be readily depicted in graphic form; for example, airport hours of operations, types of fuel available, runway widths, lighting codes, etc. (See FIG GEN 3.2−12.)

FIG GEN 3.2−12
Chart Supplement U.S. Geographic Areas



4.4.3 Chart Supplement Alaska. This is a civil/military flight information publication. This single-volume book is designed for use with appropriate IFR or VFR charts. The Chart Supplement Alaska contains data including, but not limited to, airports, NAVAIDs, communications data, weather data sources, special notices, non-regulatory operational procedures, and airport diagrams. The publication also includes uniquely geographical operational requirements such as area notices and emergency procedures.

4.4.4 Chart Supplement Pacific. This is a civil/military flight information publication. This single volume book is designed for use with appropriate IFR or VFR charts. The Chart Supplement Pacific contains data including, but not limited to, airports, NAVAIDs, communications data, weather data sources, special notices, non−regulatory operational procedures, and airport diagrams. The publication also includes airspace, navigational facilities, non−regulatory Pacific area procedures, Instrument Approach Procedures (IAP), Departure Procedures (DP), Standard Terminal Arrival (STAR) charts, radar minimums, supporting data for the Hawaiian and Pacific Islands, and uniquely geographical operational requirements such as area notices and emergency procedures.

4.4.5 North Atlantic Route Chart. Designed for FAA controllers to monitor transatlantic flights, this 5−color chart shows oceanic control areas, coastal navigation aids, oceanic reporting points, and NAVAID geographic coordinates. Full Size Chart: scale 1 inch = 113.1nm/1:8,250,000. Chart is shipped flat only. Half Size Chart: scale 1 inch = 150.8nm/1:11,000,000. Chart is 29−3/4 x 20−1/2 inches, shipped folded to 5 x 10 inches only. Chart are revised every 56 days. (See FIG GEN 3.2−13.)

e) ATC will also provide priority handling requested. These aircraft may file "HOSP" or "AIR EVAC" in either Item 11 (Remarks) of the flight plan or Item 18 of an international flight plan. For aircraft identification in radio transmissions, civilian pilots will use normal call signs when filing "HOSP" and military pilots will use the "EVAC" call sign.

4.4.3.8 Student Pilots Radio Identification. The FAA desires to help the student pilot in acquiring sufficient practical experience in the environment in which he/she will be required to operate. To receive additional assistance while operating in areas of concentrated air traffic, a student pilot need only identify himself/herself as a student pilot during his/her initial call to an FAA radio facility. For instance, "Dayton Tower, Fleetwing One Two Three Four, Student Pilot." This special identification will alert FAA air traffic control personnel and enable them to provide the student pilot with such extra assistance and consideration as he/she may need. It is recommended that student pilots identify themselves as such, on initial contact with each clearance delivery prior to taxiing, ground control, tower, approach and departure control frequency, or FSS contact.

4.4.4 Description of Interchange or Leased Aircraft

4.4.4.1 Controllers issue traffic information based on familiarity with airline equipment and color/markings. When an air carrier dispatches a flight using another company's equipment and the pilot does not advise the terminal ATC facility, the possible confusion in aircraft identification can compromise safety.

4.4.4.2 Pilots flying an "interchange" or "leased" aircraft not bearing the colors/markings of the company operating the aircraft should inform the terminal ATC facility on first contact the name of the operating company and trip number, followed by the company name as displayed on the aircraft, and aircraft type.

EXAMPLE−
AIR CAL 311, United (Interchange/Lease), Boeing 727.

4.4.5 Ground Station Call Signs

4.4.5.1 Pilots, when calling a ground station, should begin with the name of the facility being called followed by the type of the facility being called, as indicated in the following examples.

TBL GEN 3.4−3
Calling a Ground Station

Facility	Call Sign
Airport UNICOM	"Shannon UNICOM"
FAA Flight Service Station	"Chicago Radio"
Airport Traffic Control Tower	"Augusta Tower"
Clearance Delivery Position (IFR)	"Dallas Clearance Delivery"
Ground Control Position in Tower	"Miami Ground"
Radar or Nonradar Approach Control Position	"Oklahoma City Approach"
Radar Departure Control Position	"St. Louis Departure"
FAA Air Route Traffic Control Center	"Washington Center"

4.5 Radio Communications Phraseology

4.5.1 Phonetic Alphabet

4.5.1.1 The International Civil Aviation Organization (ICAO) phonetic alphabet is used by FAA personnel when communications conditions are such that the information cannot be readily received without their use. Air traffic control facilities may also request pilots to use phonetic letter equivalents when aircraft with similar sounding identifications are receiving communications on the same frequency. Pilots should use the phonetic alphabet when identifying their aircraft during initial contact with air traffic control facilities. Additionally, use the phonetic equivalents for single letters and to spell out groups of letters or difficult words during adverse communications conditions.

TBL GEN 3.4−4

Character	Morse Code	Telephony	Phonic (Pronunciation)
A	● —	Alfa	(AL−FAH)
B	— ● ● ●	Bravo	(BRAH−VOH)
C	— ● — ● —	Charlie	(CHAR−LEE) or (SHAR−LEE)
D	— ● ●	Delta	(DELL−TAH)
E	●	Echo	(ECK−OH)
F	● ● — ●	Foxtrot	(FOKS−TROT)
G	— — ●	Golf	(GOLF)
H	● ● ● ●	Hotel	(HOH−TEL)
I	● ●	India	(IN−DEE−AH)
J	● — — —	Juliett	(JEW−LEE−ETT)
K	— ● —	Kilo	(KEY−LOH)
L	● — ● ●	Lima	(LEE−MAH)
M	— —	Mike	(MIKE)
N	— ●	November	(NO−VEM−BER)
O	— — —	Oscar	(OSS−CAH)
P	● — — ●	Papa	(PAH−PAH)
Q	— ● —	Quebec	(KEH−BECK)

Character	Morse Code	Telephony	Phonic (Pronunciation)
R	● — ●	Romeo	(ROW−ME−OH)
S	● ● ●	Sierra	(SEE−AIR−RAH)
T	—	Tango	(TANG−GO)
U	● ● —	Uniform	(YOU−NEE−FORM) or (OO−NEE−FORM)
V	● ● ● —	Victor	(VIK−TAH)
W	● — —	Whiskey	(WISS−KEY)
X	— ● ● —	Xray	(ECKS−RAY)
Y	— ● — —	Yankee	(YANG−KEY)
Z	— — ● ●	Zulu	(ZOO−LOO)
1	● — — — —	One	(WUN)
2	● ● — — —	Two	(TOO)
3	● ● ● — —	Three	(TREE)
4	● ● ● ● —	Four	(FOW−ER)
5	● ● ● ● ●	Five	(FIFE)
6	— ● ● ● ●	Six	(SIX)
7	— — ● ● ●	Seven	(SEV−EN)
8	— — — ● ●	Eight	(AIT)
9	— — — — ●	Nine	(NIN−ER)
0	— — — — —	Zero	(ZEE−RO)

4.5.2 Figures

4.5.2.1 Figures indicating hundreds and thousands in round numbers, as for ceiling heights, and upper wind levels up to 9,900, must be spoken in accordance with the following:

EXAMPLE−

1. *500 . . . . five hundred*

2. *4,500 . . . . . . four thousand five hundred*

4.5.2.2 Numbers above 9,900 must be spoken by separating the digits preceding the word "thousand."

EXAMPLE−

1. *10,000 . . . . . one zero thousand*

2. *13,500 . . . . . one three thousand five hundred*

4.5.2.3 Transmit airway or jet route numbers as follows:

EXAMPLE−

1. *V12 . . . . Victor Twelve*

2. *J533 . . . . J Five Thirty− Three*

4.5.2.4 All other numbers must be transmitted by pronouncing each digit.

EXAMPLE−

10 . . . . one zero

TBL GEN 3.4−6

Station and Operating Agency	Radio Call	Transmitting Frequencies	Remarks
HONOLULU (FAA)	Honolulu Radio	122.6 122.2 #121.5 MHz	#Emergency. Frequency 122.1 also available for receiving only.
MIAMI (FAA)	Miami Radio	126.7 118.4 126.9 122.2 122.4 122.75 123.65 127.9 MHz	Local and Short Range.
		#121.5 MHz	#Emergency.
NEW YORK (FAA)	New York Radio (Volmet)	3485* 6604 10051 13270* kHz	*3485 Volmet broadcasts from 1 hour after sunset to 1 hour before sunrise.
			*13270 Volmet broadcasts from 1 hour before sunrise to 1 hour after sunset.
			Broadcasts at H+00−05; Aerodrome Forecasts, Detroit, Chicago, Cleveland. Hourly Reports, Detroit, Chicago, Cleveland, Niagara Falls, Milwaukee, Indianapolis.
			Broadcasts at H+05−10; SIGMET, (Oceanic−New York). Aerodrome Forecasts, Bangor, Pittsburgh, Charlotte. Hourly Reports, Bangor, Pittsburgh, Windsor Locks, St. Louis, Charlotte, Minneapolis.
			Broadcasts at H+10−15; Aerodrome Forecasts, New York, Newark, Boston. Hourly reports, New York, Newark, Boston, Baltimore, Philadelphia, Washington.
			Broadcasts at H+15−20; SIGMET (Oceanic−Miami/San Juan). Aerodrome Forecasts, Bermuda, Miami, Atlanta. Hourly Reports, Bermuda, Miami, Nassau, Freeport, Tampa, West Palm Beach, Atlanta.
			Broadcasts at H+30−35; Aerodrome Forecasts, Niagara Falls, Milwaukee, Indianapolis. Hourly Reports Detroit, Chicago, Cleveland, Niagara Falls, Milwaukee, Indianapolis.
			Broadcasts at H+35−40; SIGMET (Oceanic−New York). Aerodrome Forecasts, Windsor Locks, St. Louis. Hourly Reports, Bangor, Pittsburgh, Windsor Locks, St. Louis, Charlotte, Minneapolis.
			Broadcasts at H+40−45; Aerodrome Forecasts, Baltimore, Philadelphia, Washington. Hourly Reports, New York, Newark, Boston, Baltimore, Philadelphia, Washington.
			Broadcasts at H+45−50; SIGMET (Oceanic−Miami/San Juan). Aerodrome Forecasts, Nassau, Freeport. Hourly Reports, Bermuda, Miami, Nassau, Freeport, Tampa, West Palm Beach, Atlanta.

Station and Operating Agency	Radio Call	Transmitting Frequencies	Remarks
		3494 6640 8903 11342 13348 17925 21964 kHz	Long Distance Operations Control (LDOC) Service (phone−patch). Communications are limited to operational control matters only. Public correspondence (personal messages) to/from crew or passengers cannot be accepted. **Note:** San Francisco RADIO can also provide HF communications along the polar routes on these LDOC frequencies through their remote site located at Barrow, Alaska.
		131.95 MHz	Extended range VHF. Coverage area includes area surrounding the Hawaiian Islands and Guam. Coverage extends out approximately 250 NM from Hawaii and from the West coast.
		129.40 MHz	For en route communications for aircraft operating on Seattle/Anchorage/Routes.
		436625	Aircraft operating within the Oakland and Anchorage Oceanic FIRs.
OAKLAND (FAA)	Oakland Radio	122.5 122.2 #121.5 MHz	#Emergency.
SAN JUAN P.R. (FAA)	San Juan Radio	122.2 122.3 122.6 108.2 108.6 110.6 MHz	For frequencies 108.2 and 110.6, MHz use 122.1 MHz, for transmissions to San Juan Radio. For frequency 108.6 use 123.6 MHz.

9. Selective Calling System (SELCAL) Facilities Available

9.1 The SELCAL is a communication system which permits the selective calling of individual aircraft over radio−telephone channels from the ground station to properly equipped aircraft, so as to eliminate the need for the flight crew to constantly monitor the frequency in use.

TBL GEN 3.4−7

Location	Operator	HF	VHF
New York	RADIO	X	X
San Francisco	RADIO	X	X

10. Special North Atlantic, Caribbean, and Pacific Area Communications

10.1 VHF air−to−air frequencies enable aircraft engaged on flights over remote and oceanic areas out of range of VHF ground stations to exchange necessary operational information and to facilitate the resolution of operational problems.

10.2 Frequencies have been designated as follows:

TBL GEN 3.4−8

Area	Frequency
North Atlantic	123.45 MHz
Caribbean	123.45 MHz
Pacific	123.45 MHz

11. Distress and Urgency Communications

11.1 A pilot who encounters a distress or urgency condition can obtain assistance simply by contacting the air traffic facility or other agency in whose area of responsibility the aircraft is operating, stating the nature of the observations; for example, contract towers and airport operators may be approved by the Federal Government to provide weather observations.

3.6.11.2 Enhanced Weather Information System (EWINS). An EWINS is an FAA authorized, proprietary system for tracking, evaluating, reporting, and forecasting the presence or lack of adverse weather phenomena. The FAA authorizes a certificate holder to use an EWINS to produce flight movement forecasts, adverse weather phenomena forecasts, and other meteorological advisories. For more detailed information regarding EWINS, see the Aviation Weather Services Advisory Circular 00−45 and the Flight Standards Information Management System 8900.1.

3.6.11.3 Commercial Weather Information Providers. In general, commercial providers produce proprietary weather products based on NWS/FAA products with formatting and layout modifications but no material changes to the weather information itself. This is also referred to as "repackaging." In addition, commercial providers may produce analyses, forecasts, and other proprietary weather products that substantially alter the information contained in government−produced products. However, those proprietary weather products that substantially alter government−produced weather products or information, may only be approved for use by 14 CFR Part 121 and Part 135 certificate holders if the commercial provider is EWINS qualified.

NOTE−
Commercial weather information providers contracted by FAA to provide weather observations, analyses, and forecasts (e.g., contract towers) are included in the Federal Government category of approved sources by virtue of maintaining required technical and quality assurance standards under Federal Government oversight.

3.7 Graphical Forecasts for Aviation (GFA)

3.7.1 The GFA website is intended to provide the necessary aviation weather information to give users a complete picture of the weather that may affect flight in the continental United States (CONUS). The website includes observational data, forecasts, and warnings that can be viewed from 14 hours in the past to 15 hours in the future, including thunderstorms, clouds, flight category, precipitation, icing, turbulence, and wind. Hourly model data and forecasts, including information on clouds, flight category, precipitation, icing, turbulence, wind, and graphical output from the National Weather Service's (NWS) National Digital Forecast Data (NDFD) are available. Wind, icing, and turbulence forecasts are available in 3,000 ft increments from the surface up to 30,000 ft MSL, and in 6,000 ft increments from 30,000 ft MSL to 48,000 ft MSL. Turbulence forecasts are also broken into low (below 18,000 ft MSL) and high (at or above 18,000 ft MSL) graphics. A maximum icing graphic and maximum wind velocity graphic (regardless of altitude) are also available. Built with modern geospatial information tools, users can pan and zoom to focus on areas of greatest interest. Target users are commercial and general aviation pilots, operators, briefers, and dispatchers.

3.7.2 Weather Products.

3.7.2.1 The Aviation Forecasts include gridded displays of various weather parameters as well as NWS textual weather observations, forecasts, and warnings. Icing, turbulence, and wind gridded products are three−dimensional. Other gridded products are two−dimensional and may represent a "composite" of a three−dimensional weather phenomenon or a surface weather variable, such as horizontal visibility. The following are examples of aviation forecasts depicted on the GFA:

a) Terminal Aerodrome Forecast (TAF)

b) Ceiling & Visibility (CIG/VIS)

c) Clouds

d) Precipitation / Weather (PCPN/WX)

e) Thunderstorm (TS)

f) Winds

g) Turbulence

h) Ice

3.7.2.2 Observations & Warnings (Obs/Warn). The Obs/Warn option provides an option to display weather data for the current time and the previous 14 hours (rounded to the nearest hour). Users may advance through time using the arrow buttons or by clicking on the desired hour. Provided below are the Obs/Warn product tabs available on the GFA website:

a) METAR

b) Precipitation/Weather (PCPN/WX)

c) Ceiling & Visibility (CIG/VIS)

d) Pilot Weather Report (PIREP)

e) Radar & Satellite (RAD/SAT)

3.7.2.3 The GFA will be continuously updated and available online at http://aviationweather.gov/gfa. Upon clicking the link above, select INFO on the top right corner of the map display. The next screen presents the option of selecting Overview, Products, and Tutorial. Simply select the tab of interest to explore the enhanced digital and graphical weather products designed to replace the legacy FA. Users should also refer to the *Aviation Weather Handbook*, FAA−H−8083−28, Graphical Forecasts for Aviation (GFA) Tool, for more detailed information on the GFA.

3.7.2.4 GFA Static Images. Some users with limited internet connectivity may access static images via the Aviation Weather Center (AWC) Decision Support Imagery at: https://aviationweather.gov/graphics/ . There are two static graphical images available, titled Aviation Cloud Forecast and Aviation Surface Forecast. The Aviation Cloud Forecast provides cloud coverage, bases, layers, and tops with AIRMETs for mountain obscuration and AIRMETs for icing overlaid. The Aviation Surface Forecast provides visibility, weather phenomena, and winds (including wind gusts) with AIRMETs for instrument flight rules conditions and AIRMETs for sustained surface winds of 30 knots or more overlaid. These images are presented on ten separate maps providing forecast views for the entire contiguous United States (U.S.) on one and nine regional views which provide more detail for the user. They are updated every 3 hours and provide forecast snapshots for 3, 6, 9, 12, 15, and 18 hours into the future. (See FIG GEN 3.5−2 and FIG GEN 3.5−2.)

NOTE−
The contiguous United States (U.S.) refers to the 48 adjoining U.S. states on the continent of North America that are south of Canada and north of Mexico, plus the District of Columbia. The term excludes the states of Alaska, Hawaii, and all off−shore U.S. territories and possessions, such as Puerto Rico.

FIG GEN 3.5−2
Aviation Surface Forecast

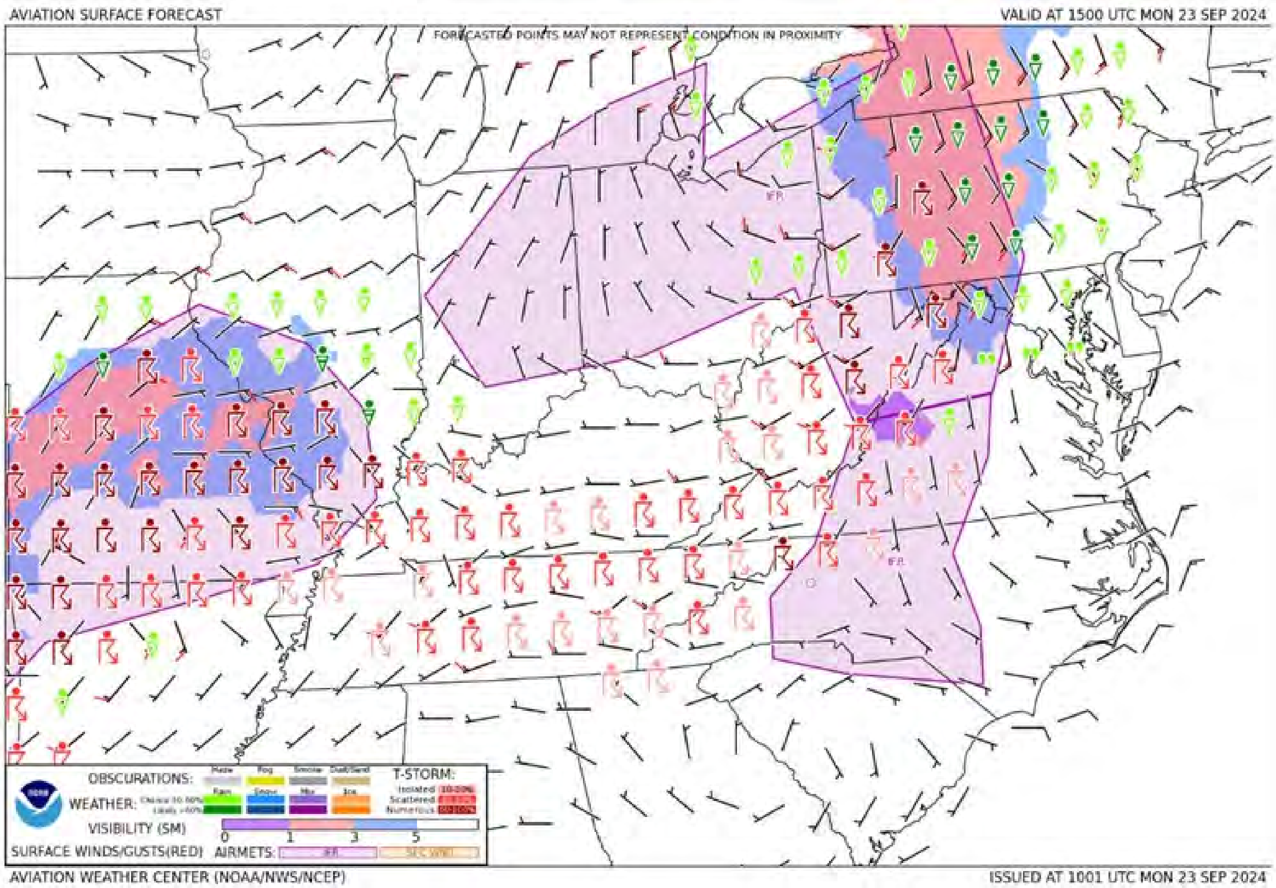
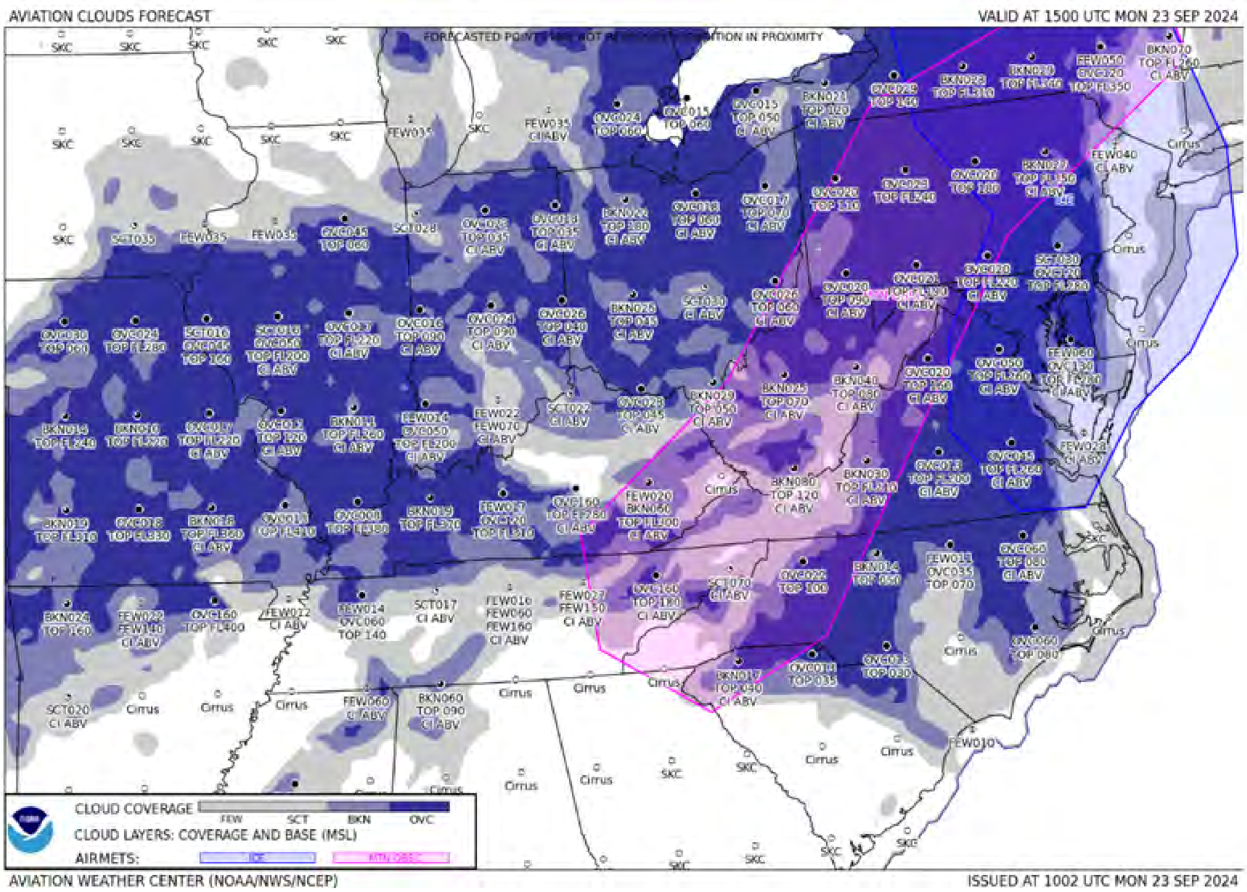


FIG GEN 3.5−3
Aviation Cloud Forecast



3.8 Preflight Briefing

3.8.1 Flight Service is one of the primary sources for obtaining preflight briefings and to file flight plans by phone or the Internet. Flight Service Specialists are qualified and certificated as Pilot Weather Briefers by the FAA. They are not authorized to make original forecasts, but are authorized to translate and interpret available forecasts and reports directly into terms describing the weather conditions which you can expect along your flight route and at your destination. Prior to every flight, pilots should gather all information vital to the nature of the flight. Pilots can receive a regulatory compliant briefing without contacting Flight Service. Pilots are encouraged to use automated resources and review AC 91−92, Pilot's Guide to a Preflight Briefing, for more information. Pilots who prefer to contact Flight Service are encouraged to conduct a self−brief prior to calling. Conducting a self−brief before contacting Flight Service provides familiarity of meteorological and aeronautical conditions applicable to the route of flight and promotes a better understanding of weather information.

Three basic types of preflight briefings (Standard, Abbreviated, and Outlook) are available to serve the pilot's specific needs. Pilots should specify to the briefer the type of briefing they want, along with their appropriate background information. This will enable the briefer to tailor the information to the pilot's intended flight. The following paragraphs describe the types of briefings available and the information provided in each briefing.

3.8.2 Standard Briefing. You should request a Standard Briefing any time you are planning a flight and you have not received a previous briefing or have not received preliminary information through online resources. International data may be inaccurate or incomplete. If you are planning a flight outside of U.S. controlled airspace, the briefer will advise you to check data as soon as practical after entering foreign airspace, unless you advise that you have the international cautionary advisory. The briefer will automatically provide the following information in the sequence listed, except as noted, when it is applicable to your proposed flight.

3.8.2.1 Adverse Conditions. Significant meteorological and/or aeronautical information that might influence the pilot to alter or cancel the proposed flight; for example, hazardous weather conditions, airport closures, air traffic delays, etc. Pilots should be especially alert for current or forecast weather that could reduce flight minimums below VFR or IFR conditions. Pilots should also be alert for any reported or forecast icing if the aircraft is not certified for operating in icing conditions. Flying into areas of icing or weather below minimums could have disastrous results.

3.8.2.2 VFR Flight Not Recommended. When VFR flight is proposed and sky conditions or visibilities are present or forecast, surface or aloft, that, in the briefer's judgment, would make flight under VFR doubtful, the briefer will describe the conditions, describe the affected locations, and use the phrase "*VFR flight not recommended.*" This recommendation is advisory in nature. The final decision as to whether the flight can be conducted safely rests solely with the pilot. Upon receiving a "*VFR flight not recommended*" statement, the non−IFR rated pilot will need to make a "go or no go" decision. This decision should be based on weighing the current and forecast weather conditions against the pilot's experience and ratings. The aircraft's equipment, capabilities and limitations should also be considered.

NOTE−
Pilots flying into areas of minimal VFR weather could encounter unforecasted lowering conditions that place the aircraft outside the pilot's ratings and experience level. This could result in spatial disorientation and/or loss of control of the aircraft.

3.8.2.3 Synopsis. A brief statement describing the type, location, and movement of weather systems and/or air masses which might affect the proposed flight.

NOTE−
The first 3 elements of a standard briefing may be combined in any order when the briefer believes it will help to describe conditions more clearly.

3.8.2.4 Current Conditions. Reported weather conditions applicable to the flight will be summarized from all available sources; e.g., METARs, PIREPs, RAREPs. This element may be omitted if the proposed time of departure is beyond two hours, unless the information is specifically requested by the pilot. For more detailed information on PIREPS, users can refer to the current version of AC 00−45, Aviation Weather Services.

3.8.2.5 En Route Forecast. En route conditions forecast for the proposed route are summarized in logical order; i.e., departure−climbout, en route, and descent.

3.8.2.6 Destination Forecast. The destination forecast (TAF) for the planned estimated time of arrival (ETA). Any significant changes within 1 hour before and after the planned arrival are included.

3.8.2.7 Winds Aloft. Forecast winds aloft for the proposed route will be provided in knots and degrees, referenced to true north. The briefer will interpolate wind directions and speeds between levels and stations as necessary to provide expected conditions at planned altitudes.

3.8.2.8 Notices to Air Missions (NOTAMs)

a) Available NOTAM (D) information pertinent to the proposed flight, including special use airspace (SUA) NOTAMs for restricted areas, aerial refueling, and night vision goggles (NVG).

NOTE−
Other SUA NOTAMs (D), such as military operations area (MOA), military training route (MTR), and warning area NOTAMs, are considered "upon request" briefing items as indicated in paragraph 3.8.2.10.

b) Prohibited Areas P−40, P−49, P−56, and the special flight rules area (SFRA) for Washington, DC.

NOTE−
For information on SFRAs, see ENR 5, Navigation Warnings, paragraph 2.4.2.

c) FSS briefers do not provide FDC NOTAM information for special instrument approach procedures unless specifically asked. Pilots authorized by the FAA to use special instrument approach procedures must specifically request FDC NOTAM information for these procedures.

NOTE−
1. *NOTAM information may be combined with current conditions when the briefer believes it is logical to do so.*

2. *Airway NOTAMs, procedural NOTAMs, and NOTAMs that are general in nature and not tied to a specific airport/facility (for example, flight advisories and restrictions, open duration special security instructions, and special flight rules areas) are briefed solely by pilot request. NOTAMs, graphic notices, and other information published in the Domestic Notices and International Notices are not included in pilot briefings unless the pilot specifically requests a review of these notices. For complete flight information, pilots are urged to review the Domestic Notices and International Notices found in the External Links section of the Federal NOTAM System (FNS) NOTAM Search or Air Traffic Plans and Publications website and the Chart Supplement in addition to obtaining a briefing.*

3.8.2.9 Air Traffic Control (ATC) Delays. Any known ATC delays and flow control advisories which might affect the proposed flight.

3.8.2.10 Pilots may obtain the following from flight service station briefers upon request:

a) Information on Special Use Airspace (SUA) and SUA related airspace, except those listed in paragraph 3.8.2.8.

NOTE−
1. *For the purpose of this paragraph, SUA and related airspace includes the following types of airspace: alert area, military operations area (MOA), warning area, and air traffic control assigned airspace (ATCAA). MTR data includes the following types of airspace: IFR training routes (IR), VFR training routes (VR), and slow training routes (SR).*

2. *Pilots are encouraged to request updated information from ATC facilities while in flight.*

b) A review of airway NOTAMs, procedural NOTAMs, and NOTAMs that are general in nature and not tied to a specific airport/facility (for example, flight advisories and restrictions, open duration special security instructions, and special flight rules areas), Domestic Notices and International Notices. Domestic Notices and International Notices are found in the External Links section of the Federal NOTAM System (FNS) NOTAM Search System.

c) Approximate density altitude data.

d) Information regarding such items as air traffic services and rules, customs/immigration procedures, ADIZ rules, and search and rescue.

e) NOTAMs, available military NOTAMs, runway friction measurement value NOTAMs.

f) GPS RAIM availability for 1 hour before to 1 hour after ETA, or a time specified by the pilot.

g) Other assistance as required.

3.8.3 Abbreviated Briefing. Request an Abbreviated Briefing when you need information to supplement mass disseminated data, to update a previous briefing, or when you need only one or two specific items. Provide the briefer with appropriate background information, the time you received the previous information, and/or the specific items needed. You should indicate the source of the information already received so that the briefer can limit the briefing to the information that you have not received, and/or appreciable changes in meteorological/aeronautical conditions since your previous briefing. To the extent possible, the briefer will provide the information in the sequence shown for a Standard Briefing. If you request only one or two specific items, the briefer will advise you if adverse conditions are present or forecast. Adverse conditions contain both meteorological and aeronautical information. Details on these conditions will be provided at your request.

3.8.4 Outlook Briefing. You should request an Outlook Briefing whenever your proposed time of departure is 6 or more hours from the time of the briefing. The briefer will provide available forecast data applicable to the proposed flight. This type of briefing is provided for planning purposes only. You should obtain a Standard or Abbreviated Briefing prior to departure in order to obtain such items as adverse conditions, current conditions, updated forecasts, winds aloft, and NOTAMs.

3.8.5 Inflight Briefing. You are encouraged to conduct a self−briefing using online resources or obtain your preflight briefing by telephone or in person before departure (Alaska only). In those cases where you need to obtain a preflight briefing or an update to a previous briefing by radio, you should contact the nearest FSS to obtain this information. After communications have been established, advise the specialist of the type briefing you require and provide appropriate background information. You will be provided information as specified in the above paragraphs, depending on the type of briefing requested. En Route advisories tailored to the phase of flight that begins after climb−out and ends with descent to land are provided upon pilot request. Besides flight service, there are other resources available to the pilot inflight, including:

Automatic Dependent Surveillance−Broadcast (ADS−B). Free traffic, weather, and flight information are available on ADS−B In receivers that can receive data over 978 MHz (UAT) broadcasts. These services are available across the nation to aircraft owners who equip with ADS−B In, with further advances coming from airborne and runway traffic awareness. Even search−and−rescue operations benefit from accurate ADS−B tracking.

Flight Information Services−Broadcast (FIS−B). FIS−B is a free service; but is only available to aircraft who can receive data over 978 MHz (UAT). FIS−B automatically transmits a wide range of weather products with national and regional focus to all equipped aircraft. Having current weather and aeronautical information in the cockpit helps pilots plan more safe and efficient flight paths, as well as make strategic decisions during flight to avoid potentially hazardous weather.

Pilots are encouraged to provide a continuous exchange of information on weather, winds, turbulence, flight visibility, icing, etc., between pilots and inflight specialists. Pilots should report good weather as well as bad, and confirm expected conditions as well as unexpected. Remember that weather conditions can change rapidly and that a "go or no go" decision, as mentioned in paragraph 3.8.2.2, should be assessed at all phases of flight.

3.8.6 Following any briefing, feel free to ask for any information that you or the briefer may have missed. It helps to save your questions until the briefing has been completed. This way the briefer is able to present the information in a logical sequence and lessens the chance of important items being overlooked.

3.9 Inflight Aviation Weather Advisories

3.9.1 Inflight Aviation Weather Advisories are forecasts to advise en route aircraft of development of potentially hazardous weather. Inflight aviation weather advisories in the conterminous U.S. are issued by the Aviation Weather Center (AWC) in Kansas City, MO, as well as 20 Center Weather Service Units (CWSU) associated with ARTCCs. AWC also issues advisories for portions of the Gulf of Mexico, Atlantic and Pacific Oceans, which are under the control of ARTCCs with Oceanic flight information regions (FIRs). The Weather Forecast Office (WFO) in Honolulu issues advisories for the Hawaiian Islands and a large portion of the Pacific Ocean. In Alaska, the Alaska Aviation Weather Unit (AAWU) issues inflight aviation weather advisories along with the Anchorage CWSU. All heights are referenced MSL, except in the case of ceilings (CIG) which indicate AGL.

3.9.2 There are four types of inflight aviation weather advisories: the SIGMET, the Convective SIGMET, the AIRMET, and the Center Weather Advisory (CWA). All of these advisories use VORs, airports, or well−known geographic areas to describe the hazardous weather areas.

3.9.3 The Severe Weather Watch Bulletins (WWs), (with associated Alert Messages) (AWW) supplements these Inflight Aviation Weather Advisories.

3.9.4 SIGMET. A SIGMET is a concise description of the occurrence or expected occurrence of specified en route weather phenomena which is expected to affect the safety of aircraft operations.

3.9.4.1 SIGMETs:

a) Are intended for dissemination to all pilots in flight to enhance safety.

b) Are issued by the responsible MWO as soon as it is practical to alert operators and aircrews of hazardous en route conditions.

c) Are unscheduled products that are valid for 4 hours; except SIGMETs associated with tropical cyclones and volcanic ash clouds are valid for 6 hours. Unscheduled updates and corrections are issued as necessary.

d) Use geographical points to describe the hazardous weather areas. These points can reference either VORs, airports, or latitude−longitude depending on SIGMET location. If the total area to be affected during the forecast period is very large, it could be that in actuality only a small portion of this total area would be affected at any one time.

EXAMPLE−
Example of a SIGMET:
BOSR WS 050600
SIGMET ROMEO 2 VALID UNTIL 051000
ME NH VT
FROM CAR TO YSJ TO CON TO MPV TO CAR
OCNL SEV TURB BLW 080 EXP DUE TO STG NWLY FLOW. CONDS CONTG BYD 1000Z.

3.9.4.2 SIGMETs over the contiguous U.S.:

a) Are issued corresponding to the areas described in FIG GEN 3.5−5 and are only for non−convective weather. The U.S. issues a special category of SIGMETs for convective weather called Convective SIGMETs.

b) Are identified by an alphabetic designator, from November through Yankee, excluding Sierra and Tango. Issuance for the same phenomenon will be sequentially numbered using the original designator until the phenomenon ends. For example, the first issuance in the Chicago (CHI) area (reference FIG GEN 3.5−5) for phenomenon moving from the Salt Lake City (SLC) area will be SIGMET Papa 3, if the previous two issuances, Papa 1 and Papa 2, had been in the SLC area. Note that no two different phenomena across the country can have the same alphabetic designator at the same time.

c) Use location identifiers (either VORs or airports) to describe the hazardous weather areas.

d) Are issued when the following phenomena occur or are expected to occur:

1) Severe icing not associated with thunderstorms.

2) Severe or extreme turbulence or clear air turbulence (CAT) not associated with thunderstorms.

3) Widespread dust storms or sandstorms lowering surface visibilities to below 3 miles.

4) Volcanic ash.

3.9.4.3 SIGMETs over Alaska:

a) Are issued for the Anchorage FIR including Alaska and nearby coastal waters corresponding to the areas described in FIG GEN 3.5−4 and are only for non−convective weather. The U.S. issues a special category of SIGMETs for convective weather called Convective SIGMETs.

b) Use location identifiers (either VORs or airports) to describe the hazardous weather areas.

c) Use points of latitude and longitude over the ocean areas of the Alaska FIR.

d) Are identified by an alphabetic designator from India through Mike.

e) In addition to the phenomenon applicable to SIGMETs over the contiguous U.S., SIGMETs over Alaska are also issued for:

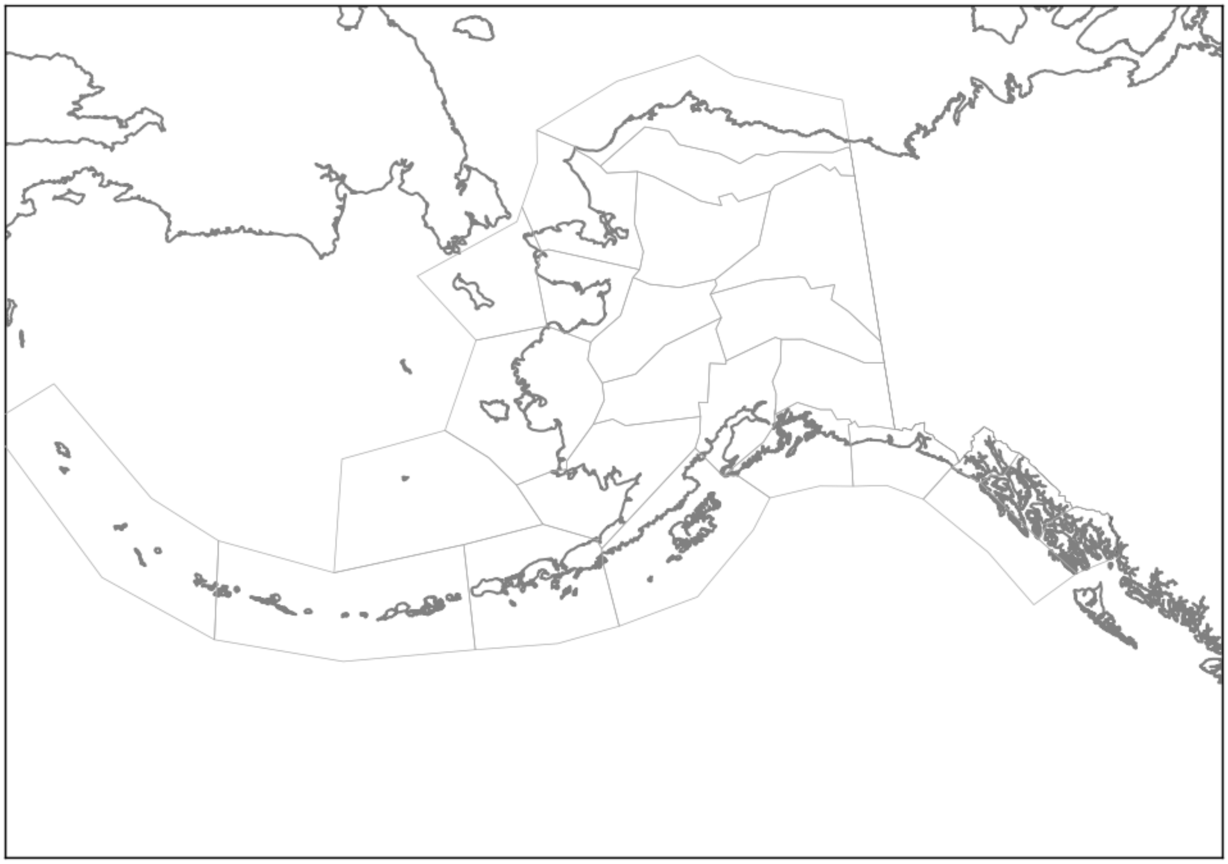
1) Tornadoes.

2) Lines of thunderstorms.

3) Embedded thunderstorms.

4) Hail greater than or equal to ¾ inch in diameter.

FIG GEN 3.5−4
Alaska SIGMET and Area Forecast Zones



3.9.4.4 SIGMETs over oceanic regions (New York Oceanic FIR, Oakland Oceanic FIR including Hawaii, Houston Oceanic FIR, Miami Oceanic FIR, San Juan FIR), points of latitude and longitude are used to describe the hazard area.

a) SIGMETs over the Oakland Oceanic FIR west of 140 west and south of 30 north (including the Hawaiian Islands), are identified by an alphabetic designator from November through Zulu.

b) SIGMETs over the Oakland Oceanic FIR east of 140 west and north of 30 north are identified by an alphabetic designator from Alpha through Mike.

c) SIGMETs over the New York Oceanic FIR, Houston Oceanic FIR, Miami Oceanic FIR, and San Juan FIR are identified by an alphabetic designator from Alpha through Mike.

d) In addition to SIGMETs issued for the phenomenon for the contiguous U.S., SIGMETs in the oceanic regions are also issued for:

1) Tornadoes.

2) Lines of thunderstorms.

3) Embedded thunderstorms.

4) Hail greater than or equal to ¾ inch in diameter.

3.9.5 Convective SIGMET

3.9.5.1 Convective SIGMETs are issued in the conterminous U.S. for any of the following:

a) Severe thunderstorm due to:

1) Surface winds greater than or equal to 50 knots.

2) Hail at the surface greater than or equal to $^{3}/_{4}$ inches in diameter.

3) Tornadoes.

b) Embedded thunderstorms.

c) A line of thunderstorms.

d) Thunderstorms producing precipitation greater than or equal to heavy precipitation affecting 40 percent or more of an area at least 3,000 square miles.

3.9.5.2 Any convective SIGMET implies severe or greater turbulence, severe icing, and low−level wind shear. A convective SIGMET may be issued for any convective situation that the forecaster feels is hazardous to all categories of aircraft.

3.9.5.3 Convective SIGMET bulletins are issued for the western (W), central (C), and eastern (E) United States. (Convective SIGMETs are not issued for Alaska or Hawaii.) The areas are separated at 87 and 107 degrees west longitude with sufficient overlap to cover most cases when the phenomenon crosses the boundaries. Bulletins are issued hourly at H+55. Special bulletins are issued at any time as required and updated at H+55. If no criteria meeting convective SIGMET requirements are observed or forecasted, the message "CONVECTIVE SIGMET... NONE" will be issued for each area at H+55. Individual convective SIGMETs for each area (W, C, E) are numbered sequentially from number one each day, beginning at 00Z. A convective SIGMET for a continuing phenomenon will be reissued every hour at H+55 with a new number. The text of the bulletin consists of either an observation and a forecast or just a forecast. The forecast is valid for up to 2 hours.

EXAMPLE−
CONVECTIVE SIGMET 44C
VALID UNTIL 1455Z
AR TX OK
FROM 40NE ADM-40ESE MLC-10W TXK-50WNW LFK-40ENE SJT-40NE ADM
AREA TS MOV FROM 26025KT. TOPS ABV FL450.
OUTLOOK VALID 061455-061855
FROM 60WSW OKC-MLC-40N TXK-40WSW IGB-VUZ-MGM-HRV-60S BTR-40N
IAH-60SW SJT-40ENE LBB-60WSW OKC
WST ISSUANCES EXPD. REFER TO MOST RECENT ACUS01 KWNS FROM STORM PREDICTION CENTER FOR SYNOPSIS AND METEOROLOGICAL DETAILS

FIG GEN 3.5−5
SIGMET Locations – Contiguous U.S.

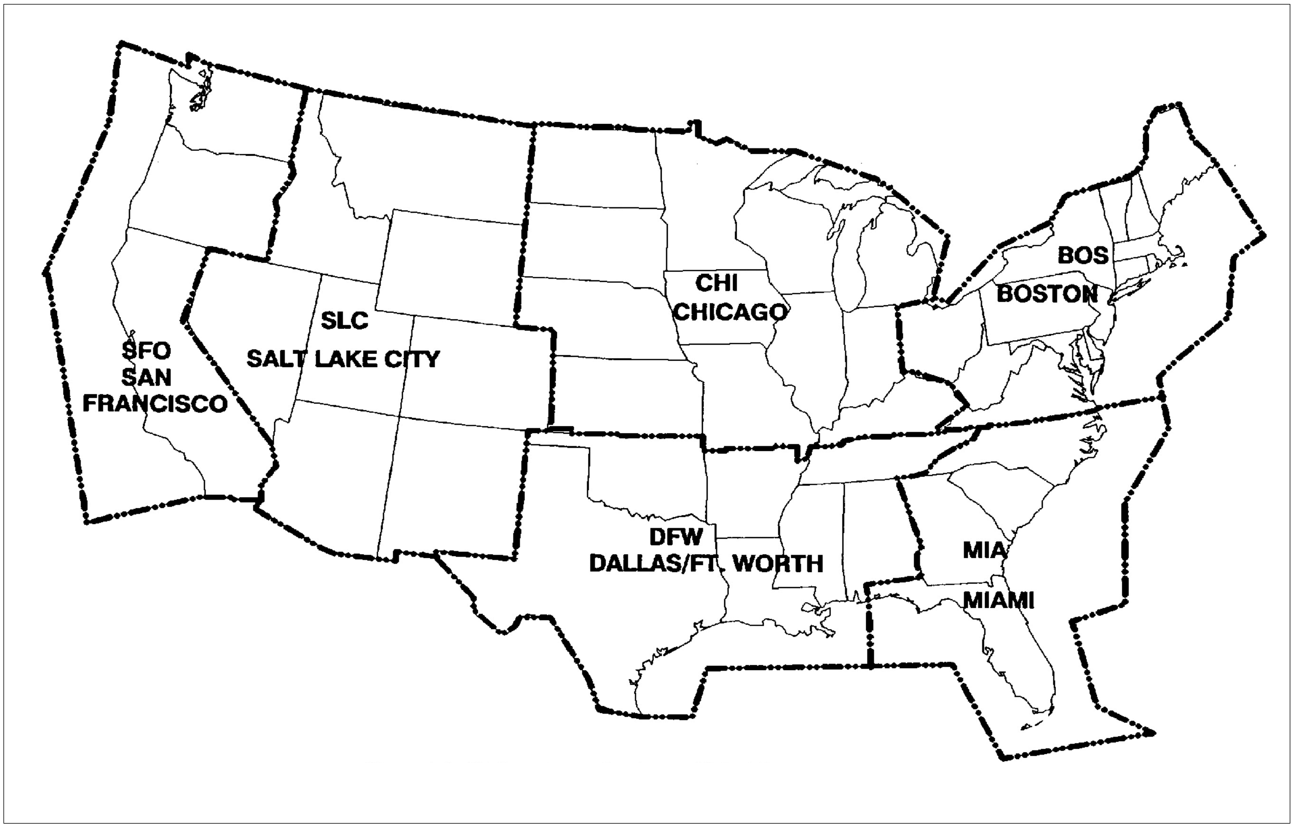
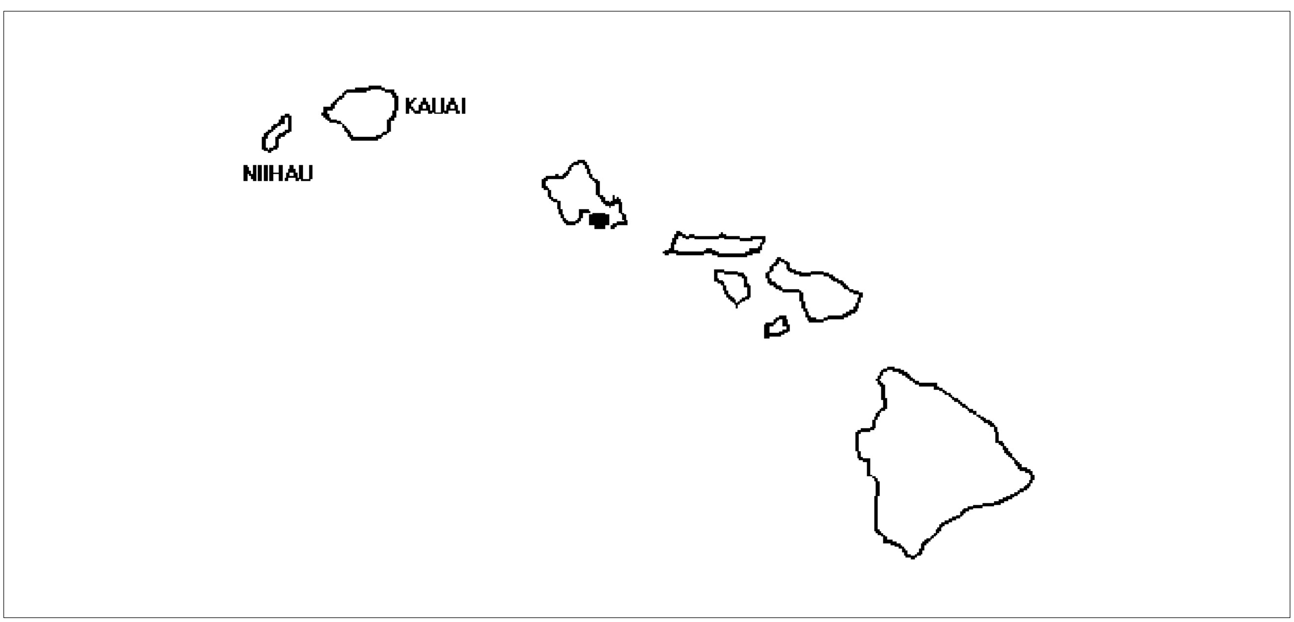


FIG GEN 3.5−6
Hawaii Area Forecast Locations



3.9.6 AIRMET. An AIRMET is a concise description of the occurrence or expected occurrence of specified en route weather phenomena that may affect the safety of aircraft operations, but at intensities lower than those which require the issuance of a SIGMET.

3.9.6.1 AIRMETS contain details about Instrument Flight Rule (IFR) conditions, extensive mountain obscuration, turbulence, strong surface winds, icing, and freezing levels. Unscheduled updates and corrections are issued as necessary.

3.9.6.2 AIRMETs:

a) Are intended to inform all pilots, but especially Visual Flight Rules pilots and operators of sensitive aircraft, of potentially hazardous weather phenomena.

b) Are issued on a scheduled basis every 6 hours, except every 8 hours in Alaska. Unscheduled updates and corrections are issued as necessary.

c) Are intended for dissemination to all pilots in the preflight and en route phase of flight to enhance safety. En route, AIRMETs are available over Flight Service frequencies. Over the contiguous U.S., AIRMETs are also available on equipment intended to display weather and other non−air traffic control−related flight information to pilots using the Flight Information Service−Broadcast (FIS−B). In Alaska and Hawaii, AIRMETs are broadcast on air traffic frequencies.

d) Are issued for the contiguous U.S., Alaska, and Hawaii. No AIRMETs are issued for U.S. Oceanic FIRs in the Gulf of Mexico, Caribbean, Western Atlantic and Pacific Oceans.

TBL GEN 3.5−3

U.S. AIRMET Issuance Time and Frequency

Product Type	Issuance Time	Issuance Frequency
AIRMETs over the Contiguous U.S.	0245, 0845, 1445, 2045 UTC	Every 6 hours
AIRMETs over Alaska	0515, 1315, 2115 UTC (standard time) 0415, 1215, 2015 UTC (Daylight savings time)	Every 8 hours
AIRMETs over Hawaii	0400, 1000, 1600, 2200 UTC	Every 6 hours

3.9.6.3 AIRMETs over the Contiguous U.S.:

a) Are displayed graphically on websites, such as aviationweather.gov and 1800wxbrief.com, and equipment receiving FIS−B information.

b) Provide a higher forecast resolution than AIRMETs issued in text format.

c) Are valid at discrete times no more than 3 hours apart for a period of up to 12 hours into the future (for example; 00, 03, 06, 09, and 12 hours). Additional forecasts may be inserted during the first 6 hours (for example; 01, 02, 04, and 05). 00−hour represents the initial conditions, and the subsequent graphics depict the area affected by the particular hazard at that valid time. Forecasts valid at 00 through 06 hours correspond to the text AIRMET bulletin.

d) Depict the following en route aviation weather hazards:

1) Instrument flight rule conditions (ceiling < 1000’ and/or surface visibility <3 miles).

2) Widespread mountain obscuration.

3) Moderate icing.

4) Freezing levels.

5) Moderate turbulence.

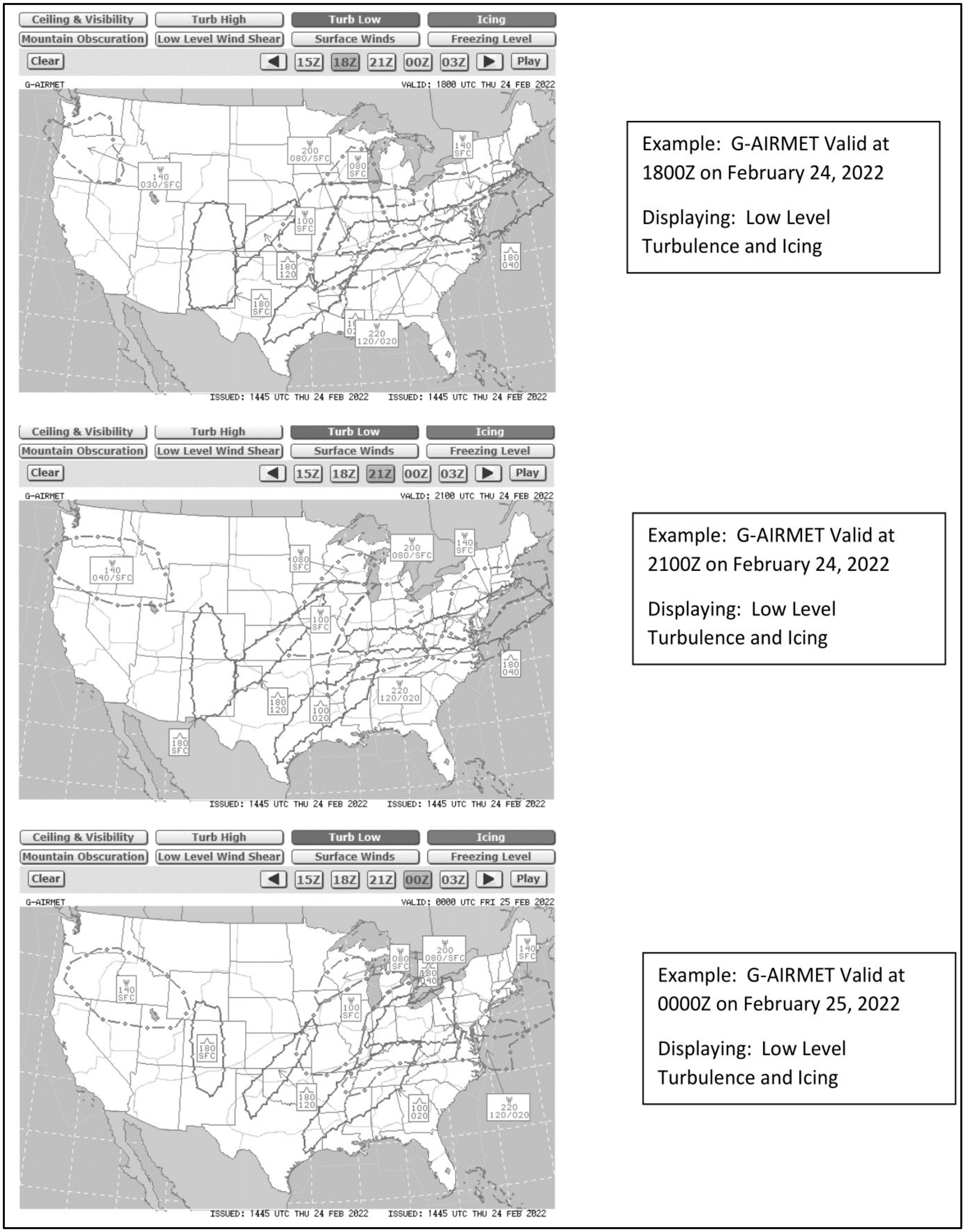
6) Non−convective low−level wind shear potential below 2,000 feet AGL.

7) Sustained surface winds greater than 30 knots.

3.9.6.4 Interpolation of time periods between AIRMETs over the contiguous U.S. valid times: Users must keep in mind when using the AIRMET over the contiguous U.S. that if a 00−hour forecast shows no significant weather and a 03−hour forecast shows hazardous weather, they must assume a change is occurring during the period between the two forecasts. It should be taken into consideration that the hazardous weather starts immediately after the 00−hour forecast unless there is a defined initiation or ending time for the hazardous weather. The same would apply after the 03−hour forecast. The user should assume the hazardous weather condition is occurring between the snapshots unless informed otherwise. For example, if a 00−hour forecast shows no hazard, a 03−hour forecast shows the presence of hazardous weather, and a 06−hour forecast shows no hazard, the user should assume the hazard exists from the 0001 hour to the 0559 hour time period.

FIG GEN 3.5−7

AIRMETs over the Contiguous U.S.



3.9.6.5 AIRMETs over Alaska and Hawaii:

a) AIRMETs over Alaska and Hawaii are in text format. The hazard areas are described using well−known geographical areas. AIRMETs over Alaska are issued for three Alaskan regions corresponding to Alaska area forecasts (See FIG GEN 3.5−4).

b) AIRMETs over Alaska are valid up to eight hours. AIRMETs over Hawaii are valid up to six hours. Unscheduled issuances contain an update number for easier identification.

c) AIRMET Zulu describes moderate icing and provides freezing level heights.

EXAMPLE−
Example of AIRMET Sierra issued for the Southeast Alaska area:

WAAK47 PAWU 241324
WA7O
JNUS WA 241315
AIRMET SIERRA FOR IFR AND MT OBSC VALID UNTIL 242115

LYNN CANAL AND GLACIER BAY JB
MTS OBSC BY CLDS/ISOL PCPN. NC.

CNTRL SE AK JC
MTS OCNL OBSC IN CLDS. NC.

SRN SE AK JD
PAWG−PAKT LN W OCNL CIGS BLW 010/VIS BLW 3SM BR. IMPR.

ERN GLF CST JE
OCNL CIGS BLW 010/VIS BLW 3SM BR/−RA BR. DTRT.

=JNUT WA 241315
AIRMET TANGO FOR TURB/STG SFC WINDS VALID UNTIL 242115

ERN GLF CST JE
OFSHR ICY BAY W SUSTAINED SFC WND 30 KTS
OR GTR. SPRDG E. INTSF.

=JNUZ WA 241315
AIRMET ZULU FOR ICING VALID UNTIL 242115

ERN GLF CST JE
16Z TO 19Z ALG CST W ICY BAY OCNL MOD ICEIC 080−160.
FZLVL 045 EXC 015 INLAND. WKN.

EXAMPLE−
Example of AIRMET Tango issued for Hawaii FA area:

WAHW31 PHFO 241529
WA0HI

HNLS WA 241600
AIRMET SIERRA UPDATE 2 FOR IFR VALID UNTIL 242200

NO SIGNIFICANT IFR EXP.

=HNLT WA 241600
AIRMET TANGO UPDATE 3 FOR TURB VALID UNTIL 242200

AIRMET TURB...HI
OVER AMD IMT S THRU W OF MTN.
TEMPO MOD TURB BLW 070.
COND CONT BEYOND 2200Z.

=HNLZ WA 241600
AIRMET ZULU UPDATE 2 FOR ICE AND FZLVL VALID UNTIL 242200
NO SIGNIFICANT ICE EXP

3.9.7 Watch Notification Messages

The Storm Prediction Center (SPC) in Norman, OK, issues Watch Notification Messages to provide an area threat alert for forecast organized severe thunderstorms that may produce tornadoes, large hail, and/or convective damaging winds within the CONUS. SPC issues three types of watch notification messages: Aviation Watch Notification Messages, Public Severe Thunderstorm Watch Notification Messages, and Public Tornado Watch Notification Messages.

It is important to note the difference between a Severe Thunderstorm (or Tornado) Watch and a Severe Thunderstorm (or Tornado) Warning. A watch means severe weather is possible during the next few hours, while a warning means that severe weather has been observed, or is expected within the hour. Only the SPC issues Severe Thunderstorm and Tornado Watches, while only NWS Weather Forecasts Offices issue Severe Thunderstorm and Tornado Warnings.

3.9.7.1 The Aviation Watch Notification Message. The Aviation Watch Notification Message product is an approximation of the area of the Public Severe Thunderstorm Watch or Public Tornado Watch. The area may be defined as a rectangle or parallelogram using VOR navigational aides as coordinates.

The Aviation Watch Notification Message was formerly known as the Alert Severe Weather Watch Bulletin (AWW). The NWS no longer uses that title or acronym for this product. The NWS uses the acronym SAW for the Aviation Watch Notification Message, but retains AWW in the product header for processing by weather data systems.

EXAMPLE−
Example of an Aviation Watch Notification Message:
WWUS30 KWNS 271559
SAW2
SPC AWW 271559
WW 568 TORNADO AR LA MS 271605Z - 280000Z
AXIS..65 STATUTE MILES EAST AND WEST OF LINE..
45ESE HEZ/NATCHEZ MS/ - 50N TUP/TUPELO MS/
..AVIATION COORDS.. 55NM E/W /18WNW MCB - 60E MEM/
HAIL SURFACE AND ALOFT..3 INCHES. WIND GUSTS..70 KNOTS. MAX TOPS TO 550. MEAN STORM MOTION VECTOR 26030.
LAT...LON 31369169 34998991 34998762 31368948
THIS IS AN APPROXIMATION TO THE WATCH AREA. FOR A COMPLETE DEPICTION OF THE WATCH SEE WOUS64 KWNS FOR WOU2.

3.9.7.2 Public Severe Thunderstorm Watch Notification Messages describe areas of expected severe thunderstorms. (Severe thunderstorm criteria are 1-inch hail or larger and/or wind gusts of 50 knots [58 mph] or greater). A Public Severe Thunderstorm Watch Notification Message contains the area description and axis, the watch expiration time, a description of hail size and thunderstorm wind gusts expected, the definition of the watch, a call to action statement, a list of other valid watches, a brief discussion of meteorological reasoning and technical information for the aviation community.

3.9.7.3 Public Tornado Watch Notification Messages describe areas where the threat of tornadoes exists. A Public Tornado Watch Notification Message contains the area description and axis, watch expiration time, the term “damaging tornadoes,” a description of the largest hail size and strongest thunderstorm wind gusts expected, the definition of the watch, a call to action statement, a list of other valid watches, a brief discussion of meteorological reasoning and technical information for the aviation community. SPC may enhance a Public Tornado Watch Notification Message by using the words “THIS IS A PARTICULARLY DANGEROUS SITUATION” when there is a likelihood of multiple strong (damage of EF2 or EF3) or violent (damage of EF4 or EF5) tornadoes.

3.9.7.4 Public severe thunderstorm and tornado watch notification messages were formerly known as the Severe Weather Watch Bulletins (WW). The NWS no longer uses that title or acronym for this product but retains WW in the product header for processing by weather data systems.

EXAMPLE−
Example of a Public Tornado Watch Notification Message:
WWUS20 KWNS 050550
SEL2
SPC WW 051750
URGENT - IMMEDIATE BROADCAST REQUESTED
TORNADO WATCH NUMBER 243
NWS STORM PREDICTION CENTER NORMAN OK
1250 AM CDT MON MAY 5 2011
THE NWS STORM PREDICTION CENTER HAS ISSUED A
**TORNADO WATCH FOR PORTIONS OF*
WESTERN AND CENTRAL ARKANSAS
SOUTHERN MISSOURI
FAR EASTERN OKLAHOMA
**EFFECTIVE THIS MONDAY MORNING FROM 1250 AM UNTIL 600 AM CDT.*
...THIS IS A PARTICULARLY DANGEROUS SITUATION...
**PRIMARY THREATS INCLUDE*
NUMEROUS INTENSE TORNADOES LIKELY
NUMEROUS SIGNIFICANT DAMAGING WIND GUSTS TO 80 MPH LIKELY
NUMEROUS VERY LARGE HAIL TO 4 INCHES IN DIAMETER LIKELY
THE TORNADO WATCH AREA IS APPROXIMATELY ALONG AND 100 STATUTE MILES EAST AND WEST OF A LINE FROM 15 MILES WEST NORTHWEST OF FORT LEONARD WOOD MISSOURI TO 45 MILES SOUTHWEST OF HOT SPRINGS ARKANSAS. FOR A COMPLETE DEPICTION OF THE WATCH SEE THE ASSOCIATED WATCH OUTLINE UPDATE (WOUS64 KWNS WOU2).
REMEMBER...A TORNADO WATCH MEANS CONDITIONS ARE FAVORABLE FOR TORNADOES AND SEVERE THUNDERSTORMS IN AND CLOSE TO THE WATCH AREA. PERSONS IN THESE AREAS SHOULD BE ON THE LOOKOUT FOR THREATENING WEATHER CONDITIONS AND LISTEN FOR LATER STATEMENTS AND POSSIBLE WARNINGS.
OTHER WATCH INFORMATION...THIS TORNADO WATCH REPLACES TORNADO WATCH NUMBER 237. WATCH NUMBER 237 WILL NOT BE IN EFFECT AFTER
1250 AM CDT. CONTINUE...WW 239...WW 240...WW 241...WW 242...
DISCUSSION...SRN MO SQUALL LINE EXPECTED TO CONTINUE EWD...WHERE LONG/HOOKED HODOGRAPHS SUGGEST THREAT FOR EMBEDDED SUPERCELLS/POSSIBLE TORNADOES. FARTHER S...MORE WIDELY SCATTERED
SUPERCELLS WITH A THREAT FOR TORNADOES WILL PERSIST IN VERY STRONGLY DEEP SHEARED/LCL ENVIRONMENT IN AR.
AVIATION...TORNADOES AND A FEW SEVERE THUNDERSTORMS WITH HAIL SURFACE AND ALOFT TO 4 INCHES. EXTREME TURBULENCE AND SURFACE WIND GUSTS TO 70 KNOTS. A FEW CUMULONIMBI WITH MAXIMUM TOPS TO 500. MEAN STORM MOTION VECTOR 26045.

3.9.7.5 Status reports are issued as needed to show progress of storms and to delineate areas no longer under the threat of severe storm activity. Cancellation bulletins are issued when it becomes evident that no severe weather will develop or that storms have subsided and are no longer severe.

3.9.8 Center Weather Advisories (CWA)

3.9.8.1 CWAs are unscheduled inflight, flow control, air traffic, and air crew advisory. By nature of its short lead time, the CWA is not a flight planning product. It is generally a nowcast for conditions beginning within the next two hours. CWAs will be issued:

a) As a supplement to an existing SIGMET, Convective SIGMET or AIRMET.

b) When an Inflight Advisory has not been issued but observed or expected weather conditions meet SIGMET/AIRMET criteria based on current pilot reports and reinforced by other sources of information about existing meteorological conditions.

c) When observed or developing weather conditions do not meet SIGMET, Convective SIGMET, or AIRMET criteria; e.g., in terms of intensity or area coverage, but current pilot reports or other weather information sources indicate that existing or anticipated meteorological phenomena will adversely affect the safe flow of air traffic within the ARTCC area of responsibility.

3.9.8.2 The following example is a CWA issued from the Kansas City, Missouri, ARTCC. The "3" after ZKC in the first line denotes this CWA has been issued for the third weather phenomena to occur for the day. The "301" in the second line denotes the phenomena number again (3) and the issuance number (01) for this phenomena. The CWA was issued at 2140Z and is valid until 2340Z.

EXAMPLE−
ZKC3 CWA 032140
ZKC CWA 301 VALID UNTIL 032340
ISOLD SVR TSTM over KCOU MOVG SWWD 10 KTS ETC.

4. Categorical Outlooks

4.1 Categorical outlook terms describing general ceiling and visibility conditions for advance planning purposes are used only in area forecasts. They are defined as follows:

4.1.1 LIFR (Low IFR). Ceiling less than 500 feet and/or visibility less than 1 mile.

4.1.2 IFR. Ceiling 500 to less than 1,000 feet and/or visibility 1 to less than 3 miles.

4.1.3 MVFR (Marginal VFR). Ceiling 1,000 or 3,000 feet and/or visibility 3 to 5 miles inclusive.

4.1.4 VFR. Ceiling greater than 3,000 feet and visibility greater than 5 miles; includes sky clear.

4.2 The cause of LIFR, IFR, or MVFR is indicated by either ceiling or visibility restrictions or both. The contraction "CIG" and/or weather and obstruction to vision symbols are used. If winds or gusts of 25 knots or greater are forecast for the outlook period, the word "WIND" is also included for all categories, including VFR.

EXAMPLE−

1. *LIFR CIG−low IFR due to low ceiling.*

2. *IFR FG−IFR due to visibility restricted by fog.*

3. *MVFR CIG HZ FU−marginal VFR due both to ceiling and to visibility restricted by haze and smoke.*

4. *IFR CIG RA WIND−IFR due both to low ceiling and to visibility restricted by rain; wind expected to be 25 knots or greater.*

5. Inflight Weather Advisory Broadcasts

ARTCCs broadcast a Convective SIGMET, SIGMET, AIRMET (except in the contiguous U.S.), Urgent Pilot Report, or CWA alert once on all frequencies, except emergency frequencies, when any part of the area described is within 150 miles of the airspace under their jurisdiction. These broadcasts advise pilots of the availability of hazardous weather advisories and to contact the nearest flight service facility for additional details.

EXAMPLE−

1. *Attention all aircraft, SIGMET Delta Three, from Myton to Tuba City to Milford, severe turbulence and severe clear icing below one zero thousand feet. Expected to continue beyond zero three zero zero zulu.*

2. *Attention all aircraft, Convective SIGMET Two Seven Eastern. From the vicinity of Elmira to Phillipsburg. Scattered embedded thunderstorms moving east at one zero knots. A few intense level five cells, maximum tops four five zero.*

3. *Attention all aircraft, Kansas City Center weather advisory one zero three. Numerous reports of moderate to severe icing from eight to niner thousand feet in a three zero mile radius of St. Louis. Light or negative icing reported from four thousand to one two thousand feet remainder of Kansas City Center area.*

NOTE−
Terminal control facilities have the option to limit hazardous weather information broadcast as follows: Tower cab and approach control positions may opt to broadcast hazardous weather information alerts only when any part of the area described is within 50 miles of the airspace under their jurisdiction.

REFERENCE−
FAA Order JO 7110.65, Para 2−6−6, Hazardous Inflight Weather Advisory.

6. Flight Information Services (FIS)

6.1 FIS. FIS is a method of disseminating meteorological (MET) and aeronautical information (AI) to displays in the cockpit in order to enhance pilot situational awareness, provide decision support tools, and improve safety. FIS augments traditional pilot voice communication with Flight Service Stations (FSSs), ATC facilities, or Airline Operations Control Centers (AOCCs). FIS is not intended to replace traditional pilot and controller/flight service specialist/aircraft dispatcher preflight briefings or inflight voice communications. FIS, however, can provide textual and graphical information that can help abbreviate and improve the usefulness of such communications. FIS enhances pilot situational awareness and improves safety.

6.1.1 Data link Service Providers (DSPs). DSPs deploy and maintain airborne, ground−based, and, in some cases, space−based infrastructure that supports the transmission of AI/MET information over one or more physical links. A DSP may provide a free of charge or a for−fee service that permits end users to uplink and downlink AI/MET and other information. The following are examples of DSPs:

6.1.1.1 FAA FIS-B. A ground-based broadcast service provided through the ADS-B Universal Access Transceiver (UAT) network. The service provides users with a 978 MHz data link capability when operating within range and line-of-sight of a transmitting ground station. FIS-B enables users of properly equipped aircraft to receive and display a suite of broadcast weather and aeronautical information products.

6.1.1.2 Non-FAA FIS Systems. Several commercial vendors provide customers with FIS data over both the aeronautical spectrum and on other frequencies using a variety of data link protocols. Services available from these providers vary greatly and may include tier based subscriptions. Advancements in bandwidth technology permits preflight as well as inflight access to the same MET and AI information available on the ground. Pilots and operators using non-FAA FIS for MET and AI information should be knowledgeable regarding the weather services being provided as some commercial vendors may be repackaging NWS sourced weather, while other commercial vendors may alter the weather information to produce vendor−tailored or vendor−specific weather reports and forecasts.

6.1.2 Three Data Link Modes. There are three data link modes that may be used for transmitting AI and MET information to aircraft. The intended use of the AI and/or MET information will determine the most appropriate data link service.

6.1.2.1 Broadcast Mode: A one-way interaction in which AI and/or MET updates or changes applicable to a designated geographic area are continuously transmitted (or transmitted at repeated periodic intervals) to all aircraft capable of receiving the broadcast within the service volume defined by the system network architecture.

6.1.2.2 Contract/Demand Mode: A two-way interaction in which AI and/or MET information is transmitted to an aircraft in response to a specific request.

6.1.2.3 Contract/Update Mode: A two-way interaction that is an extension of the Demand Mode. Initial AI and/or MET report(s) are sent to an aircraft and subsequent updates or changes to the AI and/or MET information that meet the contract criteria are automatically or manually sent to an aircraft.

6.1.3 To ensure airman compliance with Federal Aviation Regulations, manufacturer’s operating manuals should remind airmen to contact ATC controllers, FSS specialists, operator dispatchers, or airline operations control centers for general and mission critical aviation weather information and/or NAS status conditions (such as NOTAMs, Special Use Airspace status, and other government flight information). If FIS products are systemically modified (for example, are displayed as abbreviated plain text and/or graphical depictions), the modification process and limitations of the resultant product should be clearly described in the vendor’s user guidance.

6.1.4 Operational Use of FIS. Regardless of the type of FIS system being used, several factors must be considered when using FIS:

6.1.4.1 Before using FIS for inflight operations, pilots and other flight crewmembers should become familiar with the operation of the FIS system to be used, the airborne equipment to be used, including its system architecture, airborne system components, coverage service volume and other limitations of the particular system, modes of operation and indications of various system failures. Users should also be familiar with the specific content and format of the services available from the FIS provider(s). Sources of information that may provide this specific guidance include manufacturer's manuals, training programs, and reference guides.

6.1.4.2 FIS should not serve as the sole source of aviation weather and other operational information. ATC, FSSs, and, if applicable, AOCC VHF/HF voice remain as a redundant method of communicating aviation weather, NOTAMs, and other operational information to aircraft in flight. FIS augments these traditional ATC/FSS/AOCC services and, for some products, offers the advantage of being displayed as graphical information. By using FIS for orientation, the usefulness of information received from conventional means may be enhanced. For example, FIS may alert the pilot to specific areas of concern that will more accurately focus requests made to FSS or AOCC for inflight updates or similar queries made to ATC.

6.1.4.3 The airspace and aeronautical environment is constantly changing. These changes occur quickly and without warning. Critical operational decisions should be based on use of the most current and appropriate data available. When differences exist between FIS and information obtained by voice communication with ATC, FSS, and/or AOCC (if applicable), pilots are cautioned to use the most recent data from the most authoritative source.

6.1.4.4 FIS aviation weather products (for example, graphical ground−based radar precipitation depictions) are not appropriate for tactical (typical timeframe of less than 3 minutes) avoidance of severe weather such as negotiating a path through a weather hazard area. FIS supports strategic (typical timeframe of 20 minutes or more) weather decision−making such as route selection to avoid a weather hazard area in its entirety. The misuse of information beyond its applicability may place the pilot and aircraft in jeopardy. In addition, FIS should never be used in lieu of an individual preflight weather and flight planning briefing.

6.1.4.5 DSPs offer numerous MET and AI products with information that can be layered on top of each other. Pilots need to be aware that too much information can have a negative effect on their cognitive work load. Pilots need to manage the amount of information to a level that offers the most pertinent information to that specific flight without creating a cockpit distraction. Pilots may need to adjust the amount of information based on numerous factors including, but not limited to, the phase of flight, single pilot operation, autopilot availability, class of airspace, and the weather conditions encountered.

6.1.4.6 FIS NOTAM products, including Temporary Flight Restriction (TFR) information, are advisory−use information and are intended for situational awareness purposes only. Cockpit displays of this information are not appropriate for tactical navigation − pilots should stay clear of any geographic area displayed as a TFR NOTAM. Pilots should contact FSSs and/or ATC while en route to obtain updated information and to verify the cockpit display of NOTAM information.

6.1.4.7 FIS supports better pilot decision−making by increasing situational awareness. Better decision−making is based on using information from a variety of sources. In addition to FIS, pilots should take advantage of other weather/NAS status sources, including, briefings from Flight Service Stations, data from other air traffic control facilities, airline operation control centers, pilot reports, as well as their own observations.

6.1.4.8 FAA's Flight Information Service−Broadcast (FIS−B).

a) FIS−B is a ground−based broadcast service provided through the FAA's Automatic Dependent Surveillance–Broadcast (ADS−B) Services Universal Access Transceiver (UAT) network. The service provides users with a 978 MHz data link capability when operating within range and line−of−sight of a transmitting ground station. FIS−B enables users of properly−equipped aircraft to receive and display a suite of broadcast weather and aeronautical information products.

b) TBL GEN 3.5−4 lists the text and graphical products available through FIS−B and provided free−of−charge. Detailed information concerning FIS−B meteorological products can be found in Advisory Circular 00−45, Aviation Weather Services; and AC 00−63, Use of Cockpit Displays of Digital Weather and Aeronautical Information. Information on Special Use Airspace (SUA), Temporary Flight Restriction (TFR), and Notice to Air Missions (NOTAM) products can be found in Chapters ENR 1 and ENR 5 of this manual.

c) Users of FIS−B should familiarize themselves with the operational characteristics and limitations of the system, including: system architecture; service environment; product lifecycles; modes of operation; and indications of system failure.

d) FIS−B products are updated and transmitted at specific intervals based primarily on product issuance criteria. Update intervals are defined as the rate at which the product data is available from the source for transmission. Transmission intervals are defined as the amount of time within which a new or updated product transmission must be completed and/or the rate or repetition interval at which the product is rebroadcast. Update and transmission intervals for each product are provided in TBL GEN 3.5−4.

NOTE−
The NOTAM−D and NOTAM−FDC products broadcast via FIS−B are limited to those issued or effective within the past 30 days. Except for TFRs, NOTAMs older than 30 days are not provided. The pilot in command is responsible for reviewing all necessary information prior to flight.

e) Where applicable, FIS−B products include a look−ahead range expressed in nautical miles (NM) for three service domains: Airport Surface; Terminal Airspace; and Enroute/Gulf−of−Mexico (GOMEX). TBL GEN 3.5−5 provides service domain availability and look−ahead ranging for each FIS−B product.

f) Prior to using this capability, users should familiarize themselves with the operation of FIS−B avionics by referencing the applicable User's Guides. Guidance concerning the interpretation of information displayed should be obtained from the appropriate avionics manufacturer.

g) FIS−B malfunctions not attributed to aircraft system failures or covered by active NOTAM should be reported by radio or telephone to the nearest FSS facility, or by sending an email to the ADS−B help desk at adsb@faa.gov. Reports should include:

1) Condition observed;

2) Date and time of observation;

3) Altitude and location of observation;

4) Type and call sign of the aircraft; and

5) Type and software version of avionics system.

6.2 Non−FAA FIS Systems. Several commercial vendors also provide customers with FIS data over both the aeronautical spectrum and on other frequencies using a variety of data link protocols. In some cases, the vendors provide only the communications system that carries customer messages, such as the Aircraft Communications Addressing and Reporting System (ACARS) used by many air carrier and other operators.

6.2.1 Operators using non−FAA FIS data for inflight weather and other operational information should ensure that the products used conform to FAA/NWS standards. Specifically, aviation weather and NAS status information should meet the following criteria:

6.2.1.1 The products should be either FAA/NWS "accepted" aviation weather reports or products, or based on FAA/NWS accepted aviation weather reports or products. If products are used which do not meet this criteria, they should be so identified. The operator must determine the applicability of such products to their particular flight operations.

6.2.1.2 In the case of a weather product which is the result of the application of a process which alters the form, function or content of the base FAA/NWS accepted weather product(s), that process, and any limitations to the application of the resultant product, should be described in the vendor's user guidance material. An example would be a NEXRAD radar composite/mosaic map, which has been modified by changing the scaling resolution. The methodology of assigning reflectivity values to the resultant image components should be described in the vendor's guidance material to ensure that the user can accurately interpret the displayed data.

TBL GEN 3.5−4
FIS−B Over UAT Product Update and Transmission Intervals

Product	Update Interval[1]	Transmission Interval (95%)[2]	Basic Product
AIRMET	As Available	5 minutes	Yes
AWW/WW	As Available, then at 15 minute intervals for 1 hour	5 minutes	No
Ceiling	As Available	10 minutes	No
Convective SIGMET	As Available, then at 15 minute intervals for 1 hour	5 minutes	Yes
D−ATIS	As Available	1 minute	No
Echo Top	5 minutes	5 minutes	No
METAR/SPECI	1 minute (where available), As Available otherwise	5 minutes	Yes
MRMS NEXRAD (CONUS)	2 minutes	15 minutes	Yes
MRMS NEXRAD (Regional)	2 minutes	2.5 minutes	Yes
NOTAMs−D/FDC	As Available	10 minutes	Yes
NOTAMs−TFR	As Available	10 minutes	Yes
PIREP	As Available	10 minutes	Yes
SIGMET	As Available, then at 15 minute intervals for 1 hour	5 minutes	Yes
SUA Status	As Available	10 minutes	Yes
TAF/AMEND	6 Hours (±15 minutes)	10 minutes	Yes
Temperature Aloft	12 Hours (±15 minutes)	10 minutes	Yes
TWIP	As Available	1 minute	No
Winds aloft	12 Hours (±15 minutes)	10 minutes	Yes
Lightning strikes [3]	5 minutes	5 minutes	Yes
Turbulence [3]	1 minute	15 minutes	Yes
Icing, Forecast Potential (FIP) [3]	60 minutes	15 minutes	Yes
Cloud tops [3]	30 minutes	15 minutes	Yes
1 Minute AWOS [3]	1 minute	10 minutes	No
Graphical−AIRMET [3]	As Available	5 minutes	Yes
Center Weather Advisory (CWA) [3]	As Available	10 minutes	Yes
Temporary Restricted Areas (TRA)	As Available	10 minutes	Yes
Temporary Military Operations Areas (TMOA)	As Available	10 minutes	Yes

[1] The Update Interval is the rate at which the product data is available from the source.

[2] The Transmission Interval is the amount of time within which a new or updated product transmission must be completed (95%) and the rate or repetition interval at which the product is rebroadcast (95%).
[3] The transmission and update intervals for the expanded set of basic meteorological products may be adjusted based on FAA and vendor agreement on the final product formats and performance requirements.

NOTE−
1. *Details concerning the content, format, and symbols of the various data link products provided should be obtained from the specific avionics manufacturer.*

2. *NOTAM−D and NOTAM−FDC products broadcast via FIS−B are limited to those issued or effective within the past 30 days.*

TBL GEN 3.5−5
Product Parameters for Low/Medium/High Altitude Tier Radios

Product	Surface Radios	Low Altitude Tier	Medium Altitude Tier	High Altitude Tier
CONUS NEXRAD	N/A	CONUS NEXRAD not provided	CONUS NEXRAD imagery	CONUS NEXRAD imagery
Winds & Temps Aloft	500 NM look−ahead range	500 NM look−ahead range	750 NM look−ahead range	1,000 NM look−ahead range
METAR	100 NM look−ahead range	250 NM look−ahead range	375 NM look−ahead range	CONUS: CONUS Class B & C airport METARs and 500 NM look−ahead range Outside of CONUS: 500 NM look-ahead range
TAF	100 NM look−ahead range	250 NM look−ahead range	375 NM look−ahead range	CONUS: CONUS Class B & C airport TAFs and 500 NM look−ahead range Outside of CONUS: 500 NM look-ahead range
AIRMET, SIGMET, PIREP, and SUA/SAA	100 NM look−ahead range. PIREP/SUA/SAA is N/A.	250 NM look−ahead range	375 NM look−ahead range	500 NM look−ahead range
Regional NEXRAD	150 NM look−ahead range	150 NM look−ahead range	200 NM look−ahead range	250 NM look−ahead range
NOTAMs D, FDC, and TFR	100 NM look−ahead range	100 NM look−ahead range	100 NM look−ahead range	100 NM look−ahead range

7. Weather Observing Programs

7.1 Manual Observations. Aviation Routine Weather Reports (METAR) are taken at more than 600 locations in the U.S. With only a few exceptions, these stations are located at airport sites and most are staffed by FAA personnel who manually observe, perform calculations, and enter the observation into the distribution system. The format and coding of these observations are contained in FIG GEN 3.5−26 and FIG GEN 3.5−27.

7.2 Automated Weather Observing System (AWOS)

7.2.1 Automated weather reporting systems are increasingly being installed at airports. These systems consist of various sensors, a processor, a computer−generated voice subsystem, and a transmitter to broadcast local, minute−by−minute weather data directly to the pilot.

NOTE−
When the barometric pressure exceeds 31.00 inches Hg., see subparagraph ENR 1.7−3, Altimeter Setting Procedures.

7.2.2 The AWOS observations will include the prefix "AUTO" to indicate that the data are derived from an automated system. Some AWOS locations will be augmented by certified observers who will provide weather and obstruction to vision information in the remarks of the report when the reported visibility is less than 3 miles. These sites, along with the hours of augmentation, are published in the Chart Supplement. Augmentation is identified in the observation as "OBSERVER WEATHER." The AWOS wind speed, direction and gusts, temperature, dew point, and altimeter setting are exactly the same as for manual observations. The AWOS will also report density altitude when it exceeds the field elevation by more than 1,000 feet. The reported visibility is derived from a sensor near the touchdown of the primary instrument runway. The visibility sensor output is converted to a visibility value using a 10−minute harmonic average. The reported sky condition/ceiling is derived from the ceilometer located next to the visibility sensor. The AWOS algorithm integrates the last 30 minutes of ceilometer data to derive cloud layers and heights. This output may also differ from the observer sky condition in that the AWOS is totally dependent upon the cloud advection over the sensor site.

7.2.3 Referred to as AWOS, these real−time systems are operationally classified into nine basic levels:

7.2.3.1 **AWOS−A** only reports altimeter setting.

NOTE−
Any other information is advisory only.

7.2.3.2 **AWOS−AV** reports altimeter and visibility;

NOTE−
Any other information is advisory only.

7.2.3.3 **AWOS−l** usually reports altimeter setting, wind data, temperature, dew point, and density altitude.

7.2.3.4 **AWOS−2** provides the information provided by AWOS−l, plus visibility.

7.2.3.5 **AWOS−3** provides the information provided by AWOS−2, plus cloud/ceiling data.

7.2.3.6 **AWOS− 3P** provides reports the same as the AWOS 3 system, plus a precipitation identification sensor.

7.2.3.7 **AWOS− 3PT** reports the same as the AWOS 3P System, plus thunderstorm/lightning reporting capability.

7.2.3.8 **AWOS− 3T** reports the same as AWOS 3 system and includes a thunderstorm/lightning reporting capability.

7.2.3.9 **AWOS− 4** reports the same as the AWOS 3 system, plus precipitation occurrence, type and accumulation, freezing rain, thunderstorm, and runway surface sensors.

7.2.4 The information is transmitted over a discrete VHF radio frequency or the voice portion of a local NAVAID. AWOS transmissions on a discrete VHF radio frequency are engineered to be receivable to a maximum of 25 NM from the AWOS site and a maximum altitude of 10,000 feet AGL. At many locations, AWOS signals may be received on the surface of the airport, but local conditions may limit the maximum AWOS reception distance and/or altitude. The system transmits a 20− to 30−second weather message updated each minute. Pilots should monitor the designated frequency for the automated weather broadcast. A description of the broadcast is contained in Paragraph 7.3, Automated Weather Observing System (AWOS) Broadcasts. There is no two−way communication capability. Most AWOS sites also have a dial−up capability so that the minute−by−minute weather messages can be accessed via telephone.

7.2.5 AWOS information (system level, frequency, phone number) concerning specific locations is published, as the systems become operational, in the Chart Supplement and, where applicable, on published Instrument

Approach Procedure (IAP) charts. Selected individual systems may be incorporated into nationwide data collection and dissemination networks in the future.

7.3 AWOS Broadcasts. Computer−generated voice is used in AWOS to automate the broadcast of the minute−by−minute weather observations. In addition, some systems are configured to permit the addition of an operator−generated voice message; e.g., weather remarks, following the automated parameters. The phraseology used generally follows that used for other weather broadcasts. Following are explanations and examples of the exceptions.

7.3.1 Location and Time. The location/name and the phrase "AUTOMATED WEATHER OBSERVATION" followed by the time are announced.

7.3.1.1 If the airport's specific location is included in the airport's name, the airport's name is announced.

EXAMPLE−
"Bremerton National Airport automated weather observation one four five six zulu."

"Ravenswood Jackson County Airport automated weather observation one four five six zulu."

7.3.1.2 If the airport's specific location is not included in the airport's name, the location is announced followed by the airport's name.

EXAMPLE−
"Sault Ste. Marie, Chippewa County International Airport automated weather observation."

"Sandusky, Cowley Field automated weather observation."

7.3.1.3 The word "TEST" is added following "OBSERVATION" when the system is not in commissioned status.

EXAMPLE−
"Bremerton National Airport automated weather observation test one four five six zulu."

7.3.1.4 The phrase "TEMPORARILY INOPERATIVE" is added when the system is inoperative.

EXAMPLE−
"Bremerton National Airport automated weather observing system temporarily inoperative."

7.3.2 Ceiling and Sky Cover

7.3.2.1 Ceiling is announced as either "CEILING" or "INDEFINITE CEILING." The phrases "MEASURED CEILING" and "ESTIMATED CEILING" are not used. With the exception of indefinite ceilings, all automated ceiling heights are measured.

EXAMPLE−
"Bremerton National Airport automated weather observation one four five six zulu, ceiling two thousand overcast."

"Bremerton National Airport automated weather observation one four five six zulu, indefinite ceiling two hundred."

7.3.2.2 The word "CLEAR" is not used in AWOS due to limitations in the height ranges of the sensors. No clouds detected is announced as, "No clouds below XXX" or, in newer systems as, "Clear below XXX" (where XXX is the range limit of the sensor).

EXAMPLE−
"No clouds below one two thousand."

"Clear below one two thousand."

7.3.2.3 A sensor for determining ceiling and sky cover is not included in some AWOS. In these systems, ceiling and sky cover are not announced. "SKY CONDITION MISSING" is announced only if the system is configured with a ceilometer, and the ceiling and sky cover information is not available.

7.3.3 Visibility

7.3.3.1 The lowest reportable visibility value in AWOS is "less than $^1/_4$." It is announced as "VISIBILITY LESS THAN ONE QUARTER."

7.3.3.2 A sensor for determining visibility is not included in some AWOSs. In these systems, visibility is not announced. "VISIBILITY MISSING" is announced only if the system is configured with a visibility sensor and visibility information is not available.

7.3.4 Weather. In the future, some AWOSs are to be configured to determine the occurrence of precipitation. However, the type and intensity may not always be determined. In these systems, the word "PRECIPITATION" will be announced if precipitation is occurring, but the type and intensity are not determined.

7.3.5 Remarks. If remarks are included in the observation, the word "REMARKS" is announced following the altimeter setting. Remarks are announced in the following order of priority:

7.3.5.1 Automated "remarks."

a) Variable visibility.

b) Density altitude.

7.3.5.2 Manual input remarks. Manual input remarks are prefaced with the phrase "OBSERVER WEATHER." As a general rule the manual remarks are limited to:

a) Type and intensity of precipitation.

b) Thunderstorms, intensity (if applicable), and direction.

c) Obstructions to vision when the visibility is less than 7 miles.

EXAMPLE–
"Remarks…density altitude, two thousand five hundred…visibility variable between one and two…wind direction variable between two four zero and three one zero…observed weather…thunderstorm moderate rain showers and mist…thunderstorm overhead."

7.3.5.3 If an automated parameter is "missing" and no manual input for that parameter is available, the parameter is announced as "MISSING." For example, a report with the dew point "missing," and no manual input available, would be announced as follows:

EXAMPLE–
"Ceiling one thousand overcast, visibility three, precipitation, temperature three zero, dew point missing, wind calm, altimeter three zero zero one."

7.3.5.4 "REMARKS" are announced in the following order of priority:

a) Automated "REMARKS":

1) Variable visibility.

2) Density altitude.

b) Manual Input "REMARKS." As a general rule, the remarks are announced in the same order as the parameters appear in the basic text of the observation.

EXAMPLE–
"Remarks, density altitude, two thousand five hundred, visibility variable between one and two, wind direction variable between two four zero and three one zero, observer ceiling estimated two thousand broken, observer temperature two, dew point minus five."

7.4 Automated Surface Observing System (ASOS)/Automated Weather Observing System (AWOS)

7.4.1 The ASOS/AWOS is the primary surface weather observing system of the U.S. The program to install and operate these systems throughout the U.S. is a joint effort of the NWS, the FAA and the Department of Defense. ASOS/AWOS is designed to support aviation operations and weather forecast activities. The ASOS/AWOS will provide continuous minute-by-minute observations and perform the basic observing functions necessary to generate an aviation routine weather report (METAR) and other aviation weather information. The information may be transmitted over a discrete VHF radio frequency or the voice portion of a local NAVAID. ASOS/AWOS transmissions on a discrete VHF radio frequency are engineered to be receivable to a maximum of 25 NM from the ASOS/AWOS site and a maximum altitude of 10,000 feet AGL. At many locations, ASOS/AWOS signals may be received on the surface of the airport, but local conditions may limit the maximum reception distance and/or altitude. While the automated system and the human may differ in their methods of data collection and interpretation, both produce an observation quite similar in form and content. For the “objective” elements such as pressure, ambient temperature, dew point temperature, wind, and precipitation accumulation, both the automated system and the observer use a fixed location and time-averaging technique. The quantitative differences between the observer and the automated observation of these elements are negligible. For the “subjective” elements, however, observers use a fixed time, spatial averaging technique to describe the visual elements (sky condition, visibility and present weather), while the automated systems use a fixed location, time averaging technique. Although this is a fundamental change, the manual and automated techniques yield remarkably similar results within the limits of their respective capabilities. (See FIG GEN 3.5−26 and FIG GEN 3.5−27, Key to Decode an ASOS/AWOS (METAR) Observation.

7.4.2 System Description

7.4.2.1 The ASOS/AWOS at each airport location consists of these main components:

a) Individual weather sensors.

b) Data collection and processing units.

c) Peripherals and displays.

7.4.2.2 The ASOS/AWOS sensors perform the basic function of data acquisition. They continuously sample and measure the ambient environment, derive raw sensor data and make them available to the collection and processing units.

7.4.3 Every ASOS/AWOS will contain the following basic set of sensors.

7.4.3.1 Cloud height indicator (one or possibly three).

7.4.3.2 Visibility sensor (one or possibly three).

7.4.3.3 Precipitation identification sensor.

7.4.3.4 Freezing rain sensor.

7.4.3.5 Pressure sensors (two sensors at small airports; three sensors at large airports).

7.4.3.6 Ambient temperature/dew point temperature sensor.

7.4.3.7 Anemometer (wind direction and speed sensor).

7.4.3.8 Rainfall accumulation sensor.

7.4.3.9 Automated Lightning Detection and Reporting System (ALDARS) (excluding Alaska and Pacific Island sites).

7.4.4 The ASOS/AWOS data outlets include:

7.4.4.1 Those necessary for on−site airport users.

7.4.4.2 National communications networks.

7.4.4.3 Computer−generated voice (available through FAA radio broadcast to pilots and dial-in telephone line).

NOTE−
Wind direction is reported relative to magnetic north in ATIS as well as ASOS and AWOS radio (voice) broadcasts.

7.5 A comparison of weather observing programs and the elements observed by each are in TBL GEN 3.5−6, Weather Observing Programs.

7.6 Service Standards. During 1995, a government/industry team worked to comprehensively reassess the requirements for surface observations at the nation's airports. That work resulted in agreement on a set of service standards and the FAA and NWS ASOS sites to which the standards would apply. The term "Service Standards" refers to the level of detail in the weather observation. The service standards consist of four different levels of service (A, B, C, and D) as described below. Specific observational elements included in each service level are listed in TBL GEN 3.5−7, Weather Observation Service Standards.

7.6.1 Service Level D defines the minimum acceptable level of service. It is a completely automated service in which the ASOS/AWOS observation will constitute the entire observation; i.e., no additional weather information is added by a human observer. This service is referred to as a stand alone D site.

7.6.2 Service Level C is a service in which the human observer, usually an air traffic controller, augments or adds information to the automated observation. Service Level C also includes backup of ASOS/AWOS elements in the event of an ASOS/AWOS malfunction or an unrepresentative ASOS/AWOS report.

7.6.3 In backup, the human observer inserts the correct or missing value for the automated ASOS/AWOS elements. This service is provided by air traffic controllers under the Limited Aviation Weather Reporting Station (LAWRS) process, FSS and NWS observers, and, at selected sites, Non−Federal Observation Program observers.

Two categories of airports require detail beyond Service Level C in order to enhance air traffic control efficiency and increase system capacity. Services at these airports are typically provided by contract weather observers, NWS observers, and, at some locations, FSS observers.

7.6.4 Service Level B is a service in which weather observations consist of all elements provided under Service Level C, plus augmentation of additional data beyond the capability of the ASOS/AWOS. This category of airports includes smaller hubs or airports special in other ways that have worse than average bad weather operations for thunderstorms and/or freezing/frozen precipitation, and/or that are remote airports.

7.6.5 Service Level A, the highest and most demanding category, includes all the data reported in Service Standard B, plus additional requirements as specified. Service Level A covers major aviation hubs and/or high volume traffic airports with average or worse weather.

TBL GEN 3.5−6
Weather Observing Programs

Type / Element Reported	Wind	Visibility	Temperature Dew Point	Altimeter	Density Altimeter	Cloud/Ceiling	Precipitation Identification	Thunderstorm/ Lightning	Precipitation Occurrence	Rainfall Accumulation	Runway Surface Condition	Freezing Rain Occurrence	Remarks
ASOS	X	X	X	X	X	X	X			X		X	X
AWOS−A				X									
AWOS−A/V		X		X									
AWOS−1	X		X	X	X								
AWOS−2	X	X	X	X	X								
AWOS−3	X	X	X	X	X	X							
AWOS−3P	X	X	X	X	X	X	X						
AWOS−3T	X	X	X	X	X	X		X					
AWOS−3P/T	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X					
AWOS−4	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	
Manual	X	X	X	X		X	X						X

REFERENCE− FAA Order JO 7900.5, Surface Weather Observing, for element reporting.

TBL GEN 3.5−7

Weather Observation Service Standards

SERVICE LEVEL A	
Service Level A consists of all the elements of Service Levels B, C and D plus the elements listed to the right, if observed.	10 minute longline RVR at precedented sites or additional visibility increments of 1/8, 1/16 and 0 Sector visibility Variable sky condition Cloud layers above 12,000 feet and cloud types Widespread dust, sand and other obscurations Volcanic eruptions
SERVICE LEVEL B	
Service Level B consists of all the elements of Service Levels C and D plus the elements listed to the right, if observed.	Longline RVR at precedented sites (may be instantaneous readout) Freezing drizzle versus freezing rain Ice pellets Snow depth & snow increasing rapidly remarks Thunderstorm and lightning location remarks Observed significant weather not at the station remarks
SERVICE LEVEL C	
Service Level C consists of all the elements of Service Level D plus augmentation and backup by a human observer or an air traffic control specialist on location nearby. Backup consists of inserting the correct value if the system malfunctions or is unrepresentative. Augmentation consists of adding the elements listed to the right, if observed. During hours that the observing facility is closed, the site reverts to Service Level D.	Thunderstorms Tornadoes Hail Virga Volcanic ash Tower visibility Operationally significant remarks as deemed appropriate by the observer
SERVICE LEVEL D	
This level of service consists of an ASOS or AWOS continually measuring the atmosphere at a point near the runway. The ASOS or AWOS senses and measures the weather parameters listed to the right.	Wind Visibility Precipitation/Obstruction to vision Cloud height Sky cover Temperature Dew point Altimeter

8. Weather Radar Services

8.1 The National Weather Service operates a network of radar sites for detecting coverage, intensity, and movement of precipitation. The network is supplemented by FAA and DoD radar sites in the western sections of the country. Local warning radars augment the network by operating on an as needed basis to support warning and forecast programs.

8.2 Scheduled radar observations are taken hourly and transmitted in alpha−numeric format on weather telecommunications circuits for flight planning purposes. Under certain conditions special radar reports are issued in addition to the hourly transmittals. Data contained in the reports is also collected by the National Meteorological Center and used to prepare hourly national radar summary charts for dissemination on facsimile circuits.

8.3 All En route Flight Advisory Service facilities and many Automated Flight Service Stations have equipment to directly access the radar displays from the individual weather radar sites. Specialists at these locations are trained to interpret the display for pilot briefing and inflight advisory services. The Center Weather Service Units located in the ARTCCs also have access to weather radar displays and provide support to all air traffic facilities within their center's area.

8.4 A clear radar display (no echoes) does not mean that there is no significant weather within the coverage of the radar site. Clouds and fog are not detected by the radar. However, when echoes are present, turbulence can be implied by the intensity of the precipitation, and icing is implied by the presence of the precipitation at temperatures at or below zero degrees Celsius. Used in conjunction with other weather products, radar provides invaluable information for weather avoidance and flight planning.

8.5 Additional information on weather radar products and services can be found in the *Aviation Weather Handbook*, FAA−H−8083−28.

REFERENCE−
Pilot/Controller Glossary Term− Precipitation Radar Weather Descriptions.
AIP, GEN 3.5, Para 26., Thunderstorms.
Chart Supplement, Charts, NWS Upper Air Observing Stations and Weather Network for the location of specific radar sites.

9. ATC Inflight Weather Avoidance Assistance

9.1 ATC Radar Weather Display

9.1.1 ATC radars are able to display areas of precipitation by sending out a beam of radio energy that is reflected back to the radar antenna when it strikes an object or moisture which may be in the form of rain drops, hail, or snow. The larger the object is, or the more dense its reflective surface, the stronger the return will be presented. Radar weather processors indicate the intensity of reflective returns in terms of decibels (dBZ). ATC systems cannot detect the presence or absence of clouds. The ATC systems can often determine the intensity of a precipitation area, but the specific character of that area (snow, rain, hail, VIRGA, etc.) cannot be determined. For this reason, ATC refers to all weather areas displayed on ATC radar scopes as "precipitation."

9.1.2 All ATC facilities using radar weather processors with the ability to determine precipitation intensity, will describe the intensity to pilots as:

9.1.2.1 "LIGHT" (< 26 dBZ)

9.1.2.2 "MODERATE" (26 to 40 dBZ)

9.1.2.3 "HEAVY" (> 40 to 50 dBZ)

9.1.2.4 "EXTREME" (> 50 dBZ)

NOTE−
En Route ATC radar's Weather and Radar Processor (WARP) does not display light precipitation intensity.

9.1.3 ATC facilities that, due to equipment limitations, cannot display the intensity levels of precipitation, will describe the location of the precipitation area by geographic position, or position relative to the aircraft. Since the intensity level is not available, the controller will state "INTENSITY UNKNOWN."

9.1.4 ARTCC facilities normally use a Weather and Radar Processor (WARP) to display a mosaic of data obtained from multiple NEXRAD sites. There is a time delay between actual conditions and those displayed to the controller. For example, the precipitation data on the ARTCC controller's display could be up to 6 minutes old. When the WARP is not available, a second system, the narrowband Air Route Surveillance Radar (ARSR) can display two distinct levels of precipitation intensity that will be described to pilots as "MODERATE" (26 to 40 dBZ) and "HEAVY TO EXTREME" (> 40 dBZ). The WARP processor is only used in ARTCC facilities.

9.1.5 *ATC radar is not able to detect turbulence.* Generally, turbulence can be expected to occur as the rate of rainfall or intensity of precipitation increases. Turbulence associated with greater rates of rainfall/precipitation will normally be more severe than any associated with lesser rates of rainfall/precipitation. Turbulence should be expected to occur near convective activity, even in clear air. Thunderstorms are a form of convective activity that imply severe or greater turbulence. Operation within 20 miles of thunderstorms should be approached with great caution, as the severity of turbulence can be markedly greater than the precipitation intensity might indicate.

9.2 Weather Avoidance Assistance

9.2.1 To the extent possible, controllers will issue pertinent information of weather or chaff areas and assist pilots in avoiding such areas if requested. Pilots should respond to a weather advisory by either acknowledging the advisory or by acknowledging the advisory and requesting an alternative course of action as follows:

9.2.1.1 Request to deviate off course by stating a heading or degrees, direction of deviation, and approximate number of miles. In this case, when the requested deviation is approved, navigation is at the pilot's prerogative, but must maintain the altitude assigned, and remain within the lateral restrictions issued by ATC.

9.2.1.2 An approval for lateral deviation authorizes the pilot to maneuver left or right within the lateral limits specified in the clearance.

NOTE−

1. *It is often necessary for ATC to restrict the amount of lateral deviation ("twenty degrees right," "up to fifteen degrees left," "up to ten degrees left or right of course").*

2. *The term "when able, proceed direct," in an ATC weather deviation clearance, refers to the pilot's ability to remain clear of the weather when returning to course/route.*

9.2.1.3 Request a new route to avoid the affected area.

9.2.1.4 Request a change of altitude.

9.2.1.5 Request radar vectors around the affected areas.

9.2.2 For obvious reasons of safety, an IFR pilot must not deviate from the course or altitude/flight level without a proper ATC clearance. When weather conditions encountered are so severe that an immediate deviation is determined to be necessary and time will not permit approval by ATC, the pilot's emergency authority may be exercised.

9.2.3 When the pilot requests clearance for a route deviation or for an ATC radar vector, the controller must evaluate the air traffic picture in the affected area and coordinate with other controllers (if ATC jurisdictional boundaries may be crossed) before replying to the request.

9.2.4 It should be remembered that the controller's primary function is to provide safe separation between aircraft. Any additional service, such as weather avoidance assistance, can only be provided to the extent that it does not derogate the primary function. It is also worth noting that the separation workload is generally greater than normal when weather disrupts the usual flow of traffic. ATC radar limitations and frequency congestion may also be factors in limiting the controller's capability to provide additional service.

9.2.5 It is very important that the request for deviation or radar vector be forwarded to ATC as far in advance as possible. Delay in submitting it may delay or even preclude ATC approval or require that additional restrictions be placed on the clearance. Insofar as possible, the following information should be furnished to ATC when requesting clearance to detour around weather activity:

9.2.5.1 Proposed point where detour will commence.

9.2.5.2 Proposed route and extent of detour (direction and distance).

9.2.5.3 Point where original route will be resumed.

9.2.5.4 Flight conditions (IFR or VFR).

9.2.5.5 Any further deviation that may become necessary as the flight progresses.

9.2.5.6 Advise if the aircraft is equipped with functioning airborne radar.

9.2.6 To a large degree, the assistance that might be rendered by ATC will depend upon the weather information available to controllers. Due to the extremely transitory nature of severe weather situations, the controller's weather information may be of only limited value if based on weather observed on radar only. Frequent updates by pilots giving specific information as to the area affected, altitudes, intensity, and nature of the severe weather can be of considerable value. Such reports are relayed by radio or phone to other pilots and controllers, and they also receive widespread teletypewriter dissemination.

9.2.7 Obtaining IFR clearance or an ATC radar vector to circumnavigate severe weather can often be accommodated more readily in the en route areas away from terminals because there is usually less congestion and, therefore, greater freedom of action. In terminal areas, the problem is more acute because of traffic density, ATC coordination requirements, complex departure and arrival routes, and adjacent airports. As a consequence, controllers are less likely to be able to accommodate all requests for weather detours in a terminal area or be in a position to volunteer such routes to the pilot. Nevertheless, pilots should not hesitate to advise controllers of any observed severe weather and should specifically advise controllers if they desire circumnavigation of observed weather.

9.3 ATC Severe Weather Avoidance Plans

9.3.1 Air Route Traffic Control Centers and some Terminal Radar Control facilities utilize plans for severe weather avoidance within their control areas. Aviation−oriented meteorologists provide weather information. Preplanned alternate route packages developed by the facilities are used in conjunction with flow restrictions to ensure a more orderly flow of traffic during periods of severe or adverse weather conditions.

9.3.2 During these periods, pilots may expect to receive alternative route clearances. These routes are predicated upon the forecasts of the meteorologist and coordination between the Air Traffic Control System Command Center and the other centers. The routes are utilized as necessary in order to allow as many aircraft as possible to operate in any given area, and frequently they will deviate from the normal preferred routes. With user cooperation, this plan may significantly reduce delays.

9.4 Procedures for Weather Deviations and Other Contingencies in Oceanic Controlled Airspace

9.4.1 See ENR 7.3, paragraph 4, Weather Deviation Procedures.

10. Notifications Required From Operators

10.1 Preflight briefing and flight documentation services provided by FSSs do not require prior notification.

10.2 Preflight briefing and flight documentation services provided by a National Weather Service Office (or contract office) are available upon request for long−range international flights for which meteorological data packages are prepared for the pilot−in−command. Briefing times should be coordinated between the local representative and the local meteorological office.

10.3 Flight Service Stations do not normally have the capability to prepare meteorological data packages for a preflight briefing.

11. Weather Observing Systems and Operating Procedures

For surface wind readings, most meteorological reporting stations have a direct reading, 3−cup anemometer wind system for which a 1−minute mean wind speed and direction (based on true north) is taken. Some stations also have a continuous wind speed recorder which is used in determining the gustiness of the wind.

12. Runway Visual Range (RVR)

There are currently two configurations of the RVR, commonly identified as Taskers and New Generation RVR. The Taskers use transmissometer technology. The New Generation RVRs use forward scatter technology and are currently being deployed to replace the existing Taskers.

12.1 RVR values are measured by transmissometers mounted on 14−foot towers along the runway. A full RVR system consists of:

12.1.1 A transmissometer projector and related items.

12.1.2 A transmissometer receiver (detector) and related items.

12.1.3 An analog recorder.

12.1.4 A signal data converter and related items.

12.1.5 A remote digital or remote display programmer.

12.2 The transmissometer projector and receiver are mounted on towers 250 feet apart. A known intensity of light is emitted from the projector and is measured by the receiver. Any obscuring matter, such as rain, snow, dust, fog, haze, or smoke, reduces the light intensity arriving at the receiver. The resultant intensity measurement is then converted to an RVR value by the signal data converter. These values are displayed by readout equipment in the associated air traffic facility and updated approximately once every minute for controller issuance to pilots.

12.3 The signal data converter receives information on the high−intensity runway edge light setting in use (step 3, 4, or 5), transmission values from the transmissometer, and the sensing of day or night conditions. From the three data sources, the system will compute appropriate RVR values.

12.4 An RVR transmissometer established on a 250−foot baseline provides digital readouts to a minimum of 600 feet, which are displayed in 200−foot increments to 3,000 feet, and in 500−foot increments from 3,000 feet to a maximum value of 6,000 feet.

12.5 RVR values for Category IIIa operations extend down to 700−foot RVR; however, only 600 and 800 feet are reportable RVR increments. The 800 RVR reportable value covers a range of 701 feet to 900 feet and is therefore a valid minimum indication of Category IIIa operations.

12.6 Approach categories with the corresponding minimum RVR values are listed in TBL GEN 3.5−8.

TBL GEN 3.5−8

Category	**Visibility (RVR)**
Nonprecision	2,400 feet
Category I	1,800 feet*
Category II	1,000 feet
Category IIIa	700 feet
Category IIIb	150 feet
Category IIIc	0 feet

* 1,400 feet with special equipment and authorization

12.7 Ten−minute maximum and minimum RVR values for the designated RVR runway are reported in the body of the aviation weather report when the prevailing visibility is less than 1 mile and/or the RVR is 6,000 feet or less. ATCTs report RVR when the prevailing visibility is 1 mile or less and/or the RVR is 6,000 feet or less.

12.8 Details on the requirements for the operational use of RVR are contained in FAA Advisory Circular 97−1, "Runway Visual Range (RVR)." Pilots are responsible for compliance with minimums prescribed for their class of operations in appropriate Federal Aviation Regulations and/or operations specifications.

12.8.1 RVR values are also measured by forward scatter meters mounted on 14−foot frangible fiberglass poles. A full RVR system consists of:

12.8.1.1 Forward scatter meter with a transmitter, receiver and associated items.

12.8.1.2 A runway light intensity monitor (RLIM).

12.8.1.3 An ambient light sensor (ALS).

12.8.1.4 A data processor unit (DPU).

12.8.1.5 A controller display (CD).

12.8.2 The forward scatter meter is mounted on a 14−foot frangible pole. Infrared light is emitted from the transmitter and received by the receiver. Any obscuring matter such as rain, snow, dust, fog, haze, or smoke increases the amount of scattered light reaching the receiver. The resulting measurement along with inputs from the runway light intensity monitor and the ambient light sensor are forwarded to the DPU which calculates the proper RVR value. The RVR values are displayed locally and remotely on controller displays.

12.8.3 The runway light intensity monitors both the runway edge and centerline light step settings (steps 1 through 5). Centerline light step settings are used for CAT IIIb operations. Edge light step settings are used for CAT I, II, and IIIa operations.

12.8.4 New Generation RVRs can measure and display RVR values down to the lowest limits of Category IIIb operations (150 foot RVR). RVR values are displayed in 100−foot increments and are reported as follows:

12.8.4.1 100−foot increments for products below 800 feet.

12.8.4.2 200−foot increments for products between 800 feet and 3,000 feet.

12.8.4.3 500−foot increments for products between 3,000 feet and 6,500 feet.

12.8.4.4 25−meter increments for products below 150 meters.

12.8.4.5 50−meter increments for products between 150 meters and 800 meters.

12.8.4.6 100−meter increments for products between 800 meters and 1,200 meters.

12.8.4.7 200−meter increments for products between 1,200 meters and 2,000 meters.

13. Reporting of Cloud Heights

13.1 Ceiling, by definition in Federal Aviation Regulations, and as used in Aviation Weather Reports and Forecasts, is the height above ground (or water) level of the lowest layer of clouds or obscuring phenomenon that is reported as “broken,” “overcast,” or “the vertical visibility into an obscuration.” For example, an aerodrome forecast which reads “BKN030” refers to heights above ground level (AGL). An area forecast which reads “BKN030” states that the height is above mean sea level (MSL). See FIG GEN 3.5−24 for the Key to Routine Aviation Weather Reports and Forecasts for the definition of “broken,” “overcast,” and “obscuration.”

13.2 Information on cloud base height is obtained by use of ceilometers (rotating or fixed beam), ceiling lights, ceiling balloons, pilot reports, and observer estimations. The systems in use by most reporting stations are either the observer estimation or the rotating beam ceilometer.

13.3 Pilots usually report height values above mean sea level, since they determine heights by the altimeter. This is taken into account when disseminating and otherwise applying information received from pilots. (“Ceiling” heights are always above ground level.) In reports disseminated as pilot reports, height references are given the same as received from pilots; that is, above mean sea level.

13.4 In area forecasts or inflight Advisories, ceilings are denoted by the contraction “CIG” when used with sky cover symbols as in “LWRG TO CIG OVC005,” or the contraction “AGL” after the forecast cloud height value. When the cloud base is given in height above mean sea level, it is so indicated by the contraction “MSL” or “ASL” following the height value. The heights of cloud tops, freezing level, icing, and turbulence are always given in heights above mean sea level (ASL or MSL).

14. Reporting Prevailing Visibility

14.1 Surface (horizontal) visibility is reported in METAR reports in terms of statute miles and increments thereof; e.g., $^{1}/_{16}$, $^{1}/_{8}$, $^{3}/_{16}$, $^{1}/_{4}$, $^{5}/_{16}$, $^{3}/_{8}$, $^{1}/_{2}$, $^{5}/_{8}$, $^{3}/_{4}$, $^{7}/_{8}$, 1, 1 $^{1}/_{8}$, etc. (Visibility reported by an unaugmented automated site is reported differently than in a manual report; i.e., ASOS/AWOS: 0, $^{1}/_{16}$, $^{1}/_{8}$, $^{1}/_{4}$, $^{1}/_{2}$, $^{3}/_{4}$, 1, 1 $^{1}/_{4}$, 1 $^{1}/_{2}$, 1 $^{3}/_{4}$, 2, 2 $^{1}/_{2}$, 3, 4, 5, etc., AWOS: M$^{1}/_{4}$, $^{1}/_{4}$, $^{1}/_{2}$, $^{3}/_{4}$, 1, 1 $^{1}/_{4}$, 1 $^{1}/_{2}$, 1 $^{3}/_{4}$, 2, 2 $^{1}/_{2}$, 3, 4, 5, etc.) Visibility is determined through the ability to see and identify preselected and prominent objects at a known distance from the usual point of observation. Visibilities which are determined to be less than 7 miles, identify the obscuring atmospheric condition; e.g., fog, haze, smoke, etc., or combinations thereof.

14.2 Prevailing visibility is the greatest visibility equaled or exceeded throughout at least one−half the horizon circle, not necessarily contiguous. Segments of the horizon circle which may have a significantly different visibility may be reported in the remarks section of the weather report; i.e., the southeastern quadrant of the horizon circle may be determined to be 2 miles in mist while the remaining quadrants are determined to be 3 miles in mist.

14.3 When the prevailing visibility at the usual point of observation, or at the tower level, is less than 4 miles, certificated tower personnel will take visibility observations in addition to those taken at the usual point of observation. The lower of these two values will be used as the prevailing visibility for aircraft operations.

15. Estimating Intensity of Rain and Ice Pellets

15.1 Rain

15.1.1 Light. From scattered drops that, regardless of duration, do not completely wet an exposed surface up to a condition where individual drops are easily seen.

15.1.2 Moderate. Individual drops are not clearly identifiable; spray is observable just above pavements and other hard surfaces.

15.1.3 Heavy. Rain seemingly falls in sheets; individual drops are not identifiable; heavy spray to a height of several inches is observed over hard surfaces.

15.2 Ice Pellets

15.2.1 Light. Scattered pellets that do not completely cover an exposed surface regardless of duration. Visibility is not affected.

15.2.2 Moderate. Slow accumulation on the ground. Visibility is reduced by ice pellets to less than 7 statute miles.

15.2.3 Heavy. Rapid accumulation on the ground. Visibility is reduced by ice pellets to less than 3 statute miles.

16. Estimating the Intensity of Snow or Drizzle (Based on Visibility)

16.1 Light. Visibility more than $^1/_2$ statute mile.

16.2 Moderate. Visibility from more than $^1/_4$ statute mile to $^1/_2$ statute mile.

16.3 Heavy. Visibility $^1/_4$ statute mile or less.

17. Pilot Weather Reports (PIREPs)

17.1 FAA air traffic facilities are required to solicit PIREPs when the following conditions are reported or forecast: ceilings at or below 5,000 feet, visibility at or below 5 miles (surface or aloft), thunderstorms and related phenomena, icing of a light degree or greater, turbulence of a moderate degree or greater, wind shear, and reported or forecast volcanic ash clouds, including the presence of sulphur gases (SO_2 or H_2S). SO_2 is identifiable as the sharp, acrid odor of a freshly struck match. H_2S, also known as sewer gas, has the odor of rotten eggs. Electrical smoke and fire and SO_2 are two odors described as somewhat similar.

NOTE−
After determining there are no secondary indications that would result from and indicate an electrical fire, the flight crew must establish whether the sulphur odor is transient or not. This is best achieved by flight crew donning oxygen mask(s) and breathing 100 percent oxygen for the period of time that results in a complete change of air within the cockpit and also allows the sense of smell to be regained. After the appropriate time period, the flight crew should remove the oxygen mask and determine if the odor is still present. The detection of sulphur gases are to be reported as SO_2 to conform to ICAO practices.

17.2 Pilots are urged to cooperate and promptly volunteer reports of these conditions and other atmospheric data, such as cloud bases, tops and layers, flight visibility, precipitation, visibility restrictions (haze, smoke, and dust), wind at altitude, and temperature aloft.

17.3 PIREPs should be given to the ground facility with which communications are established; i.e., FSS, ARTCC, or terminal ATC. One of the primary duties of the Inflight position is to serve as a collection point for the exchange of PIREPs with en route aircraft.

17.4 If pilots do not make PIREPs by radio, it is helpful if, upon landing, they report to the nearest FSS or Weather Forecast Office the inflight conditions which they encountered. Some of the uses made of the reports are:

17.4.1 The ATCT uses the reports to expedite the flow of air traffic in the vicinity of the field and for hazardous weather avoidance procedures.

17.4.2 The FSS uses the reports to brief other pilots, to provide inflight advisories and weather avoidance information to en route aircraft.

17.4.3 The ARTCC uses the reports to expedite the flow of en route traffic, to determine most favorable altitudes, and to issue hazardous weather information within the center's area.

17.4.4 The NWS uses the reports to verify or amend conditions contained in aviation forecasts and advisories; (In some cases, pilot reports of hazardous conditions are the triggering mechanism for the issuance of advisories.)

17.4.5 The NWS, other government organizations, the military, and private industry groups use PIREPs for research activities in the study of meteorological phenomena.

17.4.6 All air traffic facilities and the NWS forward the reports received from pilots into the weather distribution system to assure the information is made available to all pilots and other interested parties.

17.5 The FAA, NWS, and other organizations that enter PIREPs into the weather reporting system use the format listed in TBL GEN 3.5−9, PIREP Element Code Chart. Items 1 through 6 are included in all transmitted PIREPs along with one or more of items 7 through 13. Although the PIREP should be as complete and concise as possible, pilots should not be overly concerned with strict format or phraseology. The important thing is that the information is relayed so other pilots may benefit from your observation. If a portion of the report needs clarification, the ground station will request the information.

17.6 Completed PIREPs will be transmitted to weather circuits as in the following examples:

EXAMPLE−
KCMH UA/OV APE 230010/TM 1516/FL085/TP BE20/SK BKN065/WX FV03SM HZ FU/TA 20/TB LGT.

Translation: one zero miles southwest of Appleton VOR; time 1516 UTC; altitude eight thousand five hundred; aircraft type BE20; base of the broken cloud layer is six thousand five hundred; flight visibility 3 miles with haze and smoke; air temperature 20 degrees Celsius; light turbulence.

EXAMPLE−
KCRW UA/OV KBKW 360015−KCRW/TM 1815/ FL120/TP BE99/SK IMC/WX RA−/TA M08/WV 290030/TB LGT−MDT/IC LGT RIME/RM MDT MXD ICG DURC KROA NWBND FL080−100 1750Z.
Translation: from 15 miles north of Beckley VOR to Charleston VOR; time 1815 UTC; altitude 12,000 feet; type aircraft, BE−99; in clouds; rain; temperature minus 8 Celsius; wind 290 degrees magnetic at 30 knots; light to moderate turbulence; light rime icing during climb northwestbound from Roanoke, VA, between 8,000 and 10,000 feet at 1750 UTC.

17.7 For more detailed information on PIREPs, users can refer to the current version of the *Aviation Weather Handbook*, FAA−H−8083−28.

TBL GEN 3.5−9

PIREP Element Code Chart

	PIREP ELEMENT	PIREP CODE	CONTENTS
1.	3−letter station identifier	XXX	Nearest weather reporting location to the reported phenomenon
2.	Report type	UA or UUA	Routine or urgent PIREP
3.	Location	/OV	In relation to a VOR
4.	Time	/TM	Coordinated Universal Time
5.	Altitude	/FL	Essential for turbulence and icing reports
6.	Type aircraft	/TP	Essential for turbulence and icing reports
7.	Sky cover	/SK	Cloud height and coverage (sky clear, few, scattered, broken, or overcast)
8.	Weather	/WX	Flight visibility, precipitation, restrictions to visibility, etc.
9.	Temperature	/TA	Degrees Celsius
10.	Wind	/WV	Direction in degrees magnetic north and speed in knots
11.	Turbulence	/TB	See paragraph 21.
12.	Icing	/IC	See paragraph 19.
13.	Remarks	/RM	For reporting elements not included or to clarify previously reported items

18. Mandatory MET Points

18.1 Within the ICAO CAR/SAM Regions and within the U.S. area of responsibility, several mandatory MET reporting points have been established. These points are located within the Houston, Miami, and San Juan Flight Information Regions (FIR). These points have been established for flights between the South American and Caribbean Regions and Europe, Canada and the U.S.

18.2 Mandatory MET Reporting Points Within the Houston FIR

Point	For Flights Between
ABBOT	Acapulco and Montreal, New York, Toronto, Mexico City and New Orleans.
ALARD	New Orleans and Belize, Guatemala, San Pedro Sula, Mexico City and Miami, Tampa.
ARGUS	Toronto and Guadalajara, Mexico City, New Orleans and Mexico City.
SWORD	Dallas−Fort Worth, New Orleans, Chicago and Cancun, Cozumel, and Central America.

18.3 Mandatory MET Reporting Points Within the Miami FIR

Point	For Flights Between
Grand Turk	New York and Aruba, Curacao, Kingston, Miami and Belem, St. Thomas, Rio de Janeiro, San Paulo, St. Croix, Kingston and Bermuda.
GRATX	Madrid and Miami, Havana.
MAPYL	New York and Guayaquil, Montego Bay, Panama, Lima, Atlanta and San Juan.
RESIN	New Orleans and San Juan.
SLAPP	New York and Aruba, Curacao, Kingston, Port−au−Prince. Bermuda and Freeport, Nassau. New York and Barranquilla, Bogota, Santo Domingo, Washington and Santo Domingo, Atlanta and San Juan.

18.4 Mandatory MET Reporting Points Within the San Juan FIR

Point	For Flights Between
GRANN	Toronto and Barbados, New York and Fort de France. At intersection of routes A321, A523, G432.
KRAFT	San Juan and Buenos Aires, Caracas, St. Thomas, St. Croix, St. Maarten, San Juan, Kingston and Bermuda.
PISAX	New York and Barbados, Fort de France, Bermuda and Antigua, Barbados.

19. PIREPs Relating to Airframe Icing

19.1 The effects of ice accretion on aircraft are: cumulative−thrust is reduced, drag increases, lift lessens, weight increases. The results are an increase in stall speed and a deterioration of aircraft performance. In extreme cases, 2 to 3 inches of ice can form on the leading edge of the airfoil in less than 5 minutes. It takes but $^{1}/_{2}$ inch of ice to reduce the lifting power of some aircraft by 50 percent and to increase the frictional drag by an equal percentage.

19.2 A pilot can expect icing when flying in visible precipitation, such as rain or cloud droplets, and the temperature is between +02 and −10 degrees Celsius. When icing is detected, a pilot should do one of two things (particularly if the aircraft is not equipped with deicing equipment). The pilot should get out of the area of precipitation or go to an altitude where the temperature is above freezing. This "warmer" altitude may not always be a lower altitude. Proper preflight action includes obtaining information on the freezing level and the above−freezing levels in precipitation areas. Report the icing to an ATC or FSS facility, and if operating IFR, request new routing or altitude if icing will be a hazard. Be sure to give the type of aircraft to ATC when reporting icing. TBL GEN 3.5−10 describes how to report icing conditions.

TBL GEN 3.5−10

Intensity	Ice Accumulation
Trace	Ice becomes noticeable. The rate of accumulation is slightly greater than the rate of sublimation. A representative accretion rate for reference purposes is less than ¼ inch (6 mm) per hour on the outer wing. The pilot should consider exiting the icing conditions before they become worse.
Light	The rate of ice accumulation requires occasional cycling of manual deicing systems to minimize ice accretions on the airframe. A representative accretion rate for reference purposes is ¼ inch to 1 inch (0.6 to 2.5 cm) per hour on the unprotected part of the outer wing. The pilot should consider exiting the icing condition.
Moderate	The rate of ice accumulation requires frequent cycling of manual deicing systems to minimize ice accretions on the airframe. A representative accretion rate for reference purposes is 1 to 3 inches (2.5 to 7.5 cm) per hour on the unprotected part of the outer wing. The pilot should consider exiting the icing condition as soon as possible.
Severe	The rate of ice accumulation is such that ice protection systems fail to remove the accumulation of ice and ice accumulates in locations not normally prone to icing, such as areas aft of protected surfaces and any other areas identified by the manufacturer. A representative accretion rate for reference purposes is more than 3 inches (7.5 cm) per hour on the unprotected part of the outer wing. By regulation, immediate exit is required.
Pilot Report: Aircraft Identification, Location, Time (UTC), Intensity of Type[1], Altitude/FL, Aircraft Type, Indicated Air Speed (IAS), and Outside Air Temperature (OAT)[2].	
[1]Rime or Clear Ice: Rime ice is a rough, milky, opaque ice formed by the instantaneous freezing of small supercooled water droplets. Clear ice is a glossy, clear, or translucent ice formed by the relatively slow freezing of large supercooled water droplets.	
[2]The Outside Air Temperature (OAT) should be requested by the FSS or ATC if not included in the PIREP.	
NOTE − Severe icing is aircraft dependent, as are the other categories of icing intensity. Severe icing may occur at any ice accumulation rate when the icing rate or ice accumulations exceed the tolerance of the aircraft.	

20. Definitions of Inflight Icing Terms

See TBL GEN 3.5−11, Icing Types, and TBL GEN 3.5−12, Icing Conditions.

TBL GEN 3.5−11

Icing Types

Clear Ice	See Glaze Ice.
Glaze Ice	Ice, sometimes clear and smooth, but usually containing some air pockets, which results in a lumpy translucent appearance. Glaze ice results from supercooled drops/droplets striking a surface but not freezing rapidly on contact. Glaze ice is denser, harder, and sometimes more transparent than rime ice. Factors, which favor glaze formation, are those that favor slow dissipation of the heat of fusion (i.e., slight supercooling and rapid accretion). With larger accretions, the ice shape typically includes "horns" protruding from unprotected leading edge surfaces. It is the ice shape, rather than the clarity or color of the ice, which is most likely to be accurately assessed from the cockpit. The terms "clear" and "glaze" have been used for essentially the same type of ice accretion, although some reserve "clear" for thinner accretions which lack horns and conform to the airfoil.
Intercycle Ice	Ice which accumulates on a protected surface between actuation cycles of a deicing system.
Known or Observed or Detected Ice Accretion	Actual ice observed visually to be on the aircraft by the flight crew or identified by on−board sensors.
Mixed Ice	Simultaneous appearance or a combination of rime and glaze ice characteristics. Since the clarity, color, and shape of the ice will be a mixture of rime and glaze characteristics, accurate identification of mixed ice from the cockpit may be difficult.
Residual Ice	Ice which remains on a protected surface immediately after the actuation of a deicing system.
Rime Ice	A rough, milky, opaque ice formed by the rapid freezing of supercooled drops/droplets after they strike the aircraft. The rapid freezing results in air being trapped, giving the ice its opaque appearance and making it porous and brittle. Rime ice typically accretes along the stagnation line of an airfoil and is more regular in shape and conformal to the airfoil than glaze ice. It is the ice shape, rather than the clarity or color of the ice, which is most likely to be accurately assessed from the cockpit.
Runback Ice	Ice which forms from the freezing or refreezing of water leaving protected surfaces and running back to unprotected surfaces.
Note− *Ice types are difficult for the pilot to discern and have uncertain effects on an airplane in flight. Ice type definitions will be included in the AIP for use in the "Remarks" section of the PIREP and for use in forecasting.*	

TBL GEN 3.5−12
Icing Conditions

Appendix C Icing Conditions	Appendix C (14 CFR, Part 25 and 29) is the certification icing condition standard for approving ice protection provisions on aircraft. The conditions are specified in terms of altitude, temperature, liquid water content (LWC), representative droplet size (mean effective drop diameter [MED]), and cloud horizontal extent.
Forecast Icing Conditions	Environmental conditions expected by a National Weather Service or an FAA−approved weather provider to be conducive to the formation of inflight icing on aircraft.
Freezing Drizzle (FZDZ)	Drizzle is precipitation at ground level or aloft in the form of liquid water drops which have diameters less than 0.5 mm and greater than 0.05 mm. Freezing drizzle is drizzle that exists at air temperatures less than 0°C (supercooled), remains in liquid form, and freezes upon contact with objects on the surface or airborne.
Freezing Precipitation	Freezing precipitation is freezing rain or freezing drizzle falling through or outside of visible cloud.
Freezing Rain (FZRA)	Rain is precipitation at ground level or aloft in the form of liquid water drops which have diameters greater than 0.5 mm. Freezing rain is rain that exists at air temperatures less than 0°C (supercooled), remains in liquid form, and freezes upon contact with objects on the ground or in the air.
Icing in Cloud	Icing occurring within visible cloud. Cloud droplets (diameter < 0.05 mm) will be present; freezing drizzle and/or freezing rain may or may not be present.
Icing in Precipitation	Icing occurring from an encounter with freezing precipitation, that is, supercooled drops with diameters exceeding 0.05 mm, within or outside of visible cloud.
Known Icing Conditions	Atmospheric conditions in which the formation of ice is observed or detected in flight. ***Note−*** *Because of the variability in space and time of atmospheric conditions, the existence of a report of observed icing does not assure the presence or intensity of icing conditions at a later time, nor can a report of no icing assure the absence of icing conditions at a later time.*
Potential Icing Conditions	Atmospheric icing conditions that are typically defined by airframe manufacturers relative to temperature and visible moisture that may result in aircraft ice accretion on the ground or in flight. The potential icing conditions are typically defined in the Airplane Flight Manual or in the Airplane Operation Manual.
Supercooled Drizzle Drops (SCDD)	Synonymous with freezing drizzle aloft.
Supercooled Drops or /Droplets	Water drops/droplets which remain unfrozen at temperatures below 0°C. Supercooled drops are found in clouds, freezing drizzle, and freezing rain in the atmosphere. These drops may impinge and freeze after contact on aircraft surfaces.
Supercooled Large Drops (SLD)	Liquid droplets with diameters greater than 0.05 mm at temperatures less than 0°C, i.e., freezing rain or freezing drizzle.

21. PIREPs Relating to Turbulence

21.1 When encountering turbulence, pilots are urgently requested to report such conditions to ATC as soon as practicable. PIREPs relating to turbulence should state:

21.1.1 Aircraft location.

21.1.2 Time of occurrence in UTC.

21.1.3 Turbulence intensity.

21.1.4 Whether the turbulence occurred in or near clouds.

21.1.5 Aircraft altitude, or flight level.

21.1.6 Type of aircraft.

21.1.7 Duration of turbulence.

EXAMPLE−

1. *Over Omaha, 1232Z, moderate turbulence in clouds at Flight Level three one zero, Boeing 707.*

2. *From five zero miles south of Albuquerque to three zero miles north of Phoenix, 1250Z, occasional moderate chop at Flight Level three three zero, DC8.*

21.2 Duration and classification of intensity should be made using TBL GEN 3.5−13, Turbulence Reporting Criteria Table.

TBL GEN 3.5−13

Turbulence Reporting Criteria Table

Intensity	Aircraft Reaction	Reaction inside Aircraft	Reporting Term−Definition
Light	Turbulence that momentarily causes slight, erratic changes in altitude and/or attitude (pitch, roll, yaw). Report as **Light Turbulence;** [1] or Turbulence that causes slight, rapid and somewhat rhythmic bumpiness without appreciable changes in altitude or attitude. Report as **Light Chop.**	Occupants may feel a slight strain against seat belts or shoulder straps. Unsecured objects may be displaced slightly. Food service may be conducted, and little or no difficulty is encountered in walking.	Occasional−Less than $^{1}/_{3}$ of the time. Intermittent−$^{1}/_{3}$ to $^{2}/_{3}$. Continuous−More than $^{2}/_{3}$.
Moderate	Turbulence that is similar to Light Turbulence but of greater intensity. Changes in altitude and/or attitude occur, but the aircraft remains in positive control at all times. It usually causes variations in indicated airspeed. Report as **Moderate Turbulence;** [1] or Turbulence that is similar to Light Chop but of greater intensity. It causes rapid bumps or jolts without appreciable changes in aircraft altitude or attitude. Report as **Moderate Chop.** [1]	Occupants feel definite strains against seat belts or shoulder straps. Unsecured objects are dislodged. Food service and walking are difficult.	**NOTE** 1. Pilots should report location(s), time (UTC), intensity, whether in or near clouds, altitude, type of aircraft and, when applicable, duration of turbulence. 2. Duration may be based on time between two locations or over a single location. All locations should be readily identifiable.
Severe	Turbulence that causes large, abrupt changes in altitude and/or attitude. It usually causes large variations in indicated airspeed. Aircraft may be momentarily out of control. Report as **Severe Turbulence.** [1]	Occupants are forced violently against seat belts or shoulder straps. Unsecured objects are tossed about. Food service and walking are impossible.	**EXAMPLES:** a. Over Omaha. 1232Z, Moderate Turbulence, in cloud, Flight Level 310, B707.
Extreme	Turbulence in which the aircraft is violently tossed about and is practically impossible to control. It may cause structural damage. Report as **Extreme Turbulence.** [1]		b. From 50 miles south of Albuquerque to 30 miles north of Phoenix, 1210Z to 1250Z, occasional Moderate Chop, Flight Level 330, DC8.

[1] High level turbulence (normally above 15,000 feet ASL) not associated with cumuliform cloudiness, including thunderstorms, should be reported as clear air turbulence (CAT) preceded by the appropriate intensity, or light or moderate chop.

22. Wind Shear PIREPs

22.1 Because unexpected changes in wind speed and direction can be hazardous to aircraft operations at low altitudes on approach to and departing from airports, pilots are urged to promptly volunteer reports to controllers of wind shear conditions they encounter. An advance warning of this information will assist other pilots in avoiding or coping with a wind shear on approach or departure.

22.2 When describing conditions, the use of the terms "negative" or "positive" wind shear should be avoided. PIREPs of negative wind shear on final, intended to describe loss of airspeed and lift, have been interpreted to mean that no wind shear was encountered. The recommended method for wind shear reporting is to state the loss/gain of airspeed and the altitude(s) at which it was encountered.

EXAMPLE−
1. *Denver Tower, Cessna 1234 encountered wind shear, loss of 20 knots at 400.*

2. *Tulsa Tower, American 721 encountered wind shear on final, gained 25 knots between 600 and 400 feet followed by loss of 40 knots between 400 feet and surface.*

Pilots using Inertial Navigation Systems should report the wind and altitude both above and below the shear layer.

EXAMPLE−
Miami Tower, Gulfstream 403 Charlie encountered an abrupt wind shear at 800 feet on final, max thrust required.

Pilots who are not able to report wind shear in these specific terms are encouraged to make reports in terms of the effect upon their aircraft.

22.3 Wind Shear Escape

22.3.1 Pilots should report to ATC when they are performing a wind shear escape maneuver. This report should be made as soon as practicable, but not until aircraft safety and control is assured, which may not be satisfied until the aircraft is clear of the wind shear or microburst. ATC should provide safety alerts and traffic advisories, as appropriate.

EXAMPLE−
"*Denver Tower, United 1154, wind shear escape.*"

22.3.2 Once the pilot initiates a wind shear escape maneuver, ATC is not responsible for providing approved separation between the aircraft and any other aircraft, airspace, terrain, or obstacle until the pilot reports that the escape procedure is complete and approved separation has been re−established. Pilots should advise ATC that they are resuming the previously assigned clearance or should request an alternate clearance.

EXAMPLE−
"*Denver Tower, United ll54, wind shear escape complete, resuming last assigned heading/(name) DP/clearance.*"
or
"*Denver Tower, United ll54, wind shear escape complete, request further instructions.*"

23. Clear Air Turbulence (CAT) PIREPs

23.1 Clear air turbulence (CAT) has become a very serious operational factor to flight operations at all levels and especially to jet traffic flying in excess of 15,000 feet. The best available information on this phenomenon must come from pilots via the PIREP procedures. All pilots encountering CAT conditions are urgently requested to report time, location, and intensity (light, moderate, severe, or extreme) of the element to the FAA facility with which they are maintaining radio contact. If time and conditions permit, elements should be reported according to the standards for other PIREPs and position reports. See TBL GEN 3.5−13, Turbulence Reporting Criteria Table.

24. Microbursts

24.1 Relatively recent meteorological studies have confirmed the existence of microburst phenomena. Microbursts are small−scale intense downdrafts which, on reaching the surface, spread outward in all directions from the downdraft center. This causes the presence of both vertical and horizontal wind shears that can be extremely hazardous to all types and categories of aircraft, especially at low altitudes. Due to their small size, short life−span, and the fact that they can occur over areas without surface precipitation, microbursts are not easily detectable using conventional weather radar or wind shear alert systems.

24.2 Parent clouds producing microburst activity can be any of the low or middle layer convective cloud types. Note however, that microbursts commonly occur within the heavy rain portion of thunderstorms, and in much weaker, benign−appearing convective cells that have little or no precipitation reaching the ground.

24.3 The life cycle of a microburst as it descends in a convective rain shaft is seen in FIG GEN 3.5−8, Evolution of a Microburst. An important consideration for pilots is the fact that the microburst intensifies for about 5 minutes after it strikes the ground.

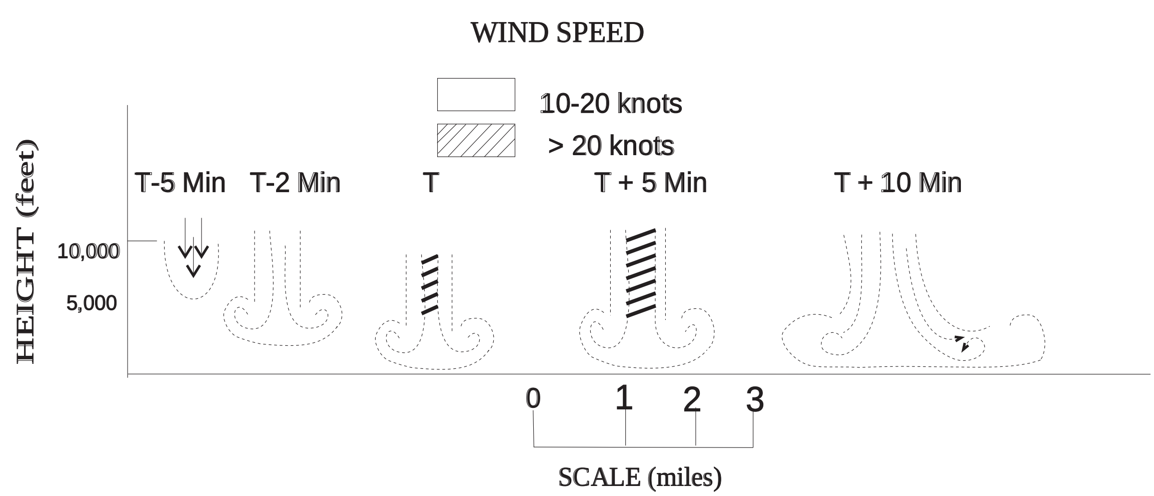
24.4 Characteristics of microbursts include:

24.4.1 Size. The microburst downdraft is typically less than 1 mile in diameter as it descends from the cloud base to about 1,000−3,000 feet above the ground. In the transition zone near the ground, the downdraft changes to a horizontal outflow that can extend to approximately 2 $^1/_2$ miles in diameter.

24.4.2 Intensity. The downdrafts can be as strong as 6,000 feet per minute. Horizontal winds near the surface can be as strong as 45 knots resulting in a 90−knot shear (headwind to tailwind change for a traversing aircraft) across the microburst. These strong horizontal winds occur within a few hundred feet of the ground.

24.4.3 Visual Signs. Microbursts can be found almost anywhere that there is convective activity. They may be embedded in heavy rain associated with a thunderstorm or in light rain in benign− appearing virga. When there is little or no precipitation at the surface accompanying the microburst, a ring of blowing dust may be the only visual clue of its existence.

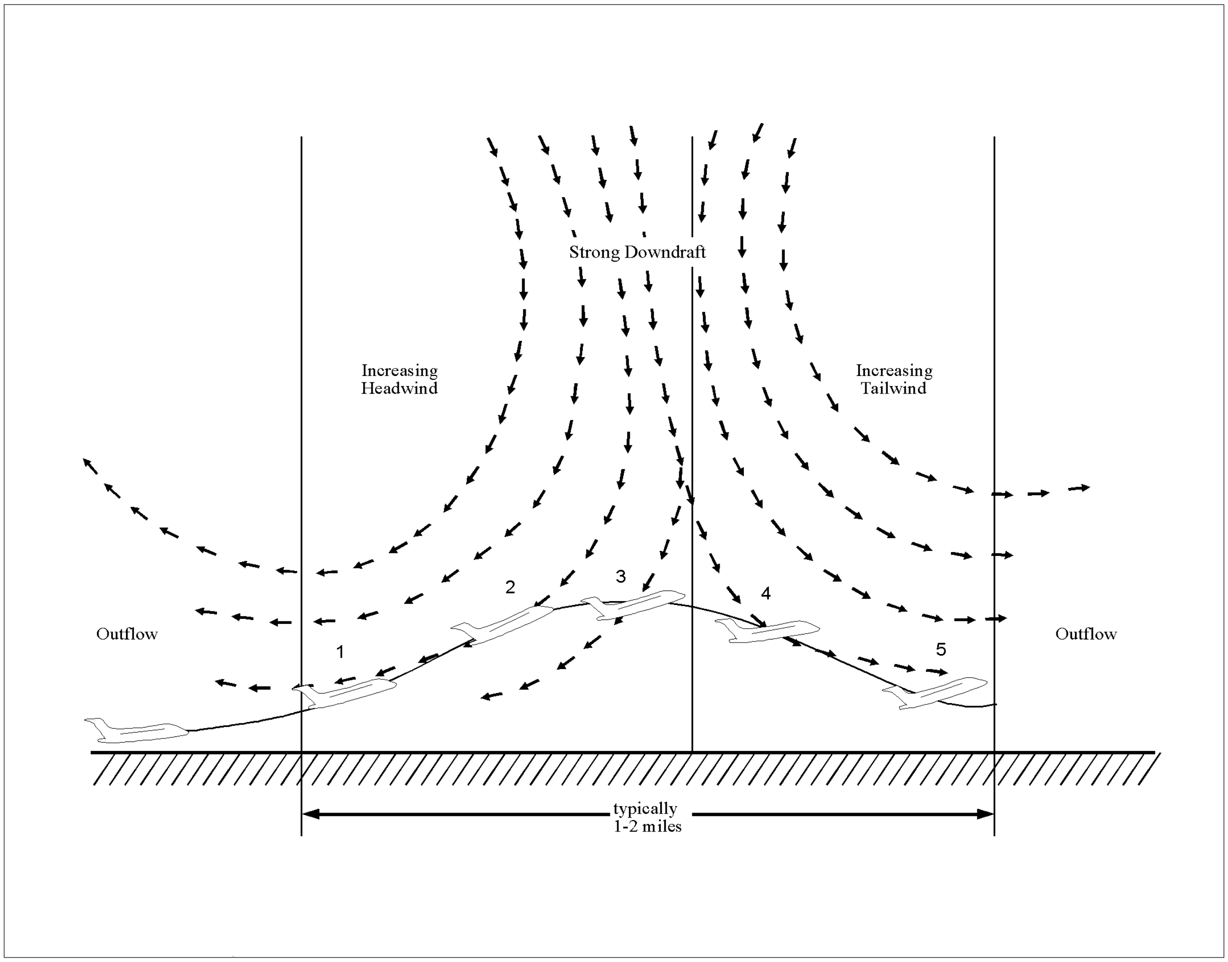
FIG GEN 3.5−8
Evolution of a Microburst



Vertical cross section of the evolution of a microburst wind field. T is the time of initial divergence at the surface. The shading refers to the vector wind speeds. Figure adapted from Wilson et al., 1984, Microburst Wind Structure and Evaluation of Doppler Radar for Wind Shear Detection, DOT/FAA Report No. DOT/FAA/PM-84/29, National Technical Information Service, Springfield, VA 37 pp.

24.4.4 Duration. An individual microburst will seldom last longer than 15 minutes from the time it strikes the ground until dissipation. The horizontal winds continue to increase during the first 5 minutes with the maximum intensity winds lasting approximately 2−4 minutes. Sometimes microbursts are concentrated into a line structure and, under these conditions, activity may continue for as long as 1 hour. Once microburst activity starts, multiple microbursts in the same general area are not uncommon and should be expected.

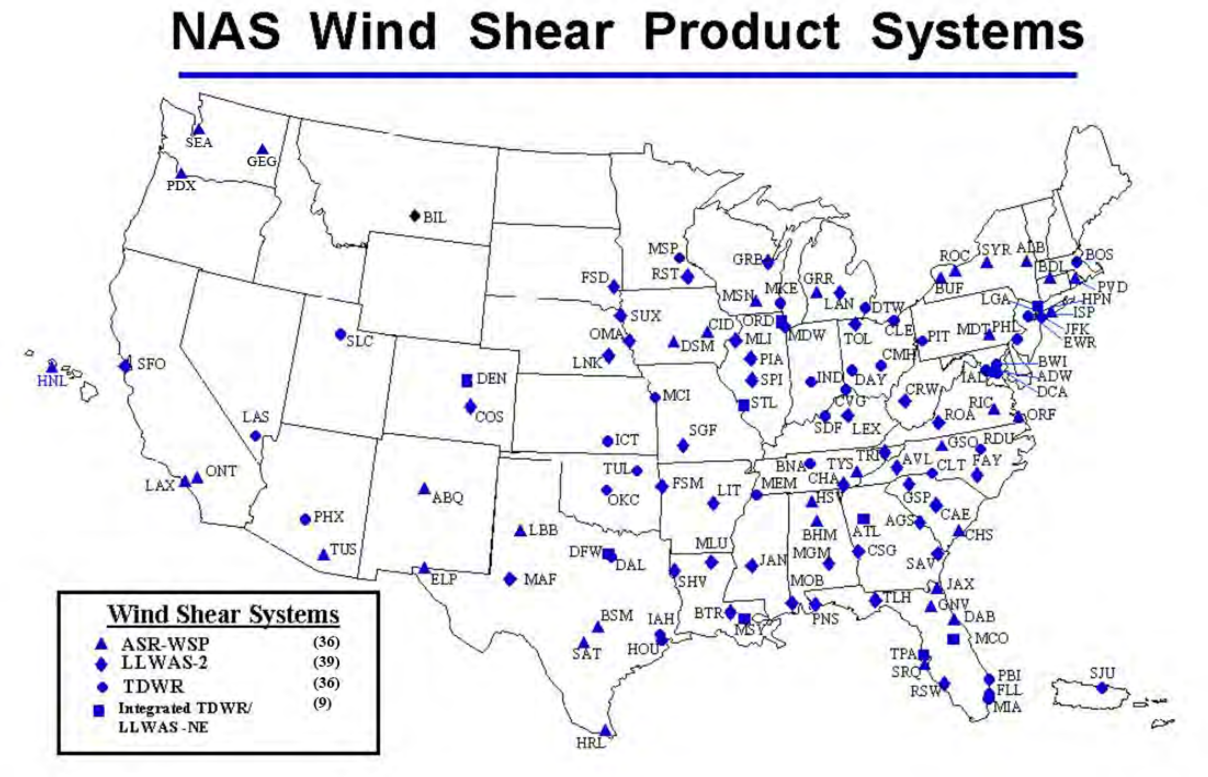
FIG GEN 3.5−9
Microburst Encounter During Takeoff



NOTE−
A microburst encounter during takeoff. The airplane first encounters a headwind and experiences increasing performance (1), this is followed in short succession by a decreasing headwind component (2), a downdraft (3), and finally a strong tailwind (4), where 2 through 5 all result in decreasing performance of the airplane. Position (5) represents an extreme situation just prior to impact. Figure courtesy of Walter Frost, FWG Associates, Inc., Tullahoma, Tennessee.

24.5 Microburst wind shear may create a severe hazard for aircraft within 1,000 feet of the ground, particularly during the approach to landing and landing and take−off phases. The impact of a microburst on aircraft which have the unfortunate experience of penetrating one is characterized in FIG GEN 3.5−9. The aircraft may encounter a headwind (performance increasing), followed by a downdraft and a tailwind (both performance decreasing), possibly resulting in terrain impact.

FIG GEN 3.5−10
NAS Wind Shear Product Systems



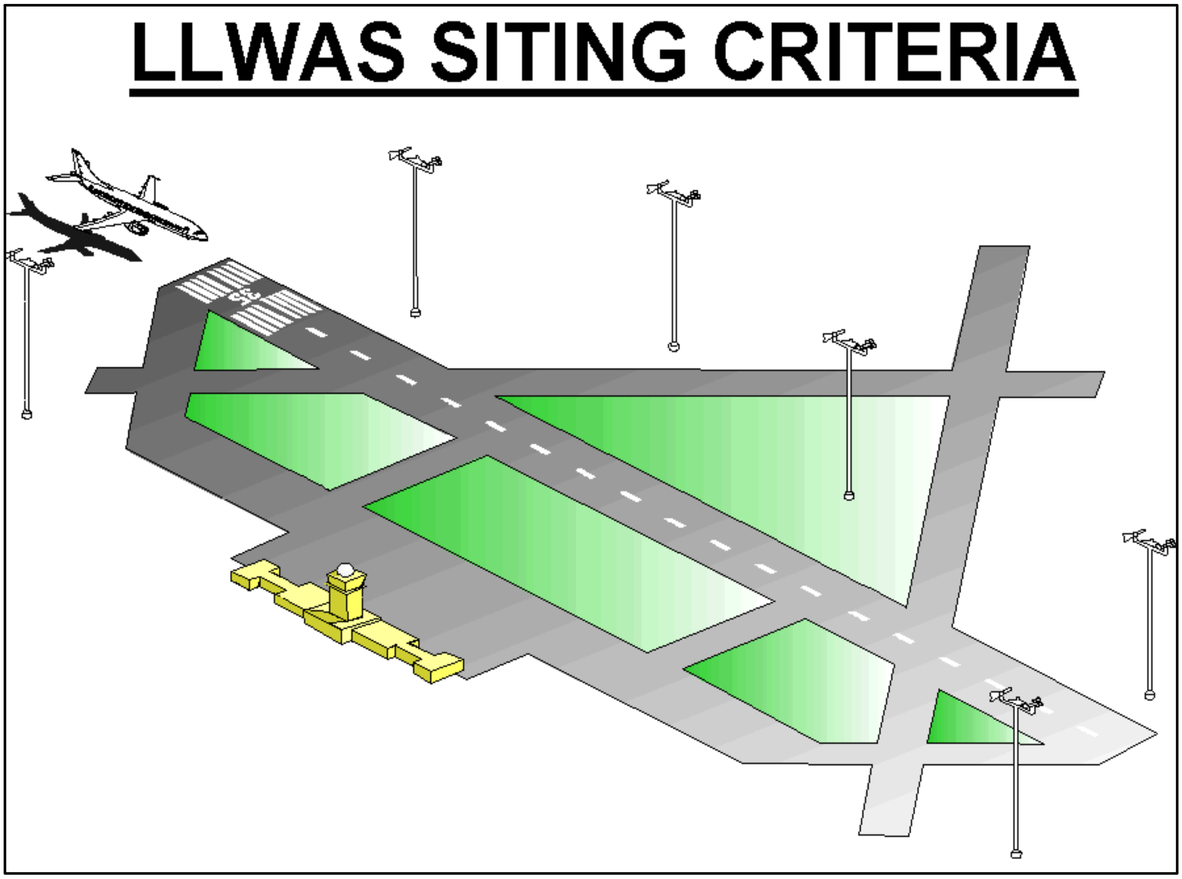
24.6 Detection of Microbursts, Wind Shear, and Gust Fronts

24.6.1 FAA's Integrated Wind Shear Detection Plan

24.6.1.1 The FAA currently employs an integrated plan for wind shear detection that will significantly improve both the safety and capacity of the majority of the airports currently served by the air carriers. This plan integrates several programs, such as the Integrated Terminal Weather System (ITWS), Terminal Doppler Weather Radar (TDWR), Weather System Processor (WSP), and Low Level Wind Shear Alert Systems (LLWAS) into a single strategic concept that significantly improves the aviation weather information in the terminal area. (See FIG GEN 3.5−10.)

24.6.1.2 The wind shear/microburst information and warnings are displayed on the ribbon display terminal (RBDT) located in the tower cabs. They are identical (and standardized) to those in the LLWAS, TDWR and WSP systems, and designed so that the controller does not need to interpret the data, but simply read the displayed information to the pilot. The RBDTs are constantly monitored by the controller to ensure the rapid and timely dissemination of any hazardous event(s) to the pilot.

FIG GEN 3.5−11
LLWAS Siting Criteria



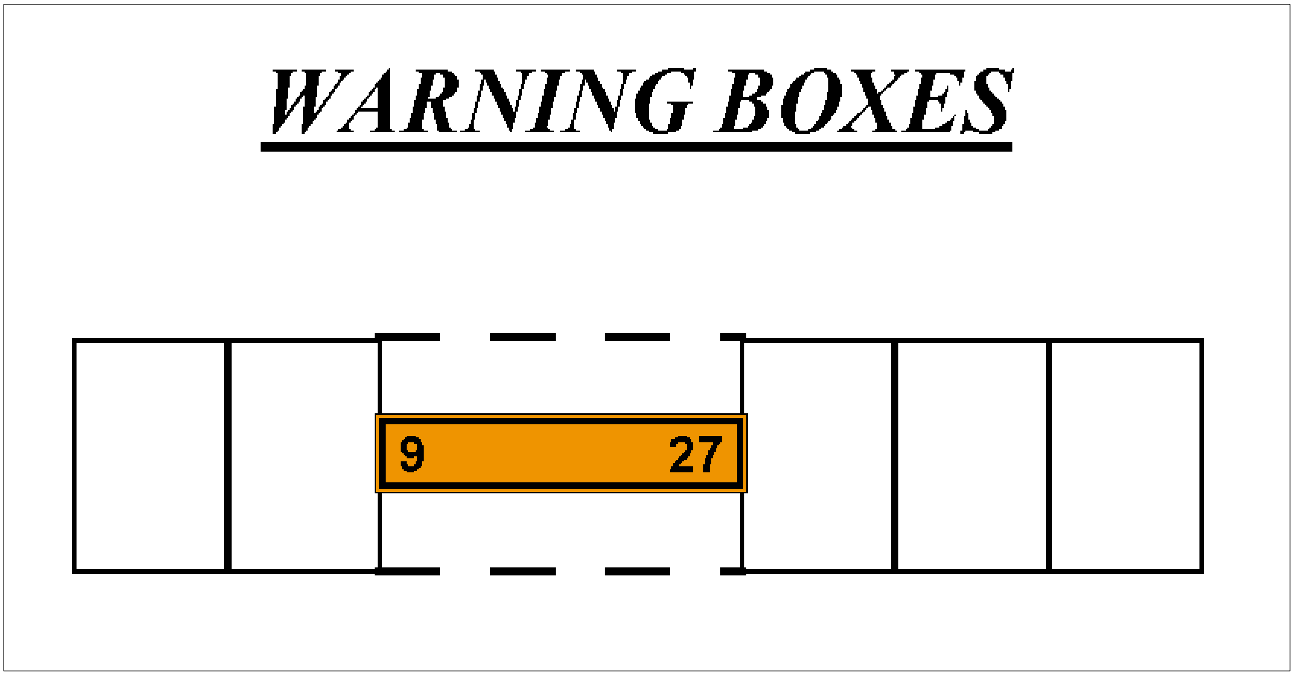
24.6.1.3 The early detection of a wind shear/microburst event, and the subsequent warning(s) issued to an aircraft on approach or departure, will alert the pilot/crew to the potential of, and to be prepared for, a situation that could become very dangerous! Without these warnings, the aircraft may NOT be able to climb out of or safely transition the event, resulting in a catastrophe. The air carriers, working with the FAA, have developed specialized training programs using their simulators to train and prepare their pilots on the demanding aircraft procedures required to escape these very dangerous wind shear and/or microburst encounters.

24.6.1.4 Low Level Wind Shear Alert System (LLWAS)

a) The LLWAS provides wind data and software processes to detect the presence of hazardous wind shear and microbursts in the vicinity of an airport. Wind sensors, mounted on poles sometimes as high as 150 feet, are (ideally) located 2,000 − 3,500 feet, but not more than 5,000 feet, from the centerline of the runway. (See FIG GEN 3.5−11.)

b) The LLWAS was fielded in 1988 at 110 airports across the nation. Many of these systems have been replaced by new Terminal Doppler Weather Radar (TDWR) and Weather Systems Processor (WSP) technology. While all legacy LLWAS systems will eventually be phased out, 39 airports will be upgraded to LLWAS−NE (Network Expansion) system. The new LLWAS−NE systems not only provide the controller with wind shear warnings and alerts, including wind shear/microburst detection at the airport wind sensor location, but also provide the location of the hazards relative to the airport runway(s). It also has the flexibility and capability to grow with the airport as new runways are built. As many as 32 sensors, strategically located around the airport and in relationship to its runway configuration, can be accommodated by the LLWAS−NE network.

FIG GEN 3.5−12
Warning Boxes



24.6.1.5 Terminal Doppler Weather Radar (TDWR)

a) TDWRs have been deployed at 45 locations across the U.S. Optimum locations for TDWRs are 8 to 12 miles from the airport proper, and designed to look at the airspace around and over the airport to detect microbursts, gust fronts, wind shifts, and precipitation intensities. TDWR products advise the controller of wind shear and microburst events impacting all runways and the areas $^{1}/_{2}$ mile on either side of the extended centerline of the runways and to a distance of 3 miles on final approach and 2 miles on departure. FIG GEN 3.5−12 is a theoretical view of the runway and the warning boxes that the software uses to determine the location(s) of wind shear or microbursts. These warnings are displayed (as depicted in the examples in subparagraph e) on the ribbon display terminal located in the tower cabs.

b) It is very important to understand what TDWR DOES NOT DO:

1) It **DOES NOT** warn of wind shear outside of the alert boxes (on the arrival and departure ends of the runways).

2) It **DOES NOT** detect wind shear that is NOT a microburst or a gust front.

3) It **DOES NOT** detect gusty or cross wind conditions.

4) It **DOES NOT** detect turbulence.

However, research and development is continuing on these systems. Future improvements may include such areas as storm motion (movement), improved gust front detection, storm growth and decay, microburst prediction, and turbulence detection.

c) TDWR also provides a geographical situation display (GSD) for supervisors and traffic management specialists for planning purposes. The GSD displays (in color) 6 levels of weather (precipitation), gust fronts and predicted storm movement(s). This data is used by the tower supervisor(s), traffic management specialists, and controllers to plan for runway changes and arrival/departure route changes in order to reduce aircraft delays and increase airport capacity.

24.6.1.6 Weather Systems Processor (WSP)

a) The WSP provides the controller, supervisor, traffic management specialist, and ultimately the pilot, with the same products as the terminal doppler weather radar at a fraction of the cost. This is accomplished by utilizing new technologies to access the weather channel capabilities of the existing ASR−9 radar located on or near the airport, thus eliminating the requirements for a separate radar location, land acquisition, support facilities, and the associated communication landlines and expenses.

b) The WSP utilizes the same RBDT display as the TDWR and LLWAS, and, like the TDWR, has a GSD for planning purposes by supervisors, traffic management specialists, and controllers. The WSP GSD emulates the TDWR display; i.e., it also depicts 6 levels of precipitation, gust fronts and predicted storm movement, and like the TDWR, GSD is used to plan for runway changes and arrival/departure route changes in order to reduce aircraft delays and to increase airport capacity.

c) This system is installed at 34 airports across the nation, substantially increasing the safety of flying.

24.6.1.7 Operational Aspects of LLWAS, TDWR, and WSP

To demonstrate how this data is used by both the controller and the pilot, 3 ribbon display examples and their explanations are presented:

a) MICROBURST ALERTS

EXAMPLE−
This is what the controller sees on his/her ribbon display in the tower cab.

27A MBA 35K− 2MF 250 20

NOTE−
(See FIG GEN 3.5−13 to see how the TDWR/WSP determines the microburst location).

This is what the controller will say when issuing the alert.

PHRASEOLOGY−
RUNWAY 27 ARRIVAL, MICROBURST ALERT, 35 KT LOSS 2 MILE FINAL, THRESHOLD WINDS 250 AT 20.

In plain language, the controller is telling the pilot that on approach to runway 27, there is a microburst alert on the approach lane to the runway, and to anticipate or expect a 35−knot loss of airspeed at approximately 2 miles out on final approach (where the aircraft will first encounter the phenomena). With that information, the aircrew is forewarned, and should be prepared to apply wind shear/microburst escape procedures should they decide to continue the approach. Additionally, the surface winds at the airport for landing runway 27 are reported as 250 degrees at 20 knots.

NOTE−
Threshold wind is at pilot's request or as deemed appropriate by the controller.

b) WIND SHEAR ALERTS

EXAMPLE−
This is what the controller sees on his/her ribbon display in the tower cab.

27A WSA 20K− 3MF 200 15

NOTE−
(See FIG GEN 3.5−14 to see how the TDWR/WSP determines the wind shear location).

This is what the controller will say when issuing the alert.

PHRASEOLOGY−
RUNWAY 27 ARRIVAL, WIND SHEAR ALERT, 20 KT LOSS 3 MILE FINAL, THRESHOLD WINDS 200 AT 15.

In plain language, the controller is advising the aircraft arriving on runway 27 that at 3 miles out the pilot should expect to encounter a wind shear condition that will decrease airspeed by 20 knots and possibly the aircraft will encounter turbulence. Additionally, the airport surface winds for landing runway 27 are reported as 200 degrees at 15 knots.

NOTE−
Threshold wind is at pilot's request or as deemed appropriate by the controller.

FIG GEN 3.5−13
Microburst Alert

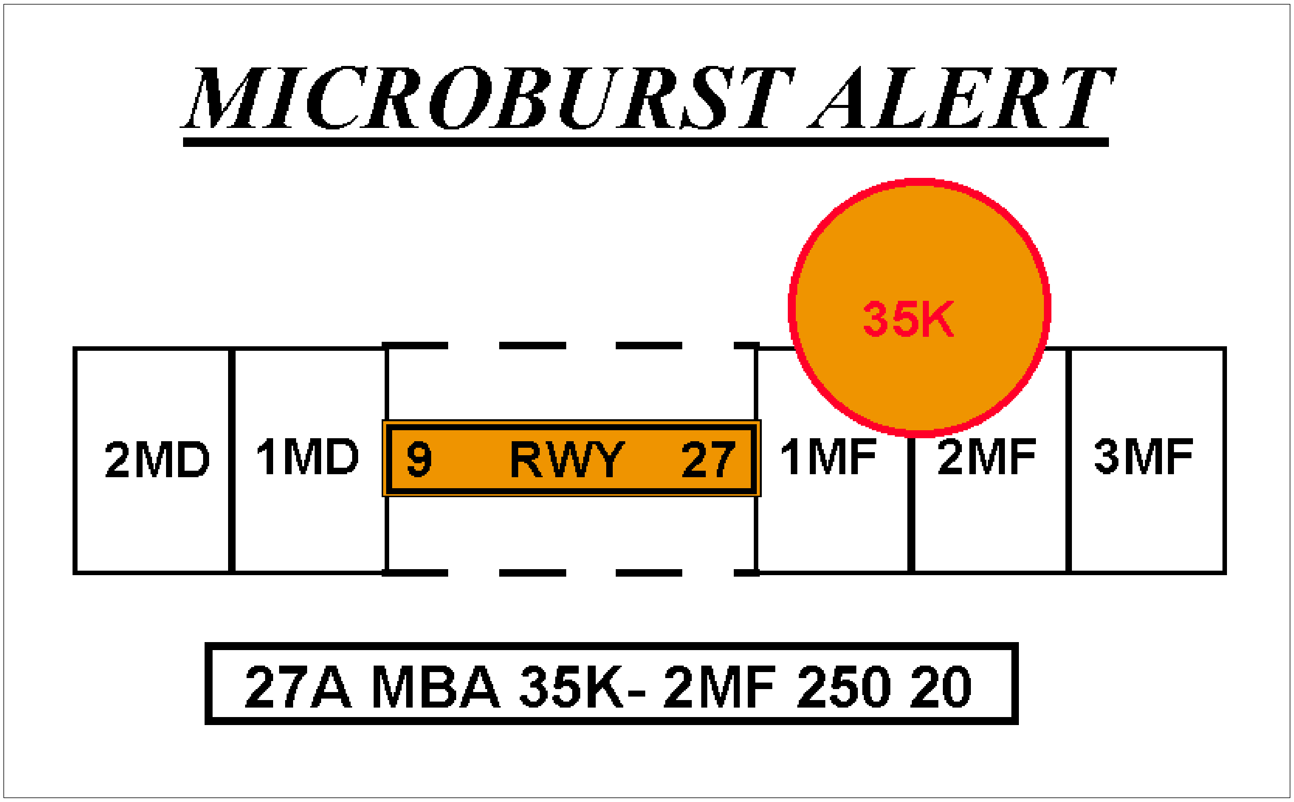


FIG GEN 3.5−14
Weak Microburst Alert

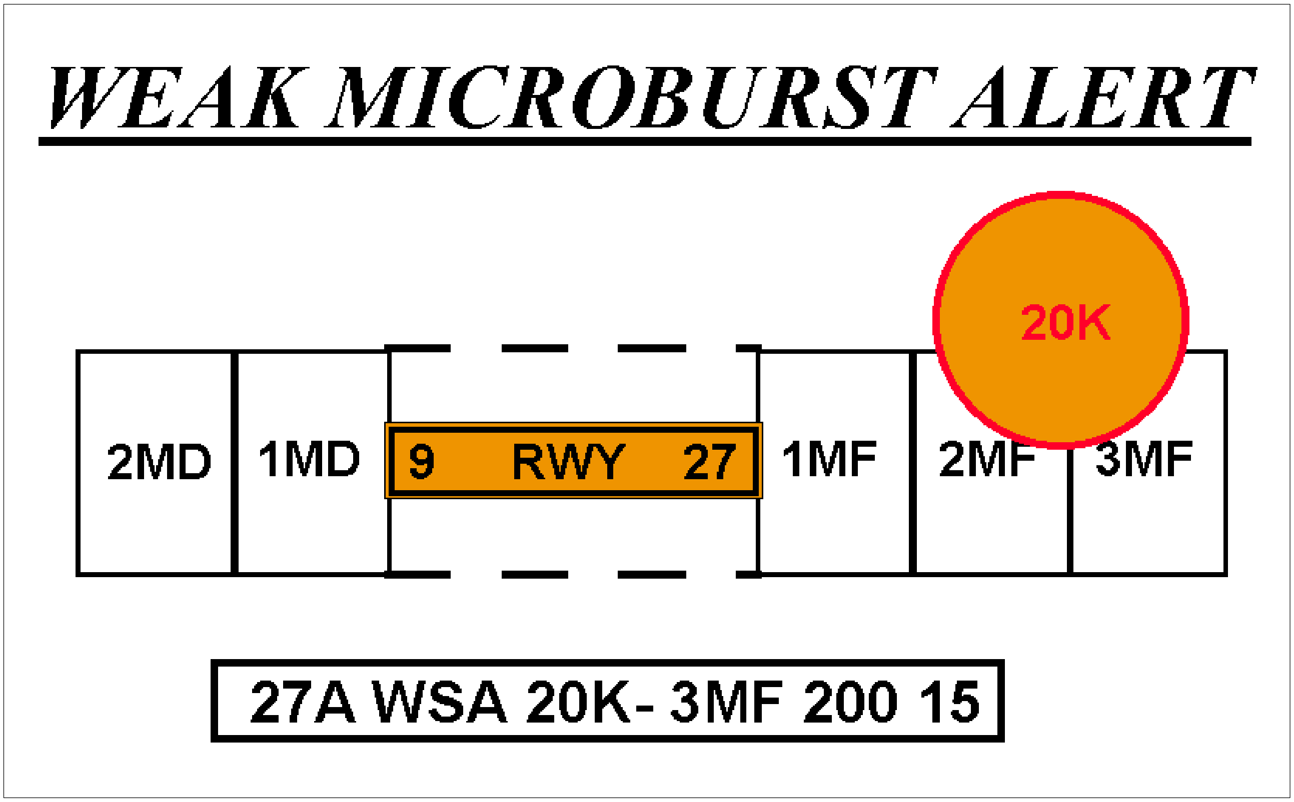
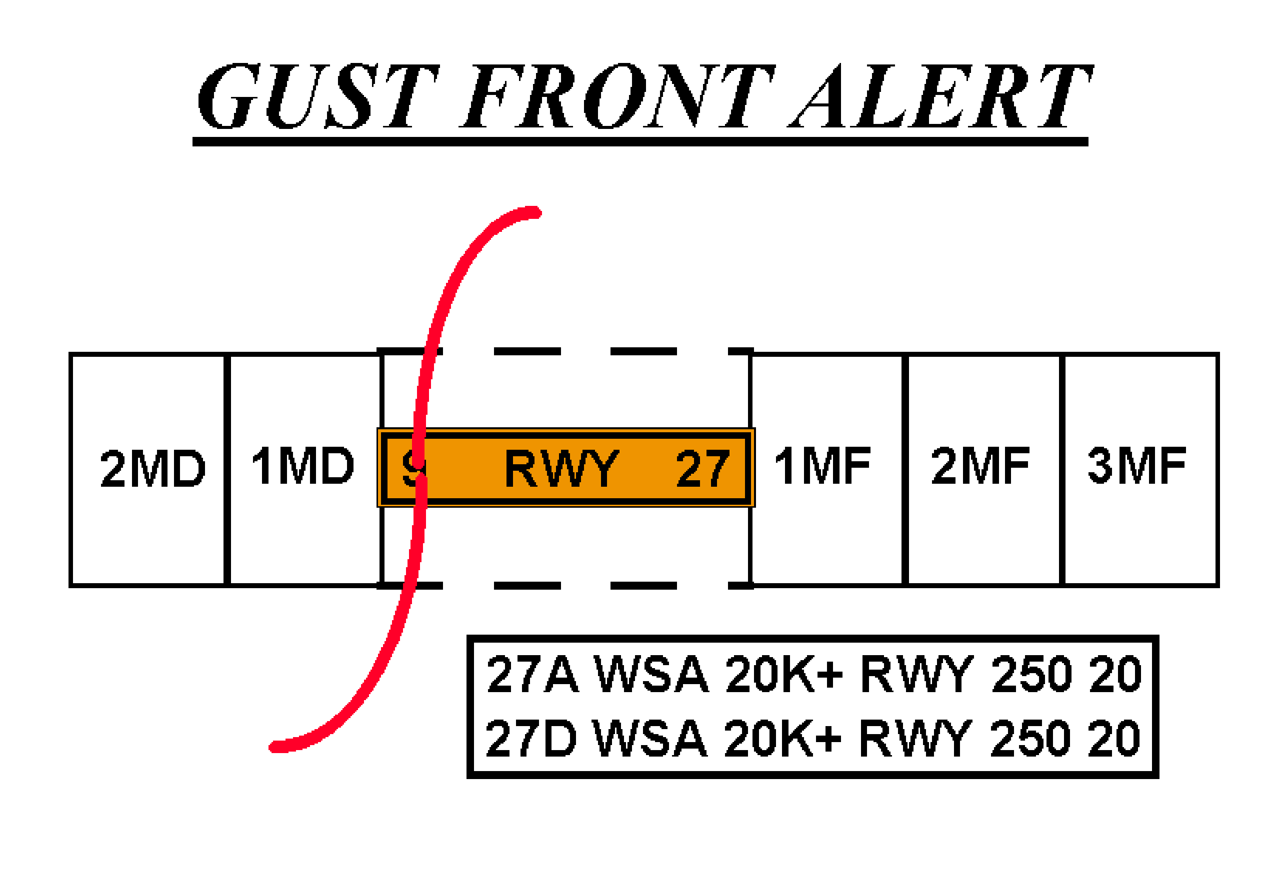


FIG GEN 3.5−15
Gust Front Alert



c) MULTIPLE WIND SHEAR ALERTS

EXAMPLE−
This is what the controller sees on his/her ribbon display in the tower cab.

27A WSA 20K+ RWY 250 20
27D WSA 20K+ RWY 250 20

NOTE−
(See FIG GEN 3.5−15 to see how the TDWR/WSP determines the gust front/wind shear location).

This is what the controller will say when issuing the alert.

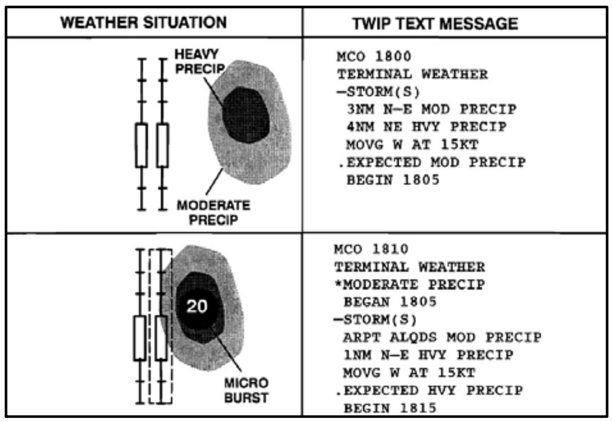
PHRASEOLOGY−
MULTIPLE WIND SHEAR ALERTS.
RUNWAY 27 ARRIVAL, WIND SHEAR ALERT, 20 KT GAIN ON RUNWAY;
RUNWAY 27 DEPARTURE, WIND SHEAR ALERT, 20 KT GAIN ON RUNWAY, WINDS 250 AT 20.

EXAMPLE−
In this example, the controller is advising arriving and departing aircraft that they could encounter a wind shear condition right on the runway due to a gust front (significant change of wind direction) with the possibility of a 20 knot gain in airspeed associated with the gust front. Additionally, the airport surface winds (for the runway in use) are reported as 250 degrees at 20 knots.

24.6.1.8 The Terminal Weather Information for Pilots System (TWIP)

a) With the increase in the quantity and quality of terminal weather information available through TDWR, the next step is to provide this information directly to pilots rather than relying on voice communications from ATC. The National Airspace System (NAS) has long been in need of a means of delivering terminal weather information to the cockpit more efficiently in terms of both speed and accuracy to enhance pilot awareness of weather hazards and reduce air traffic controller workload. With the TWIP capability, terminal weather information, both alphanumerically and graphically, is now available directly to the cockpit for 46 airports in the U.S. NAS. (See FIG GEN 3.5−16.)

FIG GEN 3.5−16
TWIP Image of Convective Weather at MCO International



b) TWIP products are generated using weather data from the TDWR or the Integrated Terminal Weather System (ITWS). These products can then be accessed by pilots using the Aircraft Communications Addressing and Reporting System (ACARS) data link services. Airline dispatchers can also access this database and send messages to specific aircraft whenever wind shear activity begins or ends at an airport.

c) TWIP products include descriptions and character graphics of microburst alerts, wind shear alerts, significant precipitation, convective activity within 30 NM surrounding the terminal area, and expected weather that will impact airport operations. During inclement weather; i.e., whenever a predetermined level of precipitation or wind shear is detected within 15 miles of the terminal area, TWIP products are updated once each minute for text messages and once every 5 minutes for character graphic messages. During good weather (below the predetermined precipitation or wind shear parameters) each message is updated every 10 minutes. These products are intended to improve the situational awareness of the pilot/flight crew, and to aid in flight planning prior to arriving or departing the terminal area. It is important to understand that, in the context of TWIP, the predetermined levels for inclement versus good weather has nothing to do with the criteria for VFR/MVFR/IFR/LIFR; it only deals with precipitation, wind shears, and microbursts.

TBL GEN 3.5−14

TWIP−Equipped Airports

Airport	Identifier
Andrews AFB, MD	KADW
Hartsfield−Jackson Atlanta Intl Airport	KATL
Nashville Intl Airport	KBNA
Logan Intl Airport	KBOS
Baltimore/Washington Intl Airport	KBWI
Hopkins Intl Airport	KCLE
Charlotte/Douglas Intl Airport	KCLT
Port Columbus Intl Airport	KCMH
Cincinnati/Northern Kentucky Intl Airport	KCVG
Dallas Love Field Airport	KDAL
James M. Cox Intl Airport	KDAY
Ronald Reagan Washington National Airport	KDCA
Denver Intl Airport	KDEN
Dallas−Fort Worth Intl Airport	KDFW
Detroit Metro Wayne County Airport	KDTW
Newark Liberty Intl Airport	KEWR
Fort Lauderdale−Hollywood Intl Airport	KFLL
William P. Hobby Airport	KHOU
Washington Dulles Intl Airport	KIAD
George Bush Intercontinental Airport	KIAH
Wichita Mid−Continent Airport	KICT
Indianapolis Intl Airport	KIND
John F. Kennedy Intl Airport	KJFK

Airport	Identifier
Harry Reid Intl Airport	KLAS
LaGuardia Airport	KLGA
Kansas City Intl Airport	KMCI
Orlando Intl Airport	KMCO
Midway Intl Airport	KMDW
Memphis Intl Airport	KMEM
Miami Intl Airport	KMIA
General Mitchell Intl Airport	KMKE
Minneapolis St. Paul Intl Airport	KMSP
Louis Armstrong New Orleans Intl Airport	KMSY
Will Rogers World Airport	KOKC
O’Hare Intl Airport	KORD
Palm Beach Intl Airport	KPBI
Philadelphia Intl Airport	KPHL
Phoenix Sky Harbor Intl Airport	KPHX
Pittsburgh Intl Airport	KPIT
Raleigh−Durham Intl Airport	KRDU
Louisville Intl Airport	KSDF
Salt Lake City Intl Airport	KSLC
Lambert−St. Louis Intl Airport	KSTL
Tampa Intl Airport	KTPA
Tulsa Intl Airport	KTUL
Luis Munoz Marin Intl Airport	TJSJ

25. PIREPs Relating to Volcanic Ash Activity

25.1 Volcanic eruptions which send ash into the upper atmosphere occur somewhere around the world several times each year. Flying into a volcanic ash cloud can be exceedingly dangerous. At least two B747s have lost all power in all four engines after such an encounter. Regardless of the type aircraft, some damage is almost certain to ensue after an encounter with a volcanic ash cloud. Additionally, studies have shown that volcanic eruptions are the only significant source of large quantities of sulphur dioxide (SO_2) gas at jet-cruising altitudes. Therefore, the detection and subsequent reporting of SO_2 is of significant importance. Although SO_2 is colorless, its presence in the atmosphere should be suspected when a sulphur-like or rotten egg odor is present throughout the cabin.

25.2 While some volcanoes in the U.S. are monitored, many in remote areas are not. These unmonitored volcanoes may erupt without prior warning to the aviation community. A pilot observing a volcanic eruption who has not had previous notification of it may be the only witness to the eruption. Pilots are strongly encouraged to transmit a PIREP regarding volcanic eruptions and any observed volcanic ash clouds or detection of sulphur dioxide (SO_2) gas associated with volcanic activity.

25.3 Pilots should submit PIREPs regarding volcanic activity using the Volcanic Activity Reporting form (VAR) as illustrated in FIG GEN 3.5−31. (If a VAR form is not immediately available, relay enough information to identify the position and type of volcanic activity.)

25.4 Pilots should verbally transmit the data required in items 1 through 8 of the VAR as soon as possible. The data required in items 9 through 16 of the VAR should be relayed after landing, if possible.

26. Thunderstorms

26.1 Turbulence, hail, rain, snow, lightning, sustained updrafts and downdrafts, and icing conditions are all present in thunderstorms. While there is some evidence that maximum turbulence exists at the middle level of a thunderstorm, recent studies show little variation of turbulence intensity with altitude.

26.2 There is no useful correlation between the external visual appearance of thunderstorms and the severity or amount of turbulence or hail within them. Also, the visible thunderstorm cloud is only a portion of a turbulent system whose updrafts and downdrafts often extend far beyond the visible storm cloud. Severe turbulence can be expected up to 20 miles from severe thunderstorms. This distance decreases to about 10 miles in less severe storms. These turbulent areas may appear as a well−defined echo on weather radar.

26.3 Weather radar, airborne or ground−based, will normally reflect the areas of moderate to heavy precipitation. (Radar does not detect turbulence.) The frequency and severity of turbulence generally increases with the areas of highest liquid water content of the storm. NO FLIGHT PATH THROUGH AN AREA OF STRONG OR VERY STRONG RADAR ECHOES SEPARATED BY 20−30 MILES OR LESS MAY BE CONSIDERED FREE OF SEVERE TURBULENCE.

26.4 Turbulence beneath a thunderstorm should not be minimized. This is especially true when the relative humidity is low in any layer between the surface and 15,000 feet. Then the lower altitudes may be characterized by strong out−flowing winds and severe turbulence.

26.5 The probability of lightning strikes occurring to aircraft is greatest when operating at altitudes where temperatures are between −5 C and +5 C. Lightning can strike aircraft flying in the clear in the vicinity of a thunderstorm.

26.6 Current weather radar systems are able to objectively determine precipitation intensity. These precipitation intensity areas are described as “light,” “moderate,” “heavy,” and “extreme.”

REFERENCE−
Pilot/Controller Glossary Term− Precipitation Radar Weather Descriptions.

EXAMPLE−
Alert provided by an ATC facility to an aircraft:
(aircraft identification) EXTREME precipitation between ten o’clock and two o’clock, one five miles. Precipitation area is two five miles in diameter.

EXAMPLE−
Alert provided by an FSS:
(aircraft identification) EXTREME precipitation two zero miles west of Atlanta V−O−R, two five miles wide, moving east at two zero knots, tops flight level three niner zero.

27. Thunderstorm Flying

27.1 Thunderstorm Avoidance. Never regard any thunderstorm lightly, even when radar echoes are of light intensity. Avoiding thunderstorms is the best policy. Following are some Do’s and Don’ts of thunderstorm avoidance:

27.1.1 Don’t land or takeoff in the face of an approaching thunderstorm. A sudden gust front of low−level turbulence could cause loss of control.

27.1.2 Don’t attempt to fly under a thunderstorm even if you can see through to the other side. Turbulence and wind shear under the storm could be disastrous.

27.1.3 Don't attempt to fly under the anvil of a thunderstorm. There is a potential for severe and extreme clear air turbulence.

27.1.4 Don't fly without airborne radar into a cloud mass containing scattered embedded thunderstorms. Scattered thunderstorms not embedded usually can be visually circumnavigated.

27.1.5 Don't trust the visual appearance to be a reliable indicator of the turbulence inside a thunderstorm.

27.1.6 Don't assume that ATC will offer radar navigation guidance or deviations around thunderstorms.

27.1.7 Don't use data-linked weather next generation weather radar (NEXRAD) mosaic imagery as the sole means for negotiating a path through a thunderstorm area (tactical maneuvering).

27.1.8 Do remember that the data-linked NEXRAD mosaic imagery shows where the weather was, not where the weather is. The weather conditions may be 15 to 20 minutes older than the age indicated on the display.

27.1.9 Do listen to chatter on the ATC frequency for Pilot Weather Reports (PIREP) and other aircraft requesting to deviate or divert.

27.1.10 Do ask ATC for radar navigation guidance or to approve deviations around thunderstorms, if needed.

27.1.11 Do use data-linked weather NEXRAD mosaic imagery (for example, Flight Information Service-Broadcast (FIS-B)) for route selection to avoid thunderstorms entirely (strategic maneuvering).

27.1.12 Do advise ATC, when switched to another controller, that you are deviating for thunderstorms before accepting to rejoin the original route.

27.1.13 Do ensure that after an authorized weather deviation, before accepting to rejoin the original route, that the route of flight is clear of thunderstorms.

27.1.14 Do avoid by at least 20 miles any thunderstorm identified as severe or giving an intense radar echo. This is especially true under the anvil of a large cumulonimbus.

27.1.15 Do circumnavigate the entire area if the area has 6/10 thunderstorm coverage.

27.1.16 Do remember that vivid and frequent lightning indicates the probability of a severe thunderstorm.

27.1.17 Do regard as extremely hazardous any thunderstorm with tops 35,000 feet or higher whether the top is visually sighted or determined by radar.

27.1.18 Do give a PIREP for the flight conditions.

27.1.19 Do divert and wait out the thunderstorms on the ground if unable to navigate around an area of thunderstorms.

27.1.20 Do contact Flight Service for assistance in avoiding thunderstorms. Flight Service specialists have NEXRAD mosaic radar imagery and NEXRAD single site radar with unique features such as base and composite reflectivity, echo tops, and VAD wind profiles.

27.2 If you cannot avoid penetrating a thunderstorm, following are some Do's before entering the storm:

27.2.1 Tighten your safety belt, put on your shoulder harness (if installed), if and secure all loose objects.

27.2.2 Plan and hold the course to take the aircraft through the storm in a minimum time.

27.2.3 To avoid the most critical icing, establish a penetration altitude below the freezing level or above the level of −15 C.

27.2.4 Verify that pitot heat is on and turn on carburetor heat or jet engine anti−ice. Icing can be rapid at any altitude and cause almost instantaneous power failure and/or loss of airspeed indication.

27.2.5 Establish power settings for turbulence penetration airspeed recommended in your aircraft manual.

27.2.6 Turn up cockpit lights to highest intensity to lessen danger of temporary blindness from lightning.

27.2.7 If using automatic pilot, disengage Altitude Hold Mode and Speed Hold Mode. The automatic altitude and speed controls will increase maneuvers of the aircraft thus increasing structural stress.

27.2.8 If using airborne radar, tilt the antenna up and down occasionally. This will permit the detection of other thunderstorm activity at altitudes other than the one being flown.

27.3 Following are some Do's and Don'ts during the thunderstorm penetration:

27.3.1 Do keep your eyes on your instruments. Looking outside the cockpit can increase danger of temporary blindness from lightning.

27.3.2 Don't change power settings; maintain settings for the recommended turbulence penetration airspeed.

27.3.3 Do maintain constant attitude. Allow the altitude and airspeed to fluctuate.

27.3.4 Don't turn back once you are in the thunderstorm. A straight course through the storm most likely will get the aircraft out of the hazards most quickly. In addition, turning maneuvers increase stress on the aircraft.

28. Wake Turbulence

28.1 General

28.1.1 Every aircraft generates wake turbulence while in flight. Wake turbulence is a function of an aircraft producing lift, resulting in the formation of two counter−rotating vortices trailing behind the aircraft.

28.1.2 Wake turbulence from the generating aircraft can affect encountering aircraft due to the strength, duration, and direction of the vortices. Wake turbulence can impose rolling moments exceeding the roll−control authority of encountering aircraft, causing possible injury to occupants and damage to aircraft. Pilots should always be aware of the possibility of a wake turbulence encounter when flying through the wake of another aircraft, and adjust the flight path accordingly.

28.2 Vortex Generation

28.2.1 The creation of a pressure differential over the wing surface generates lift. The lowest pressure occurs over the upper wing surface and the highest pressure under the wing. This pressure differential triggers the roll up of the airflow at the rear of the wing resulting in swirling air masses trailing downstream of the wing tips. After the roll up is completed, the wake consists of two counter−rotating cylindrical vortices. (See FIG GEN 3.5−17.) The wake vortex is formed with most of the energy concentrated within a few feet of the vortex core.

28.2.2 More aircraft are being manufactured or retrofitted with winglets. There are several types of winglets, but their primary function is to increase fuel efficiency by improving the lift−to−drag ratio. Studies have shown that winglets have a negligible effect on wake turbulence generation, particularly with the slower speeds involved during departures and arrivals.

28.3 Vortex Strength

28.3.1 Weight, speed, wingspan, and shape of the generating aircraft's wing all govern the strength of the vortex. The vortex characteristics of any given aircraft can also be changed by extension of flaps or other wing configuring devices. However, the vortex strength from an aircraft increases proportionately to an increase in operating weight or a decrease in aircraft speed. Since the turbulence from a "dirty" aircraft configuration hastens wake decay, the greatest vortex strength occurs when the generating aircraft is HEAVY, CLEAN, and SLOW.

28.3.2 Induced Roll

28.3.2.1 In rare instances, a wake encounter could cause catastrophic inflight structural damage to an aircraft. However, the usual hazard is associated with induced rolling moments that can exceed the roll−control authority of the encountering aircraft. During inflight testing, aircraft intentionally flew directly up trailing vortex cores of larger aircraft. These tests demonstrated that the ability of aircraft to counteract the roll imposed by wake vortex depends primarily on the wingspan and counter−control responsiveness of the encountering aircraft. These tests also demonstrated the difficulty of an aircraft to remain within a wake vortex. The natural tendency is for the circulation to eject aircraft from the vortex.

28.3.2.2 Counter−control is usually effective and induced roll minimal in cases where the wing span and ailerons of the encountering aircraft extend beyond the rotational flow field of the vortex. It is more difficult for aircraft with short wing span (relative to the generating aircraft) to counter the imposed roll induced by vortex flow. Pilots of short−span aircraft, even of the high−performance type, must be especially alert to vortex encounters. (See FIG GEN 3.5−18.)

28.4 Vortex Behavior

28.4.1 Trailing vortices have certain behavioral characteristics which can help a pilot visualize the wake location and thereby take avoidance precautions.

28.4.1.1 An aircraft generates vortices from the moment it rotates on takeoff to touchdown, since trailing vortices are a by−product of wing lift. Prior to takeoff or touchdown pilots should note the rotation or touchdown point of the preceding aircraft. (See FIG GEN 3.5−19.)

28.4.1.2 The vortex circulation is outward, upward and around the wing tips when viewed from either ahead or behind the aircraft. Tests with larger aircraft have shown that the vortices remain spaced a bit less than a wingspan apart, drifting with the wind, at altitudes greater than a wingspan from the ground. In view of this, if persistent vortex turbulence is encountered, a slight change of altitude (upward) and lateral position (upwind) should provide a flight path clear of the turbulence.

28.4.1.3 Flight tests have shown that the vortices from larger aircraft sink at a rate of several hundred feet per minute, slowing their descent and diminishing in strength with time and distance behind the generating aircraft. Pilots should fly at or above the preceding aircraft's flight path, altering course as necessary to avoid the area directly behind and below the generating aircraft. (See FIG GEN 3.5−20.) Pilots, in all phases of flight, must remain vigilant of possible wake effects created by other aircraft. Studies have shown that atmospheric turbulence hastens wake breakup, while other atmospheric conditions can transport wake horizontally and vertically.

FIG GEN 3.5−17
Wake Vortex Generation

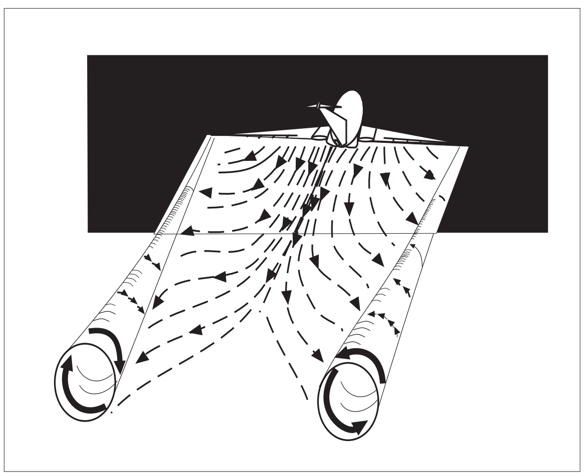


FIG GEN 3.5−18

Wake Encounter Counter Control

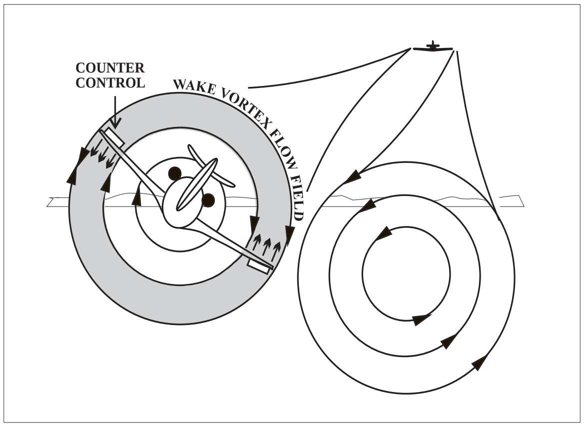


FIG GEN 3.5−19

Wake Ends/Wake Begins

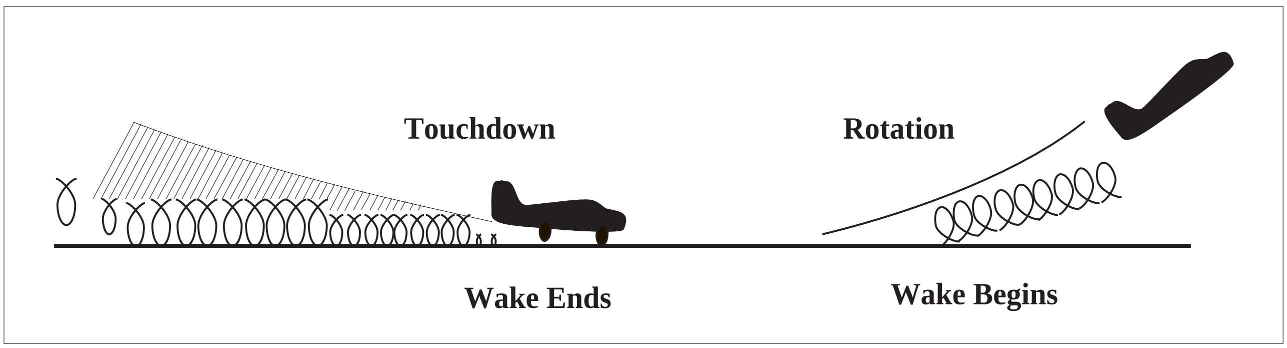


FIG GEN 3.5−20

Vortex Flow Field

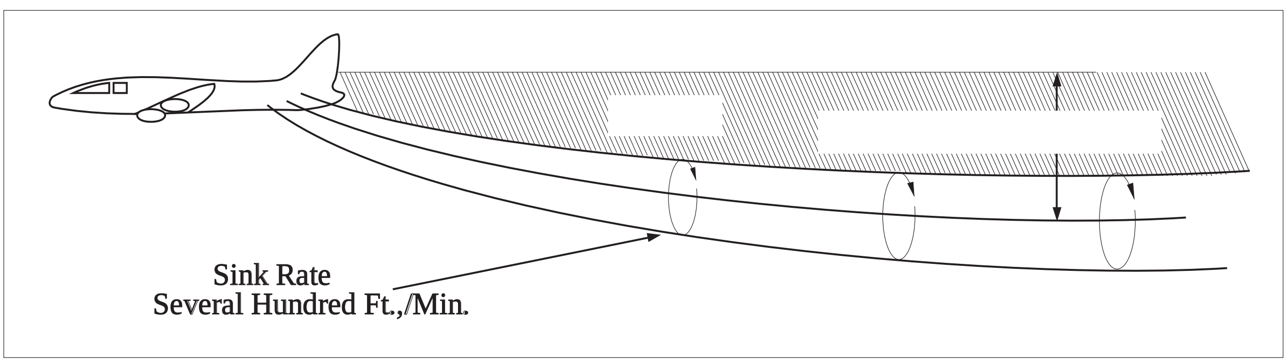
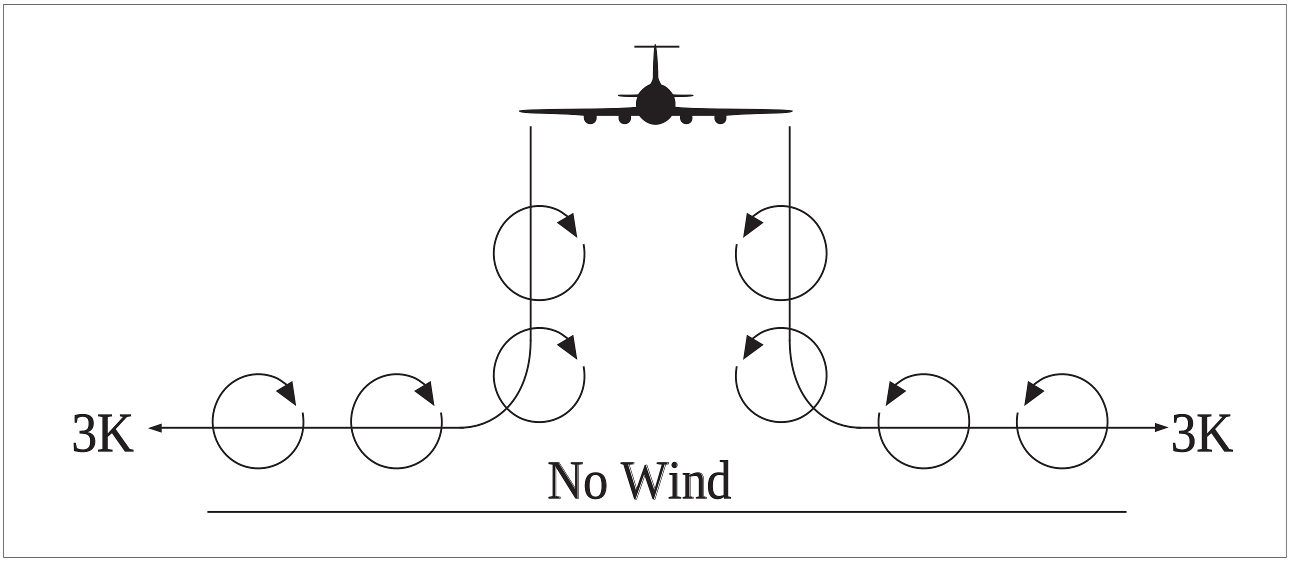


FIG GEN 3.5−21
Vortex Movement Near Ground − No Wind



28.4.1.4 When the vortices of larger aircraft sink close to the ground (within 100 to 200 feet), they tend to move laterally over the ground at a speed of 2 or 3 knots. (See FIG GEN 3.5−21.)

28.4.1.5 Pilots should be alert at all times for possible wake vortex encounters when conducting approach and landing operations. The pilot is ultimately responsible for maintaining an appropriate interval, and should consider all available information in positioning the aircraft in the terminal area, to avoid the wake turbulence created by a preceding aircraft. Test data show that vortices can rise with the air mass in which they are embedded. The effects of wind shear can cause vortex flow field "tilting." In addition, ambient thermal lifting and orographic effects (rising terrain or tree lines) can cause a vortex flow field to rise and possibly bounce.

FIG GEN 3.5−22
Vortex Movement Near Ground − with Cross Winds

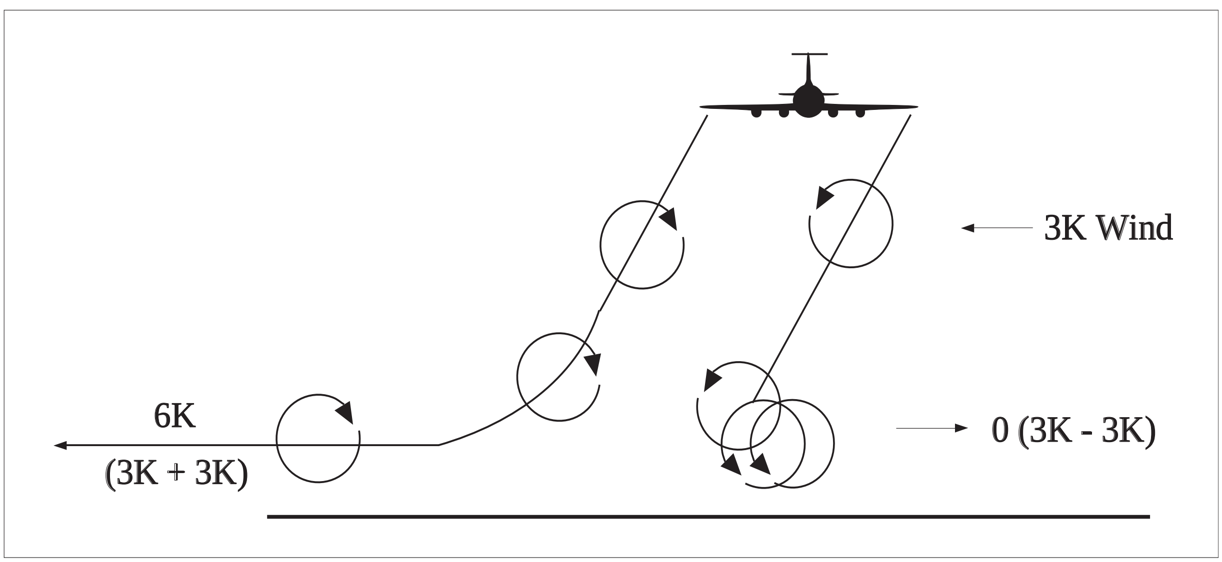
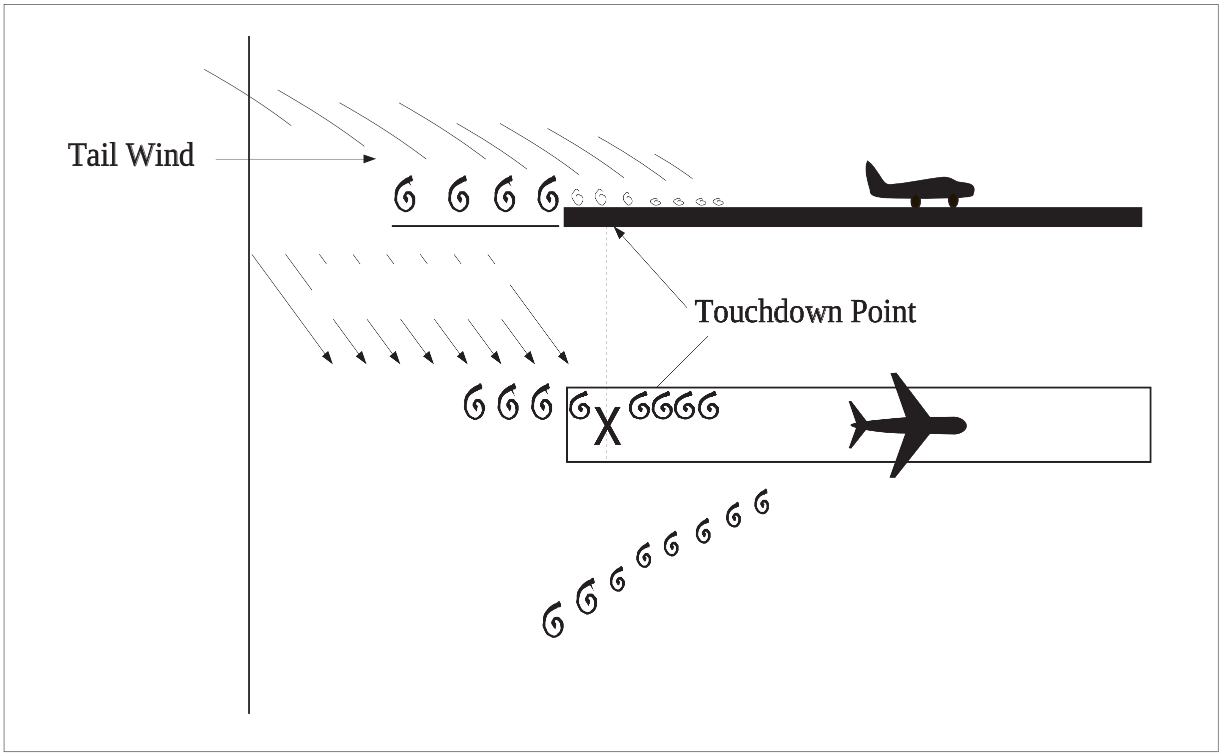


FIG GEN 3.5−23
Vortex Movement in Ground Effect − Tailwind



28.4.2 A crosswind will decrease the lateral movement of the upwind vortex and increase the movement of the downwind vortex. Thus, a light wind with a cross−runway component of 1 to 5 knots could result in the upwind vortex remaining in the touchdown zone for a period of time and hasten the drift of the downwind vortex toward another runway. (See FIG GEN 3.5−22.) Similarly, a tailwind condition can move the vortices of the preceding aircraft forward into the touchdown zone. THE LIGHT QUARTERING TAILWIND REQUIRES MAXIMUM CAUTION. Pilots should be alert to large aircraft upwind from their approach and takeoff flight paths. (See FIG GEN 3.5−23.)

28.5 Operations Problem Areas

28.5.1 A wake turbulence encounter can range from negligible to catastrophic. The impact of the encounter depends on the weight, wingspan, size of the generating aircraft, distance from the generating aircraft, and point of vortex encounter. The probability of induced roll increases when the encountering aircraft's heading is generally aligned with the flight path of the generating aircraft.

28.5.2 AVOID THE AREA BELOW AND BEHIND THE WAKE GENERATING AIRCRAFT, ESPECIALLY AT LOW ALTITUDE WHERE EVEN A MOMENTARY WAKE ENCOUNTER COULD BE CATASTROPHIC.

NOTE−
A common scenario for a wake encounter is in terminal airspace after accepting clearance for a visual approach behind landing traffic. Pilots must be cognizant of their position relative to the traffic and use all means of vertical guidance to ensure they do not fly below the flight path of the wake generating aircraft.

28.5.3 Pilots should be particularly alert in calm wind conditions and situations where the vortices could:

28.5.3.1 Remain in the touchdown area.

28.5.3.2 Drift from aircraft operating on a nearby runway.

28.5.3.3 Sink into the takeoff or landing path from a crossing runway.

28.5.3.4 Sink into the traffic pattern from other airport operations.

28.5.3.5 Sink into the flight path of VFR aircraft operating on the hemispheric altitude 500 feet below.

28.5.4 Pilots should attempt to visualize the vortex trail of aircraft whose projected flight path they may encounter. When possible, pilots of larger aircraft should adjust their flight paths to minimize vortex exposure to other aircraft.

28.6 Vortex Avoidance Procedures

28.6.1 Under certain conditions, airport traffic controllers apply procedures for separating IFR aircraft. If a pilot accepts a clearance to visually follow a preceding aircraft, the pilot accepts responsibility for separation and wake turbulence avoidance. The controllers will also provide to VFR aircraft, with whom they are in communication and which in the tower's opinion may be adversely affected by wake turbulence from a larger aircraft, the position, altitude and direction of flight of larger aircraft followed by the phrase "CAUTION − WAKE TURBULENCE." After issuing the caution for wake turbulence, the airport traffic controllers generally do not provide additional information to the following aircraft unless the airport traffic controllers know the following aircraft is overtaking the preceding aircraft. WHETHER OR NOT A WARNING OR INFORMATION HAS BEEN GIVEN, HOWEVER, THE PILOT IS EXPECTED TO ADJUST AIRCRAFT OPERATIONS AND FLIGHT PATH AS NECESSARY TO PRECLUDE SERIOUS WAKE ENCOUNTERS. When any doubt exists about maintaining safe separation distances between aircraft during approaches, pilots should ask the control tower for updates on separation distance and aircraft groundspeed.

28.6.2 The following vortex avoidance procedures are recommended for the various situations:

28.6.2.1 Landing Behind a Larger Aircraft − Same Runway. Stay at or above the larger aircraft's final approach flight path − note its touchdown point − land beyond it.

28.6.2.2 Landing Behind a Larger Aircraft − When a Parallel Runway is Closer Than 2,500 Feet. Consider possible drift to your runway. Stay at or above the larger aircraft's final approach flight path − note its touchdown point.

28.6.2.3 Landing Behind a Larger Aircraft − Crossing Runway. Cross above the larger aircraft's flight path.

28.6.2.4 Landing Behind a Departing Larger Aircraft − Same Runway. Note the larger aircraft's rotation point − land well prior to rotation point.

28.6.2.5 Landing Behind a Departing Larger Aircraft − Crossing Runway. Note the larger aircraft's rotation point − if past the intersection − continue the approach − land prior to the intersection. If larger aircraft rotates prior to the intersection, avoid flight below the larger aircraft's flight path. Abandon the approach unless a landing is ensured well before reaching the intersection.

28.6.2.6 Departing Behind a Larger Aircraft. Note the larger aircraft's rotation point − rotate prior to larger aircraft's rotation point − continue climb above the larger aircraft's climb path until turning clear of the larger aircraft's wake. Avoid subsequent headings which will cross below and behind a larger aircraft. Be alert for any critical takeoff situation which could lead to a vortex encounter.

28.6.2.7 Intersection Takeoffs − Same Runway. Be alert to adjacent larger aircraft operations, particularly upwind of your runway. If intersection takeoff clearance is received, avoid subsequent headings which will cross below a larger aircraft's path.

28.6.2.8 Departing or Landing After a Larger Aircraft Executing a Low Approach, Missed Approach, Or Touch−and−go Landing. Because vortices settle and move laterally near the ground, the vortex hazard may exist along the runway and in your flight path after a larger aircraft has executed a low approach, missed approach, or a touch−and−go landing, particular in light quartering wind conditions. You should ensure that an interval of at least 2 minutes has elapsed before your takeoff or landing.

28.6.2.9 En Route VFR (Thousand−foot Altitude Plus 500 Feet). Avoid flight below and behind a large aircraft's path. If a larger aircraft is observed above on the same track (meeting or overtaking) adjust your position laterally, preferably upwind.

28.7 Helicopters

28.7.1 In a slow hover−taxi or stationary hover near the surface, helicopter main rotor(s) generate downwash producing high velocity outwash vortices to a distance approximately three times the diameter of the rotor. When rotor downwash hits the surface, the resulting outwash vortices have behavioral characteristics similar to wing tip vortices produced by fixed−wing aircraft. However, the vortex circulation is outward, upward, around, and away from the main rotor(s) in all directions. Pilots of small aircraft should avoid operating within three rotor diameters of any helicopter in a slow hover−taxi or stationary hover. In forward flight, departing or landing helicopters produce a pair of strong, high−speed trailing vortices similar to wing tip vortices of larger fixed−wing aircraft. Pilots of small aircraft should use caution when operating behind or crossing behind landing and departing helicopters.

28.8 Pilot Responsibility

28.8.1 Research and testing have been conducted, in addition to ongoing wake initiatives, in an attempt to mitigate the effects of wake turbulence. Pilots must exercise vigilance in situations where they are responsible for avoiding wake turbulence.

28.8.2 Pilots are reminded that in operations conducted behind all aircraft, acceptance of instructions from ATC in the following situations is an acknowledgment that the pilot will ensure safe takeoff and landing intervals and accepts the responsibility of providing his/her own wake turbulence separation:

28.8.2.1 Traffic information.

28.8.2.2 Instructions to follow an aircraft.

28.8.2.3 The acceptance of a visual approach clearance.

28.8.3 For operations conducted behind **super** or **heavy** aircraft, ATC will specify the word “**super**” or “**heavy**” as appropriate, when this information is known. Pilots of **super** or **heavy** aircraft should always use the word “**super**” or “**heavy**” in radio communications.

28.8.4 Super, heavy and large jet aircraft operators should use the following procedures during an approach to landing. These procedures establish a dependable baseline from which pilots of in−trail, lighter aircraft may reasonably expect to make effective flight path adjustments to avoid serious wake vortex turbulence.

28.8.4.1 Pilots of aircraft that produce strong wake vortices should make every attempt to fly on the established glidepath, not above it; or, if glidepath guidance is not available, to fly as closely as possible to a “3−1” glidepath, not above it.

EXAMPLE−
Fly 3,000 feet at 10 miles from touchdown, 1,500 feet at 5 miles, 1,200 feet at 4 miles, and so on to touchdown.

28.8.4.2 Pilots of aircraft that produce strong wake vortices should fly as closely as possible to the approach course centerline or to the extended centerline of the runway of intended landing as appropriate to conditions.

28.8.5 Pilots operating lighter aircraft on visual approaches in−trail to aircraft producing strong wake vortices should use the following procedures to assist in avoiding wake turbulence. These procedures apply only to those aircraft that are on visual approaches.

28.8.5.1 Pilots of lighter aircraft should fly on or above the glidepath. Glidepath reference may be furnished by an ILS, by a visual approach slope system, by other ground−based approach slope guidance systems, or by other means. In the absence of visible glidepath guidance, pilots may very nearly duplicate a 3−degree glideslope by adhering to the “3 to 1” glidepath principle.

EXAMPLE−
Fly 3,000 feet at 10 miles from touchdown, 1,500 feet at 5 miles, 1,200 feet at 4 miles, and so on to touchdown.

28.8.5.2 If the pilot of the lighter following aircraft has visual contact with the preceding heavier aircraft and also with the runway, the pilot may further adjust for possible wake vortex turbulence by the following practices:

a) Pick a point of landing no less than 1,000 feet from the arrival end of the runway.

b) Establish a line−of−sight to that landing point that is above and in front of the heavier preceding aircraft.

c) When possible, note the point of landing of the heavier preceding aircraft and adjust point of intended landing as necessary.

EXAMPLE−
A puff of smoke may appear at the 1,000−foot markings of the runway, showing that touchdown was at that point; therefore, adjust point of intended landing to the 1,500−foot markings.

d) Maintain the line−of−sight to the point of intended landing above and ahead of the heavier preceding aircraft; maintain it to touchdown.

e) Land beyond the point of landing of the preceding heavier aircraft. Ensure you have adequate runway remaining, if conducting a touch−and−go landing, or adequate stopping distance available for a full stop landing.

28.8.6 During visual approaches pilots may ask ATC for updates on separation and groundspeed with respect to heavier preceding aircraft, especially when there is any question of safe separation from wake turbulence.

28.8.7 Pilots should notify ATC when a wake event is encountered. Be as descriptive as possible (i.e., bank angle, altitude deviations, intensity and duration of event, etc.) when reporting the event. ATC will record the event through their reporting system. You are also encouraged to use the Aviation Safety Reporting System (ASRS) to report wake events.

28.9 Air Traffic Wake Turbulence Separations

28.9.1 Because of the possible effects of wake turbulence, controllers are required to apply no less than minimum required separation to all aircraft operating behind a Super or Heavy, and to Small aircraft operating behind a B757, when aircraft are IFR; VFR and receiving Class B, Class C, or TRSA airspace services; or VFR and being radar sequenced.

28.9.1.1 Separation is applied to aircraft operating directly behind a super or heavy at the same altitude or less than 1,000 feet below, and to small aircraft operating directly behind a B757 at the same altitude or less than 500 feet below:

a) **Heavy** behind **super −** 6 miles.

b) **Large** behind **super −** 7 miles.

c) **Small** behind **super −** 8 miles.

d) **Heavy** behind **heavy −** 4 miles.

e) **Small/large** behind **heavy −** 5 miles.

f) **Small** behind **B757 −** 4 miles.

28.9.1.2 Also, separation, measured at the time the preceding aircraft is over the landing threshold, is provided to small aircraft:

a) **Small** landing behind **heavy −** 6 miles.

b) **Small** landing behind **large, non−B757 −** 4 miles.

28.9.2 Additionally, appropriate time or distance intervals are provided to departing aircraft when the departure will be from the same threshold, a parallel runway separated by less than 2,500 feet with less than 500 feet threshold stagger, or on a crossing runway and projected flight paths will cross:

28.9.2.1 Three minutes or the appropriate radar separation when takeoff will be behind a super aircraft;

28.9.2.2 Two minutes or the appropriate radar separation when takeoff will be behind a heavy aircraft.

28.9.2.3 Two minutes or the appropriate radar separation when a small aircraft will takeoff behind a B757.

NOTE−
Controllers may not reduce or waive these intervals.

28.9.3 A 3−minute interval will be provided for a **small** aircraft taking off:

28.9.3.1 From an intersection on the same runway (same or opposite direction) behind a departing **large** aircraft (except B757), or

28.9.3.2 In the opposite direction on the same runway behind a large aircraft (except B757) takeoff or low/missed approach.

NOTE−
This 3−minute interval may be waived upon specific pilot request.

28.9.4 A 3−minute interval will be provided when a small aircraft will takeoff:

28.9.4.1 From an intersection on the same runway (same or opposite direction) behind a departing B757, or

28.9.4.2 In the opposite direction on the same runway behind a B757 takeoff or low/missed approach.

NOTE−
This 3−minute interval may not be waived.

28.9.5 A 4−minute interval will be provided for all aircraft taking off behind a super aircraft, and a 3−minute interval will be provided for all aircraft taking off behind a heavy aircraft when the operations are as described in subparagraphs 28.9.4.1 and 28.9.4.2 above, and are conducted on either the same runway or parallel runways separated by less than 2,500 feet. Controllers may not reduce or waive this interval.

28.9.6 Pilots may request additional separation (i.e., 2 minutes instead of 4 or 5 miles) for wake turbulence avoidance. This request should be made as soon as practical on ground control and at least before taxiing onto the runway.

NOTE−
Federal Aviation Administration Regulations state: "The pilot in command of an aircraft is directly responsible for and is the final authority as to the operation of that aircraft."

28.9.7 Controllers may anticipate separation and need not withhold a takeoff clearance for an aircraft departing behind a **large, heavy,** or **super** aircraft if there is reasonable assurance the required separation will exist when the departing aircraft starts takeoff roll.

NOTE−
With the advent of new wake turbulence separation methodologies known as Wake Turbulence Recategorization, some of the requirements listed above may vary at facilities authorized to operate in accordance with Wake Turbulence Recategorization directives.

REFERENCE−
FAA Order JO 7110.659 Wake Turbulence Recategorization
FAA Order JO 7110.123 Wake Turbulence Recategorization − Phase II
FAA Order JO 7110.126, Consolidated Wake Turbulence

28.10 Development and New Capabilities

28.10.1 The suite of available wake turbulence tools, rules, and procedures is expanding, with the development of new methodologies. Based on extensive analysis of wake vortex behavior, new procedures and separation standards are being developed and implemented in the US and throughout the world. Wake research involves the wake generating aircraft as well as the wake toleration of the trailing aircraft.

28.10.2 The FAA and ICAO are leading initiatives, in terminal environments, to implement next−generation wake turbulence procedures and separation standards. The FAA has undertaken an effort to recategorize the existing fleet of aircraft and modify associated wake turbulence separation minima. This initiative is termed Wake Turbulence Recategorization (RECAT), and changes the current weight−based classes (Super, Heavy, B757, Large, Small+, and Small) to a wake−based categorical system that utilizes the aircraft matrices of weight, wingspan, and approach speed. RECAT is currently in use at a limited number of airports in the National Airspace System.

29. International Civil Aviation Organization (ICAO) Weather Formats

29.1 The U.S. uses the ICAO world standard for aviation weather reporting and forecasting. The World Meteorological Organization's (WMO) publication No. 782 "Aerodrome Reports and Forecasts" contains the base METAR and TAF code as adopted by the WMO member countries.

29.2 Although the METAR code is adopted worldwide, each country is allowed to make modifications or exceptions to the code for use in their particular country, e.g., the U.S. will continue to use statute miles for visibility, feet for RVR values, knots for wind speed, and inches of mercury for altimetry. However, temperature and dew point will be reported in degrees Celsius. The U.S reports prevailing visibility rather than lowest sector visibility. The elements in the body of a METAR report are separated with a space. The only exceptions are RVR, temperature, and dew point which are separated with a solidus (/). When an element does not occur, or cannot be observed, the preceding space and that element are omitted from that particular report. A METAR report contains the following sequence of elements in the following order:

29.2.1 Type of report.

29.2.2 ICAO station identifier.

29.2.3 Date and time of report.

29.2.4 Modifier (as required).

29.2.5 Wind.

29.2.6 Visibility.

29.2.7 Runway Visual Range (RVR).

29.2.8 Weather phenomena.

29.2.9 Sky conditions.

29.2.10 Temperature/Dew point group.

29.2.11 Altimeter.

29.2.12 Remarks (RMK).

29.3 The following paragraphs describe the elements in a METAR report.

29.3.1 **Type of Report.** There are two types of reports:

29.3.1.1 The METAR, an aviation routine weather report.

29.3.1.2 The SPECI, a nonroutine (special) aviation weather report.

The type of report (METAR or SPECI) will always appear as the lead element of the report.

29.3.2 **ICAO Station Identifier.** The METAR code uses ICAO 4−letter station identifiers. In the contiguous 48 states, the 3−letter domestic station identifier is prefixed with a "K"; i.e., the domestic identifier for Seattle is SEA while the ICAO identifier is KSEA. For Alaska, all station identifiers start with "PA"; for Hawaii, all station identifiers start with "PH." The identifier for the eastern Caribbean is "T" followed by the individual country's letter; i.e., Puerto Rico is "TJ." For a complete worldwide listing see ICAO Document 7910, "Location Indicators."

29.3.3 **Date and Time of Report.** The date and time the observation is taken are transmitted as a six−digit date/time group appended with Z to denote Coordinated Universal Time (UTC). The first two digits are the date followed with two digits for hour and two digits for minutes.

EXAMPLE−
172345Z (the 17th day of the month at 2345Z)

29.3.4 **Modifier (As Required).** "AUTO" identifies a METAR/SPECI report as an automated weather report with no human intervention. If "AUTO" is shown in the body of the report, the type of sensor equipment used at the station will be encoded in the remarks section of the report. The absence of “AUTO” indicates that a report was made manually by an observer or that an automated report had human augmentation/backup. The modifier “COR” indicates a corrected report that is sent out to replace an earlier report with an error.

NOTE−
There are two types of automated stations, AO1 for automated weather reporting stations without a precipitation discriminator, and AO2 for automated stations with a precipitation discriminator. (A precipitation discriminator can determine the difference between liquid and frozen/freezing precipitation). This information appears in the remarks section of an automated report.

29.3.5 Wind. The wind is reported as a five digit group (six digits if speed is over 99 knots). The first three digits are the direction from which the wind is blowing, in tens of degrees referenced to true north, or “VRB” if the direction is variable. The next two digits is the wind speed in knots, or if over 99 knots, the next three digits. If the wind is gusty, it is reported as a “G” after the speed followed by the highest gust reported. The abbreviation “KT” is appended to denote the use of knots for wind speed.

EXAMPLE−
13008KT − wind from 130 degrees at 8 knots

08032G45KT − wind from 080 degrees at 32 knots with gusts to 45 knots

VRB04KT − wind variable in direction at 4 knots

00000KT − wind calm

210103G130KT − wind from 210 degrees at 103 knots with gusts to 130 knots

If the wind direction is variable by 60 degrees or more and the speed is greater than 6 knots, a variable group consisting of the extremes of the wind direction separated by a “V” will follow the prevailing wind group.

32012G22KT 280V350

29.3.5.1 Peak Wind. Whenever the peak wind exceeds 25 knots, “PK WND” will be included in Remarks; e.g., PK WND 280045/1955 “Peak wind two eight zero at four five occurred at one niner five five.” If the hour can be inferred from the report time, only the minutes will be appended; e.g., PK WND 34050/38 “Peak wind three four zero at five zero occurred at three eight past the hour.”

29.3.5.2 Wind Shift. Whenever a wind shift occurs, “WSHFT” will be included in remarks followed by the time the wind shift began; e.g., WSHFT 30 FROPA “Wind shift at three zero due to frontal passage.”

29.3.6 Visibility. Prevailing visibility is reported in statute miles with “SM” appended to it.

EXAMPLE−
7SM . . . . seven statute miles
15SM . . . . fifteen statute miles
$^{1}/_{2}$SM . . . . one−half statute mile

29.3.6.1 Tower/Surface Visibility. If either tower or surface visibility is below 4 statute miles, the lesser of the 2 will be reported in the body of the report; the greater will be reported in remarks.

29.3.6.2 Automated Visibility. ASOS/AWOS visibility stations will show visibility 10 or greater than 10 miles as “10SM.” AWOS visibility stations will show visibility less than $^{1}/_{4}$ statute mile as “M$^{1}/_{4}$SM” and visibility 10 or greater than 10 miles as “10SM.”

NOTE−
Automated sites that are augmented by human observer to meet service level requirements can report 0, 1/16 SM, and 1/8 SM visibility increments.

29.3.6.3 Variable Visibility. Variable visibility is shown in remarks when rapid increase or decrease by $^{1}/_{2}$ statute mile or more and the average prevailing visibility is less than 3 statute miles; e.g., VIS 1V2 means “visibility variable between 1 and 2 statute miles.”

29.3.6.4 Sector Visibility. Sector visibility is shown in remarks when it differs from the prevailing visibility, and either the prevailing or sector visibility is less than 3 statute miles.

EXAMPLE−
VIS N2 . . . . visibility north two

29.3.7 Runway Visual Range (when reported). "R" identifies the group followed by the runway heading (and parallel runway designator, if needed) "/" and the visual range in feet (meters in other countries) followed with "FT." ("Feet" is not spoken.)

29.3.7.1 Variability Values. When RVR varies by more than on reportable value, the lowest and highest values are shown with "V" between them.

29.3.7.2 Maximum/Minimum Range. "P" indicates an observed RVR is above the maximum value for this system (spoken as "more than"). "M" indicates an observed RVR is below the minimum value which can be determined by the system (spoken as "less than").

EXAMPLE−
R32L/1200FT − Runway Three Two Left R−V−R one thousand two hundred

R27R/M1000V4000FT − Runway Two Seven Right R−V−R variable from less than one thousand to four thousand.

29.3.8 Weather Phenomena. In METAR, weather is reported in the format:

Intensity / Proximity / Descriptor / Precipitation / Obstruction to Visibility / Other

NOTE−
The "/" above and in the following descriptions (except as the separator between the temperature and dew point) are for separation purposes in this publication and do not appear in the actual METARs.

29.3.8.1 Intensity applies only to the first type of precipitation reported. A "−" denotes light, no symbol denotes moderate, and a "+" denotes heavy.

29.3.8.2 Proximity applies to and is reported only for weather occurring in the vicinity of the airport (between 5 and 10 miles of the point(s) of observation). It is denoted by the letters "VC." (Intensity and "VC" will not appear together in the weather group.)

29.3.8.3 Descriptor. These eight descriptors apply to the precipitation or obstructions to visibility:

TS	thunderstorm
DR	low drifting
SH	showers
MI	shallow
FZ	freezing
BC	patches
BL	blowing
PR	partial

NOTE−
Although "TS" and "SH" are used with precipitation and may be preceded with an intensity symbol, the intensity still applies to the precipitation not the descriptor.

29.3.8.4 Precipitation. There are nine types of precipitation in the METAR code:

RA	rain
DZ	drizzle
SN	snow
GR	hail ($^1/_4$″ or greater)
GS	small hail/snow pellets
PL	ice pellets
SG	snow grains
IC	ice crystals
UP	unknown precipitation (automated stations only)

29.3.8.5 Obstructions to Visibility. Obscurations are any phenomena in the atmosphere, other than precipitation, that reduce horizontal visibility. There are eight types of obscuration phenomena in the METAR code:

FG	fog (visibility less than $^5/_8$ mile)
HZ	haze
FU	smoke
PY	spray
BR	mist (visibility $^5/_8$−6 miles)
SA	sand
DU	dust
VA	volcanic ash

NOTE−
Fog (FG) is observed or forecast only when the visibility is less than $^5/_8$ mile. Otherwise, mist (BR) is observed or forecast.

29.3.8.6 Other. There are five categories of other weather phenomena which are reported when they occur:

SQ	squall
SS	sandstorm
DS	duststorm
PO	dust/sand whirls
FC +FC	funnel cloud tornado/waterspout

EXAMPLES−

TSRA	thunderstorm with moderate rain
+SN	heavy snow
−RA FG	light rain and fog
BRHZ	mist and haze (visibility $^5/_8$ mile or greater)
FZDZ	freezing drizzle
VCSH	rain shower in the vicinity
+SHRASNPL	heavy rain showers, snow, ice pellets (Intensity indicator refers to the predominant rain.)

29.3.9 Sky Condition. In METAR, sky condition is reported in the format:

Amount / Height / (Type) or Indefinite Ceiling / Height

29.3.9.1 Amount. The amount of sky cover is reported in eighths of sky cover, using contractions:

SKC	clear (no clouds)
FEW	>$^0/_8$ to $^2/_8$ cloud cover
SCT	scattered ($^3/_8$ to $^4/_8$ cloud cover)
BKN	broken ($^5/_8$ to $^7/_8$ cloud cover)
OVC	overcast ($^8/_8$ cloud cover)
CB	cumulonimbus when present
TCU	towering cumulus when present

NOTE−

1. *"SKC" will be reported at manual stations. "CLR" will be used at automated stations when no clouds below 12,000 feet are reported.*

2. A *ceiling layer is not designated in the METAR code. For aviation purposes, the ceiling is the lowest broken or overcast layer, or vertical visibility into obscuration. Also, there is no provision for reporting thin layers in the METAR code. When clouds are thin, that layer must be reported as if it were opaque.*

29.3.9.2 Height. Cloud bases are reported with three digits in hundreds of feet above ground level (AGL). (Clouds above 12,000 feet cannot be reported by an automated station).

29.3.9.3 Type. If towering cumulus clouds (TCU) or cumulonimbus clouds (CB) are present, they are reported after the height which represents their base.

EXAMPLE−

SCT025TCU BKN080 BKN250 − "two thousand five hundred scattered towering cumulus, ceiling eight thousand broken, two five thousand broken."

SCT008 OVC012CB − "eight hundred scattered ceiling one thousand two hundred overcast cumulonimbus clouds."

29.3.9.4 Vertical Visibility (indefinite ceiling height). The height into an indefinite ceiling is preceded by "VV" and followed by three digits indicating the vertical visibility in hundreds of feet. This layer indicates total obscuration.

EXAMPLE−

$^1/_8$ SM FG VV006 − visibility one eighth, fog, indefinite ceiling six hundred.

29.3.9.5 Obscurations are reported when the sky is partially obscured by a ground−based phenomena by indicating the amount of obscuration as FEW, SCT, BKN followed by three zeros (000). In remarks, the obscuring phenomenon precedes the amount of obscuration and three zeros.

EXAMPLE−

BKN000 (IN BODY) − "sky partially obscured."

FU BKN000 (IN REMARKS) − "smoke obscuring five− to seven−eighths of the sky."

29.3.9.6 When sky conditions include a layer aloft other than clouds, such as smoke or haze, the type of phenomena, sky cover, and height are shown in remarks.

EXAMPLE−

BKN020 (IN BODY) − "ceiling two thousand broken."
RMK FU BKN020 − "broken layer of smoke aloft, based at two thousand."

29.3.9.7 Variable Ceiling. When a ceiling is below three thousand and is variable, the remark "CIG" will be shown followed with the lowest and highest ceiling heights separated by a "V."

EXAMPLE−

CIG 005V010 − "ceiling variable between five hundred and one thousand."

29.3.9.8 Second Site Sensor. When an automated station uses meteorological discontinuity sensors, remarks will be shown to identify site specific sky conditions which differ and are lower than conditions reported in the body.

EXAMPLE−
CIG 020 RY11 − "ceiling two thousand at Runway One One."

29.3.9.9 Variable Cloud Layer. When a layer is varying in sky cover, remarks will show the variability range. If there is more than one cloud layer, the variable layer will be identified by including the layer height.

EXAMPLE−
SCT V BKN − "scattered layer variable to broken."

BKN025 V OVC − "broken layer at two thousand five hundred variable to overcast."

29.3.9.10 Significant Clouds. When significant clouds are observed, they are shown in remarks, along with the specified information as shown below:

a) Cumulonimbus (CB), or Cumulonimbus Mammatus (CBMAM), distance (if known), direction from the station, and direction of movement, if known. If the clouds are beyond 10 miles from the airport, DSNT will indicate distance.

EXAMPLE−
CB W MOV E − "cumulonimbus west moving east."

CBMAM DSNT S − "cumulonimbus mammatus distant south."

b) Towering Cumulus (TCU), location, (if known), or direction from the station.

EXAMPLE−
TCU OHD − "towering cumulus overhead."

TCU W − "towering cumulus west."

c) Altocumulus Castellanus (ACC), Stratocumulus Standing Lenticular (SCSL), Altocumulus Standing Lenticular (ACSL), Cirrocumulus Standing Lenticular (CCSL) or rotor clouds, describing the clouds (if needed), and the direction from the station.

ACC W	"altocumulus castellanus west"
ACSL SW−S	"standing lenticular altocumulus southwest through south"
APRNT ROTOR CLD S	"apparent rotor cloud south"
CCSL OVR MT E	"standing lenticular cirrocumulus over the mountains east"

29.3.10 Temperature/Dew Point. Temperature and dew point are reported in two, two−digit groups in degrees Celsius, separated by a solidus (/). Temperatures below zero are prefixed with an "M." If the temperature is available but the dew point is missing, the temperature is shown followed by a solidus. If the temperature is missing, the group is omitted from the report.

EXAMPLE−
15/08 . . . . "temperature one five, dew point 8"
00/M02 . . . . "temperature zero, dew point minus 2"
M05/ . . . . "temperature minus five, dew point missing"

29.3.11 Altimeter. Altimeter settings are reported in a four−digit format in inches of mercury prefixed with an "A" to denote the units of pressure.

EXAMPLE−
A2995 . . . . "altimeter two niner niner five"

29.3.12 Remarks. Remarks will be included in all observations, when appropriate. The contraction "RMK" denotes the start of the remarks section of a METAR report.

Except for precipitation, phenomena located within 5 statute miles of the point of observation will be reported as at the station. Phenomena between 5 and 10 statute miles will be reported in the vicinity, "VC." Precipitation not occurring at the point of observation but within 10 statute miles is also reported as in the vicinity, "VC." Phenomena beyond 10 statute miles will be shown as distant, "DSNT." Distances are in statute miles except for automated lightning remarks which are in nautical miles. Movement of clouds or weather will be indicated by the direction toward which the phenomena is moving.

There are two categories of remarks: Automated, Manual, and Plain Language; and Additive and Automated Maintenance Data.

29.3.12.1 Automated, Manual, and Plain Language Remarks. This group of remarks may be generated from either manual or automated weather reporting stations and generally elaborates on parameters reported in the body of the report. Plain language remarks are only provided by manual stations.

1) Volcanic Eruptions
2) Tornado, Funnel Cloud, Waterspout
3) Type of Automated Station (AO1 or AO2)
4) Peak Wind
5) Wind Shift
6) Tower or Surface Visibility
7) Variable Prevailing Visibility
8) Sector Visibility
9) Visibility at Second Location
10) Dispatch Visual Range
11) Lightning. When lightning is observed at a manual location, the frequency and location is reported. When cloud−to−ground lightning is detected by an automated lightning detection system, such as ALDARS: [a] Within 5 nautical miles (NM) of the Airport Reference Point (ARP), it will be reported as “TS” in the body of the report with no remark; [b] Between 5 and 10 NM of the ARP, it will be reported as “VCTS” in the body of the report with no remark; [c] Beyond 10 but less than 30 NM of the ARP, it will be reported in remarks as “DSNT” followed by the direction from the ARP. ***EXAMPLE−*** *LTG DSNT W or LTG DSNT ALQDS*

12) Beginning/Ending Time of Precipitation
13) Beginning/Ending Time of Thunderstorms
14) Thunderstorm Location; Movement Direction
15) Hailstone Size
16) Virga
17) Variable Ceiling
18) Obscurations
19) Variable Sky Condition
20) Significant Cloud Types
21) Ceiling Height at Second Location
22) Pressure Rising or Falling Rapidly
23) Sea−Level Pressure
24) Aircraft Mishap (not transmitted)
25) No SPECI Reports Taken
26) Snow Increasing Rapidly
27) Other Significant Information

29.3.12.2 Additive and Automated Maintenance Data Remarks.

1) Hourly Precipitation	11) 24−Hour Maximum/Minimum Temperatures
2) Precipitation Amount	12) Pressure Tendency
3) 24−Hour Precipitation	13) Sensor Status:
4) Snow Depth on Ground	WINO
5) Water Equivalent of Snow on Ground	ZRANO
6) Cloud Types	SNO
7) Duration of Sunshine	VRNO
8) Hourly Temperature and Dew Point (Tenths)	PNO
9) 6−Hour Maximum Temperature	VISNO
10) 6−Hour Minimum Temperature	

EXAMPLE−
METAR report and explanation:

METAR KSFO 041453Z AUTO VRB02KT 3SM BR CLR 15/12 A3012 RMK AO2

METAR	Type of report (aviation routine weather report)
KSFO	Station identifier (San Francisco, CA)
041453Z	Date/Time (4th day of month; time 1453 UTC)
AUTO	Fully automated; no human intervention
VRB02KT	Wind (wind variable at two)
3SM	Visibility (visibility three statute miles)
BR	Visibility obscured by mist
CLR	No clouds below one two thousand
15/12	Temperature one five; dew point one two
A3012	Altimeter three zero one two
RMK	Remarks
AO2	This automated station has a weather discriminator (for precipitation).

EXAMPLE−
METAR report and explanation:

METAR KBNA 281250Z 33018KT 290V360 1/2SM R31/2700FT SN BLSN FG VV008 00/M03 A2991 RMK RAE42SNB42

METAR	Aviation routine weather report
KBNA	Nashville, TN
281250Z	28th day of month; time 1250 UTC
(no modifier)	This is a manually generated report, due to the absence of “AUTO” and “AO1 or AO2” in remarks.
33018KT	Wind three three zero at one eight
290V360	Wind variable between two nine zero and three six zero
$^{1}/_{2}$SM	Visibility one half statute mile
R31/2700FT	Runway three one RVR two thousand seven hundred feet
SN	Moderate snow
BLSN FG	Visibility obscured by blowing snow and fog
VV008	Indefinite ceiling eight hundred
00/M03	Temperature zero; dew point minus three
A2991	Altimeter two niner niner one
RMK	Remarks
RAE36	Rain ended at three six
SNB42	Snow began at four two

EXAMPLE−
SPECI report and explanation:

SPECI KCVG 152224Z 28024G36KT 3/4SM +TSRA BKN008 OVC020CB 28/23 A3000 RMK TSRAB24 TS W MOV E.

SPECI	Nonroutine aviation special weather report
KCVG	Cincinnati, OH
152224Z	15th day of month; time 2224 UTC
(no modifier)	This is a manually generated report due to the absence of “AUTO” and “AO1 or AO2” in remarks.
28024G36KT	Wind two eight zero at two four gusts three six
3/4SM	Visibility three fourths statute mile
+TSRA	Thunderstorms, heavy rain
BKN008	Ceiling eight hundred broken
OVC020CB	Two thousand overcast cumulonimbus clouds
28/23	Temperature two eight; dew point two three
A3000	Altimeter three zero zero zero
RMK	Remarks
TSRAB24	Thunderstorm and rain began at two four
TS W MOV E	Thunderstorm west moving east

29.4 Aerodrome Forecast (TAF). A concise statement of the expected meteorological conditions at an airport during a specified period. At most locations, TAFs have a 24 hour forecast period. However, TAFs for some locations have a 30 hour forecast period. These forecast periods may be shorter in the case of an amended TAF. TAFs use the same codes as METAR weather reports. They are scheduled four times daily for 24−hour periods beginning at 0000Z, 0600Z, 1200Z, and 1800Z.

Forecast times in the TAF are depicted in two ways. The first is a 6−digit number to indicate a specific point in time, consisting of a two−digit date, two−digit hour, and two−digit minute (such as issuance time or FM). The second is a pair of four−digit numbers separated by a “/” to indicate a beginning and end for a period of time. In this case, each four−digit pair consists of a two−digit date and a two−digit hour.

TAFs are issued in the following format:

TYPE OF REPORT/ICAO STATION IDENTIFIER/DATE AND TIME OF ORIGIN/VALID PERIOD DATE AND TIME/FORECAST METEOROLOGICAL CONDITIONS

NOTE−
The “/” above and in the following descriptions are for separation purposes in this publication and do not appear in the actual TAFs.

TAF KORD 051130Z 0512/0618 14008KT 5SM BR BKN030
TEMPO 0513/0516 1 1/2SM BR
FM051600 16010KT P6SM SKC
FM052300 20013G20KT 4SM SHRA OVC020
PROB40 0600/0606 2SM TSRA OVC008CB
BECMG 0606/0608 21015KT P6SM NSW SCT040

TAF format observed in the above example:

TAF = type of report

KORD = ICAO station identifier

051130Z = date and time of origin (issuance time)

0512/0618 = valid period date and times

14008KT 5SM BR BKN030 = forecast meteorological conditions

29.4.1 Explanation of TAF elements

29.4.1.1 Type of Report. There are two types of TAF issuances, a routine forecast issuance (TAF) and an amended forecast (TAF AMD). An amended TAF is issued when the current TAF no longer adequately describes the on−going weather or the forecaster feels the TAF is not representative of the current or expected weather. Corrected (COR) or delayed (RTD) TAFs are identified only in the communications header which precedes the actual forecasts.

29.4.1.2 ICAO Station Identifier. The TAF code uses ICAO 4−letter location identifiers as described in the METAR section.

29.4.1.3 Date and Time of Origin. This element is the date and time the forecast is actually prepared. The format is a two−digit date and four−digit time followed, without a space, by the letter "Z."

29.4.1.4 Valid Period Date and Time. he UTC valid period of the forecast consists of two four−digit sets, separated by a "/". The first four−digit set is a two−digit date followed by the two−digit beginning hour, and the second four−digit set is a two−digit date followed by the two−digit ending hour. Although most airports have a 24−hour TAF, a select number of airports have a 30−hour TAF. In the case of an amended forecast, or a forecast which is corrected or delayed, the valid period may be for less than 24 hours. Where an airport or terminal operates on a part−time basis (less than 24 hours/day), the TAFs issued for those locations will have the abbreviated statement "AMD NOT SKED" added to the end of the forecasts. The time observations are scheduled to end and/or resume will be indicated by expanding the AMD NOT SKED statement. Expanded statements will include:

a) Observation ending time (AFT DDHHmm; for example, AFT 120200)

b) Scheduled observations resumption time (TIL DDHHmm; for example, TIL 171200Z) or

c) Period of observation unavailability (DDHH/DDHH); for example, 2502/2512).

29.4.1.5 Forecast Meteorological Conditions. This is the body of the TAF. The basic format is:

Wind / Visibility / Weather / Sky Condition / Optional Data (Wind Shear)

The wind, visibility, and sky condition elements are always included in the initial time group of the forecast. Weather is included only if significant to aviation. If a significant, lasting change in any of the elements is expected during the valid period, a new time period with the changes is included. It should be noted that with the exception of an "FM" group, the new time period will include only those elements which are expected to change; i.e., if a lowering of the visibility is expected but the wind is expected to remain the same, the new time period reflecting the lower visibility would not include a forecast wind. The forecast wind would remain the same as in the previous time period.

Any temporary conditions expected during a specific time period are included with that time period. The following describes the elements in the above format.

a) Wind. This five (or six) digit group includes the expected wind direction (first 3 digits) and speed (last 2 digits or 3 digits if 100 knots or greater). The contraction "KT" follows to denote the units of wind speed. Wind gusts are noted by the letter "G" appended to the wind speed followed by the highest expected gust.

NOTE−
A variable wind direction is noted by "VRB" where the three digit direction usually appears. A calm wind (3 knots or less) is forecast as "00000KT."

EXAMPLE−
18010KT − wind one eight zero at one zero (wind is blowing from 180 at 10 knots).

35012G20KT − wind three five zero at one two gust two zero

b) Visibility. The expected prevailing visibility up to and including 6 miles is forecast in statute miles, including fractions of miles, followed by "SM" to note the units of measure. Expected visibilities greater than 6 miles are forecast as P6SM (Plus six statute miles).

EXAMPLE−
1/2SM . . . . visibility one−half
4SM . . . . visibility four
P6SM . . . . visibility more than six

c) Weather Phenomena. The expected weather phenomena is coded in TAF reports using the same format, qualifiers, and phenomena contractions as METAR reports (except UP).

Obscurations to vision will be forecast whenever the prevailing visibility is forecast to be 6 statute miles or less.

If no significant weather is expected to occur during a specific time period in the forecast, the weather group is omitted for that time period. If, after a time period in which significant weather has been forecast, a change to a forecast of no significant weather occurs, the contraction NSW (no significant weather) will appear as the weather group in the new time period. (NSW is included only in temporary (TEMPO) groups.)

NOTE−
It is very important that pilots understand that NSW only refers to weather phenomena, i.e., rain, snow, drizzle, etc. Omitted conditions, such as sky conditions, visibility, winds, etc., are carried over from the previous time group.

d) Sky Condition. TAF sky condition forecasts use the METAR format described in the METAR section. Cumulonimbus clouds (CB) are the only cloud type forecast in TAFs. When clear skies are forecast, the contraction "SKC" will always be used. The contraction "CLR" is never used in the aerodrome forecast (TAF). When the sky is obscured due to a surface−based phenomenon, vertical visibility (VV) into the obscuration is forecast. The format for vertical visibility is "VV" followed by a three−digit height in hundreds of feet.

NOTE−
As in METAR, ceiling layers are not designated in the TAF code. For aviation purposes, the ceiling is the lowest broken or overcast layer or vertical visibility into a complete obscuration.

SKC	"sky clear"
SCT005 BKN025CB	"five hundred scattered, ceiling two thousand five hundred broken cumulonimbus clouds"
VV008	"indefinite ceiling eight hundred"

e) Optional Data (Wind Shear). Wind Shear is the forecast of non−convective, low−level winds (up to 2,000 feet). The forecast includes the letters "WS" followed by the height of the wind shear, the wind direction and wind speed at the indicated height and the ending letters "KT" (knots). Height is given in hundreds of feet (AGL) up to and including 2,000 feet. Wind shear is encoded with the contraction "WS" followed by a three−digit height, slant character "/" and winds at the height indicated in the same format as surface winds. The wind shear element is omitted if not expected to occur.

WS010/18040KT	"low level wind shear at one thousand, wind one eight zero at four zero"

29.5 Probability Forecast. The probability or chance of thunderstorms or other precipitation events occurring, along with associated weather conditions (wind, visibility, and sky conditions). The PROB30 group is used when the occurrence of thunderstorms or precipitation is 30−39% and the PROB40 group is used when the occurrence of thunderstorms or precipitation is 40−49%. This is followed by two four−digit groups separated by a "/", giving the beginning date and hour, and the ending date and hour of the time period during which the thunderstorms or precipitation are expected.

NOTE−
NWS does not use PROB 40 in the TAF. However U.S. Military generated TAFS may include PROB40. PROB30 will not be shown during the first nine hours of a NWS forecast.

EXAMPLE−

PROB40 2221/2302 $^1/_2$SM +TSRA	*"chance between 2100Z and 0200Z of visibility one−half statute mile in thunderstorms and heavy rain."*
PROB30 3010/3014 1SM RASN .	*"chance between 1000Z and 1400Z of visibility one statute mile in mixed rain and . snow."*

29.6 Forecast Change Indicators. The following change indicators are used when either a rapid, gradual, or temporary change is expected in some or all of the forecast meteorological conditions. Each change indicator marks a time group within the TAF report.

29.6.1 From (FM) Group. The FM group is used when a rapid change, usually occurring in less than one hour, in prevailing conditions is expected. Typically, a rapid change of prevailing conditions to more or less a completely new set of prevailing conditions is associated with a synoptic feature passing through the terminal area (cold or warm frontal passage). Appended to the "FM" indicator is the six−digit date, hour, and minute the change is expected to begin and continues until the next change group or until the end of the current forecast. A "FM" group will mark the beginning of a new line in a TAF report (indented 5 spaces). Each "FM" group contains all the required elements−wind, visibility, weather, and sky condition. Weather will be omitted in "FM" groups when it is not significant to aviation. FM groups will not include the contraction NSW.

EXAMPLE−

FM210100 14010KT P6SM SKC − "after 0100Z on the 21st, wind one four zero at one zero, visibility more than six, sky clear."

29.6.2 Becoming (BECMG) Group. The BECMG group is used when a gradual change in conditions is expected over a longer time period, usually two hours. The time period when the change is expected is two four−digit groups separated by a "/", with the beginning date and hour, and ending date and hour of the change period which follows the BECMG indicator. The gradual change will occur at an unspecified time within this time period. Only the changing forecast meteorological conditions are included in BECMG groups. The omitted conditions are carried over from the previous time group.

NOTE−

The NWS does not use BECMG in the TAF.

EXAMPLE−

OVC012 BECMG 0114/0116 BKN020 − "ceiling one thousand two hundred overcast. Then a gradual change to ceiling two thousand broken between 1400Z on the 1st and 1600Z on the 1st."

29.6.3 Temporary (TEMPO) Group. The TEMPO group is used for any conditions in wind, visibility, weather, or sky condition which are expected to last for generally less than an hour at a time (occasional), and are expected to occur during less than half the time period. The TEMPO indicator is followed by two four−digit groups separated by a "/". The first four digit group gives the beginning date and hour, and the second four digit group gives the ending date and hour of the time period during which the temporary conditions are expected. Only the changing forecast meteorological conditions are included in TEMPO groups. The omitted conditions are carried over from the previous time group.

EXAMPLE−

1. *SCT030 TEMPO 0519/0523 BKN030 − "three thousand scattered with occasional ceilings three thousand broken between 1900Z on the 5th and 2300Z on the 5th."*

2. *4SM HZ TEMPO 1900/1906 2SM BR HZ − "visibility four in haze with occasional visibility two in mist and haze between 0000Z on the 19th and 0600Z on the 19th."*

FIG GEN 3.5−24

Key to Aerodrome Forecast (TAF) and Aviation Routine Weather Report (METAR) (Front)

TAF KPIT 091730Z 0918/1024 15005KT 5SM HZ FEW020 WS010/31022KT
FM091930 30015G25KT 3SM SHRA OVC015
TEMPO 0920/0922 1/2SM +TSRA OVC008CB
FM100100 27008KT 5SM SHRA BKN020 OVC040
PROB30 1004/1007 1SM -RA BR
FM101015 18005KT 6SM -SHRA OVC020
BECMG 1013/1015 P6SM NSW SKC

NOTE: Users are cautioned to confirm ***DATE*** and ***TIME*** of the TAF. For example FM**10**0000 is 0000Z on the **10th**. Do not confuse with ***1000Z!***

METAR KPIT 091955Z COR 22015G25KT 3/4SM R28L/2600FT TSRA OVC010CB 18/16 A2992 RMK SLP045 T01820159

Forecast	Explanation	Report
TAF	Message type: TAF-routine or TAF AMD-amended forecast, METAR-hourly, SPECI-special or TESTM-non-commissioned ASOS report	**METAR**
KPIT	ICAO location indicator	**KPIT**
091730Z	Issuance time: ALL times in UTC "Z", 2-digit date, 4-digit time	**091955Z**
0918/1024	Valid period, either 24 hours or 30 hours. The first two digits of EACH four digit number indicate the date of the valid period, the final two digits indicate the time (valid from 18Z on the 9th to 24Z on the 10th).	
	In U.S. METAR: CORrected ob; or AUTOmated ob for automated report with no human intervention; omitted when observer logs on.	**COR**
15005KT	Wind: 3 digit true-north direction , nearest 10 degrees (or VaRiaBle); next 2-3 digits for speed and unit, KT (KMH or MPS); as needed, Gust and maximum speed; 00000KT for calm; for METAR, if direction varies 60 degrees or more, Variability appended, e.g., 180V260	**22015G25KT**
5SM	Prevailing visibility; in U.S., Statute Miles & fractions; above 6 miles in TAF Plus6SM. (Or, 4-digit minimum visibility in meters and as required, lowest value with direction)	**¾SM**
	Runway Visual Range: R; 2-digit runway designator Left, Center, or Right as needed; "/", Minus or Plus in U.S., 4-digit value, FeeT in U.S., (usually meters elsewhere); 4-digit value Variability 4-digit value (and tendency Down, Up or No change)	**R28L/2600FT**
HZ	Significant present, forecast and recent weather: see table (on back)	**TSRA**
FEW020	Cloud amount, height and type: Sky Clear 0/8, FEW >0/8-2/8, ScaTtered 3/8-4/8, BroKeN 5/8-7/8, OverCast 8/8; 3-digit height in hundreds of ft; Towering Cumulus or CumulonimBus in **METAR**; in **TAF**, only CB. Vertical Visibility for obscured sky and height "VV004". More than 1 layer may be reported or forecast. In automated **METAR** reports only, CleaR for "clear below 12,000 feet"	**OVC 010CB**
	Temperature: degrees Celsius; first 2 digits, temperature "/" last 2 digits, dew-point temperature; Minus for below zero, e.g., M06	**18/16**
	Altimeter setting: indicator and 4 digits; in U.S., A-inches and hundredths; (Q-hectoPascals, e.g., Q1013)	**A2992**
WS010/31022KT	In U.S. **TAF**, non-convective low-level (≤2,000 ft) Wind Shear; 3-digit height (hundreds of ft); "/"; 3-digit wind direction and 2-3 digit wind speed above the indicated height, and unit, KT	

FIG GEN 3.5−25

Key to Aerodrome Forecast (TAF) and Aviation Routine Weather Report (METAR) (Back)

	In **METAR**, ReMarK indicator & remarks. For example: Sea- Level Pressure in hectoPascals & tenths, as shown: 1004.5 hPa; Temp/ dew-point in tenths °C, as shown: temp. 18.2°C, dew-point 15.9°C	**RMK SLP045 T01820159**
FM091930	FroM: changes are expected at: 2-digit date, 2-digit hour, and 2-digit minute beginning time: indicates significant change. Each FM starts on a new line, indented 5 spaces	
TEMPO 0920/0922	TEMPOrary: changes expected for <1 hour and in total, < half of the period between the 2-digit date and 2-digit hour beginning, and 2-digit date and 2-digit hour ending time	
PROB30 1004/1007	PROBability and 2-digit percent (30 or 40): probable condition in the period between the 2-digit date & 2-digit hour beginning time, and the 2-digit date and 2-digit hour ending time	
BECMG 1013/1015	BECoMinG: change expected in the period between the 2-digit date and 2-digit hour beginning time, and the 2-digit date and 2-digit hour ending time	

Table of Significant Present, Forecast and Recent Weather - Grouped in categories and used in the order listed below; or as needed in TAF, No Significant Weather.

Qualifiers
Intensity or Proximity

"-" = Light	**No sign** = Moderate	**"+"** = Heavy

"VC" = Vicinity, but not at aerodrome. In the US METAR, 5 to 10 SM from the point of observation. In the US TAF, 5 to 10 SM from the center of the runway complex. Elsewhere, within 8000m.

Descriptor

BC – Patches	**BL** – Blowing	**DR** – Drifting	**FZ** – Freezing
MI – Shallow	**PR** – Partial	**SH** – Showers	**TS** – Thunderstorm

Weather Phenomena
Precipitation

DZ – Drizzle	**GR** – Hail	**GS** – Small Hail/Snow Pellets	
IC – Ice Crystals	**PL** – Ice Pellets	**RA** – Rain	**SG** – Snow Grains
SN – Snow	**UP** – Unknown Precipitation in automated observations		

Obscuration

BR – Mist (≥5/8SM)	**DU** – Widespread Dust	**FG** – Fog (<5/8SM)	**FU** – Smoke
HZ – Haze	**PY** – Spray	**SA** – Sand	**VA** – Volcanic Ash

Other

DS – Dust Storm	**FC** – Funnel Cloud	**+FC** – Tornado or Waterspout	
PO – Well developed dust or sand whirls		**SQ** – Squall	**SS** – Sandstorm

- Explanations in parentheses "()" indicate different worldwide practices.
- Ceiling is not specified; defined as the lowest broken or overcast layer, or the vertical visibility.
- NWS TAFs exclude BECMG groups and temperature forecasts, NWS TAFS do not use PROB in the first 9 hours of a TAF; NWS METARs exclude trend forecasts. US Military TAFs include Turbulence and Icing groups.

30. Meteorological Broadcasts (ATIS, VHF and LF)

30.1 Automatic Terminal Information Service (ATIS) Broadcasts

30.1.1 These broadcasts are made continuously and include as weather information only the ceiling, visibility, wind, and altimeter setting of the aerodrome at which they are located.

30.2 Navigational Aids Providing Broadcast Services

30.2.1 A compilation of navigational aids over which weather broadcasts are transmitted is not available for this publication. Complete information concerning all navigational aids providing this service is contained in the Chart Supplement U.S. Similar information for the Pacific and Alaskan areas is contained in the Chart Supplements Pacific and Alaska.

TBL GEN 3.5−15

Meteorological Broadcasts (VOLMET)

Name	Call Sign	Frequency	Broadcast	Form	Contents	Emission	Remarks
New York	New York Radio	3485, 6604, 10051, 13270 kHz	H00−05	Aerodrome Forecasts	KDTW Detroit KCLE Cleveland KCVG Cincinnati	Voice	Plain language English
				Hourly Reports	KDTW Detroit KCLE Cleveland KCVG Cincinnati KIND Indianapolis KPIT Pittsburgh		
			H05−10	SIGMET	Oceanic − New York FIR		
				Aerodrome Forecasts	KBGR Bangor KBDL Windsor Locks KCLT Charlotte		
				Hourly Reports	KBGR Bangor KBDL Windsor Locks KORF Norfolk KCLT Charlotte		
			H10−15	Aerodrome Forecasts	KJFK New York KEWR Newark KBOS Boston		
				Hourly Reports	KJFK New York KEWR Newark KBOS Boston KBAL Baltimore KIAD Washington		
			H15−20	SIGMET	Oceanic − Miami FIR/San Juan FIR		
				Aerodrome Forecasts	MXKF Bermuda KMIA Miami KATL Atlanta		
				Hourly Reports	MXKF Bermuda KMIA Miami MYNN Nassau KMCO Orlando KATL Atlanta		
			H30−35	Aerodrome Forecasts	KORD Chicago KMKE Milwaukee KMSP Minneapolis		
				Hourly Reports	KORD Chicago KMKE Milwaukee KMSP Minneapolis KDTW Detroit KBOS Boston		
			E35−40	SIGMET	Oceanic − New York FIR		

Name	Call Sign	Frequency	Broadcast	Form	Contents	Emission	Remarks
				Aerodrome Forecasts	KIND Indianapolis KSTL St. Louis KPIT Pittsburgh		
				Hourly Reports	KIND Indianapolis KSTL St. Louis KPIT Pittsburgh KACY Atlantic City		
			E40−45	Aerodrome Forecasts	KBAL Baltimore KPHL Philadelphia KIAD Washington		
				Hourly Reports	KBAL Baltimore KPHL Philadelphia KIAD Washington KJFK New York KEWR Newark		
			E45−50	SIGMET	Oceanic − Miami FIR/San Juan FIR		
				Aerodrome Forecasts	MYNN Nassau KMCO Orlando		
				Hourly Reports	MXKF Bermuda KMIA Miami MYNN Nassau KMCO Orlando KATL Atlanta KTPA Tampa KPBI West Palm Beach		
All stations operate on A3 emission H24.							
All broadcasts are made 24 hours daily, seven days a week.							

FIG GEN 3.5−26

Key to Decode an ASOS/AWOS (METAR) Observation (Front)

METAR KABC 121755Z AUTO 21016G24KT 180V240 1SM R11/P6000FT -RA BR BKN015 OVC025 06/04 A2990
RMK A02 PK WND 20032/25 WSHFT 1715 VIS 3/4V1 1/2 VIS 3/4 RWY11 RAB07 CIG 013V017 CIG 017 RWY11 PRESFR
SLP125 P0003 6009 T00640036 10066 21012 58033 TSNO $

TYPE OF REPORT	METAR: hourly (scheduled report; SPECI: special (unscheduled) report.	METAR
STATION IDENTIFIER	Four alphabetic characters; ICAO location identifiers.	KABC
DATE/TIME	All dates and times in UTC using a 24-hour clock; two-digit date and four-digit time; always appended with Z to indicate UTC.	121755Z
REPORT MODIFIER	Fully automated report, no human intervention; removed when observer signed-on.	AUTO
WIND DIRECTION AND SPEED	Direction in tens of degrees from true north (first three digits); next two digits: speed in whole knots; as needed Gusts (character) followed by maximum observed speed; always appended with KT to indicate knots; 00000KT for calm; if direction varies by 60° or more a Variable wind direction group is reported.	21016G24KT 108V240
VISIBILITY	Prevailing visibility in statute miles and fractions (space between whole miles and fractions); always appended with SM to indicate statute miles.	1SM
RUNWAY VISUAL RANGE	10-minute RVR value in hundreds of feet; reported if prevailing visibility is ≤ one mile or RVR ≤6000 feet; always appended with FT to indicate feet; value prefixed with M or P to indicate value is lower or higher than the reportable RVR value.	R11/P6000FT
WEATHER PHENOMENA	RA: liquid precipitation that does not freeze; SN: frozen precipitation other than hail; UP: precipitation of unknown type; intensity prefixed to precipitation: light (-), moderate (no sign), heavy (+); FG: fog; FZFG: freezing fog (temperature below 0°C); BR: mist; HZ: haze; SQ: squall; maximum of three groups reported; augmented by observer: FC (funnel cloud/tornado/waterspout); TS(thunderstorm); GR (hail); GS (small hail; <1/4 inch); FZRA (intensity; freezing rain); VA (volcanic ash).	-RA BR
SKY CONDITION	Cloud amount and height: CLR (no clouds detected below 12000 feet); FEW (few); SCT (scattered); BKN (broken); OVC (overcast); followed by 3-digit height in hundreds of feet; or vertical visibility (VV) followed by height for indefinite ceiling.	BKN015 OVC025
TEMPERATURE/DEW POINT	Each is reported in whole degrees Celsius using two digits; values are separated by a solidus; sub-zero values are prefixed with an M (minus).	06/04
ALTIMETER	Altimeter always prefixed with an A indicating inches of mercury; reported using four digits: tens, units, tenths, and hundredths.	A2990

FIG GEN 3.5−27

Key to Decode an ASOS/AWOS (METAR) Observation (Back)

REMARKS IDENTIFIER: RMK	RMK
TORNADIC ACTIVITY: Augmented; report should include TORNADO, FUNNEL CLOUD, or WATERSPOUT, time begin/end, location, movement; e.;g., TORNADO B25 N MOV E.	
TYPE OF AUTOMATED STATION: AO2; automated station with precipitation discriminator.	AO2
PEAK WIND: PK WND dddff(f)/(hh)mm; direction in tens of degrees, speed in whole knots, and time.	PK WND 20032/25
WIND SHIFT: WSHFT (hh)mm	WSHFT 1715
TOWER OR SURFACE VISIBILITY: TWR VIS vvvvv: visibility reported by tower personnel, e.g., TWR VIS 2; SFC VIS vvvvv: visibility reported by ASOS, e.g., SFC VIS 2.	
VARIABLE PREVAILING VISIBILITY: VIS v_n v_n v_n v_n v_nV$v_x$$v_x$$v_x$$v_x$$v_x$; reported if prevailing visibility is <3 miles and variable.	VIS 3/4V1 1/2
VISIBILITY AT SECOND LOCATION: VIS vvvvv [LOC]; reported if different than the reported prevailing visibility in body of report.	VIS 3/4 RWY11
LIGHTNING: [FREQ] LTG [LOC]; when detected the frequency and location is reported, e.g., FRQ LTG NE.	
BEGINNING AND ENDING OF PRECIPITATION AND THUNDERSTORMS: w'w'B(hh)mmE(hh)mm; TSB(hh)mmE(hh)mm	RAB07
VIRGA: Augmented; precipitation not reaching the ground, e.g., VIRGA.	
VARIABLE CEILING HEIGHT: CIG h_n h_n h_nV$h_x$$h_x$$h_x$; reported if ceiling in body of report is <3000 feet and variable.	CIG 013V017
CEILING HEIGHT AT SECOND LOCATION: CIG hhh [LOC]; Ceiling height reported if secondary ceilometer site is different than the ceiling height in the body of the report.	CIG 017 RWY11
PRESSURE RISING OR FALLING RAPIDLY: PRESRR or PRESFR; pressure rising or falling rapidly at time of observation.	PRESFR
SEA-LEVEL PRESSURE: SLPppp; tens, units, and tenths of SLP in hPa.	SLP125
HOURLY PRECIPITATION AMOUNT: Prrrr; in .01 inches since last METAR; a trace is P0000.	P0003
3- AND 6-HOUR PRECIPITATION AMOUNT: 6RRRR; precipitation amount in .01 inches for past 6 hours reported in 00, 06, 12, and 18 UTC observations and for past 3 hours in 03, 09, 15, and 21 UTC observations; a trace is 60000.	60009
24-HOUR PRECIPITATION AMOUNT: 7R_{24} R_{24} R_{24} R_{24}; precipitation amount in .01 inches for past 24 hours reported in 12 UTC observation, e.g., 70015.	
HOURLY TEMPERATURE AND DEW POINT: T$s_n$$T_a$$T_a$$T_a$$s_n$$T'_a$$T'_a$$T'_a$; tenth of degree Celsius; s_n: 1 if temperature below 0° C and 0 if temperature 0°C or higher.	T00640036
6-HOUR MAXIMUM TEMPERATURE: 1$s_n$$T_x$$T_x$$T_x$; tenth of degree Celsius; 00, 06, 12, 18 UTC; s_n: 1 if temperature below 0°C and 0 if temperature 0°C or higher.	10066
6-HOUR MINIMUM TEMPERATURE: 2$s_n$$T_n$$T_n$$T_n$; tenth of degree Celsius; 00, 06, 12, 18 UTC; s_n: 1 if temperature below 0°C and 0 if temperature 0°C or higher.	21012
24-HOUR MAXIMUM AND MINIMUM TEMPERATURE: 4$s_n$$T_x$$T_x$$T_x$$s_n$$T_n$$T_n$$T_n$; tenth of degree Celsius; reported at midnight local standard time; 1 if temperature below 0°C and 0 if temperature 0°C or higher, e.g., 400461006.	
PRESSURE TENDENCY: 5appp; the character (a) and change in pressure (ppp; tenths of hPa) the past 3 hours.	58033
SENSOR STATUS INDICATORS: RVRNO: RVR missing; PWINO: precipitation identifier information not available; PNO: precipitation amount not available; FZRANO: freezing rain information not available; TSNO: thunderstorm information not available; VISNO [LOC]: visibility at secondary location not available, e.g., VISNO RWY06; CHINO [LOC]: (cloud-height-indicator) sky condition at secondary location not available, e.g., CHINO RWY06.	TSNO
MAINTENANCE CHECK INDICATOR: Maintenance needed on the system.	$
If an element or phenomena does not occur, is missing, or cannot be observed, the corresponding group and space are omitted (body and/or remarks) from that particular report, except for Sea-Level Pressure (SLPppp). SLPNO shall be reported in a METAR when the SLP is not available.	

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION • FEDERAL AVIATION ADMINISTRATION • Aviation Weather Directorate, 400 7TH Street, SW, Rooms 8200-8326, Washington, D.C 20591

FIG GEN 3.5−28
NEXRAD Coverage

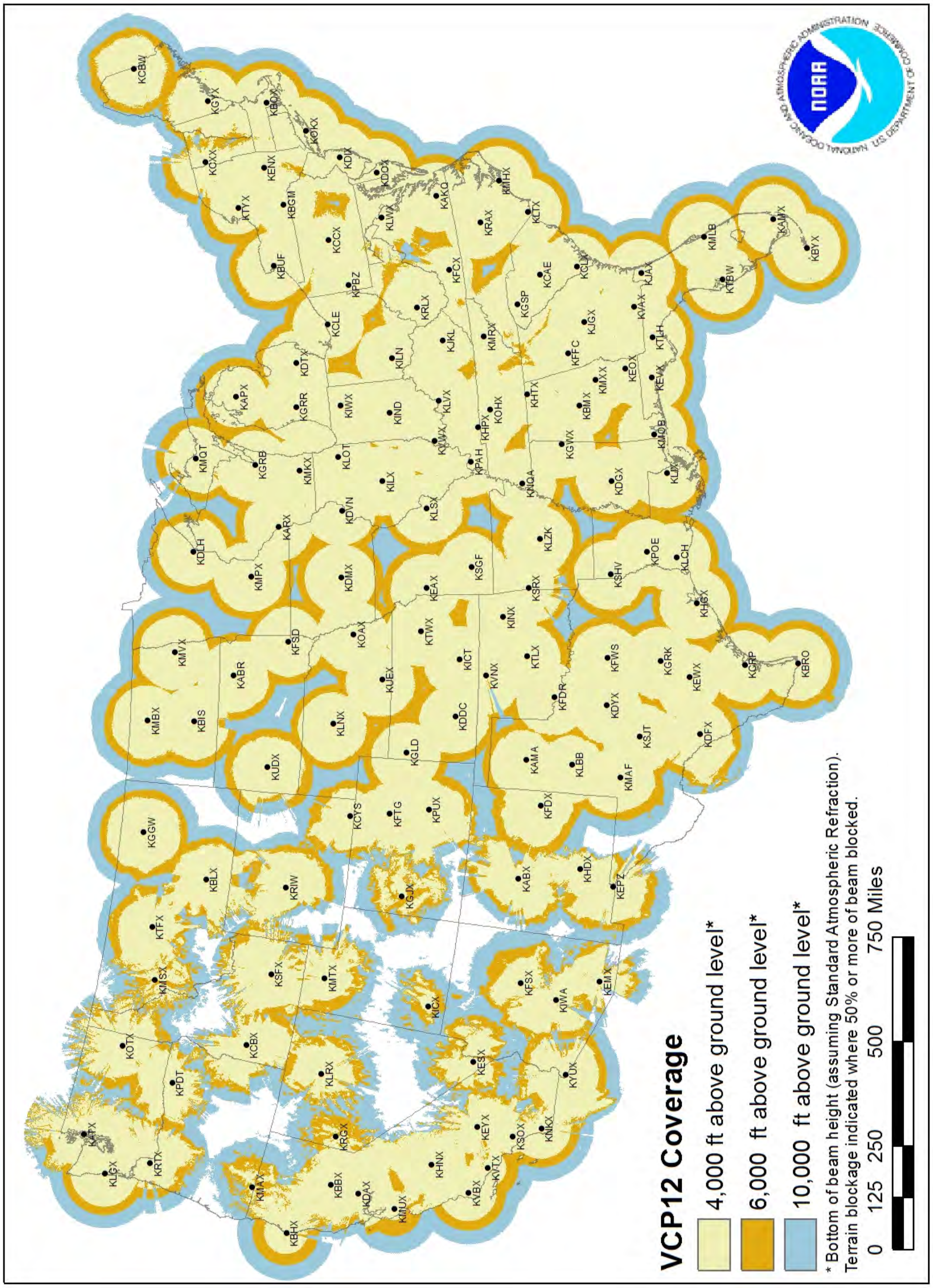


FIG GEN 3.5−29
NEXRAD Coverage

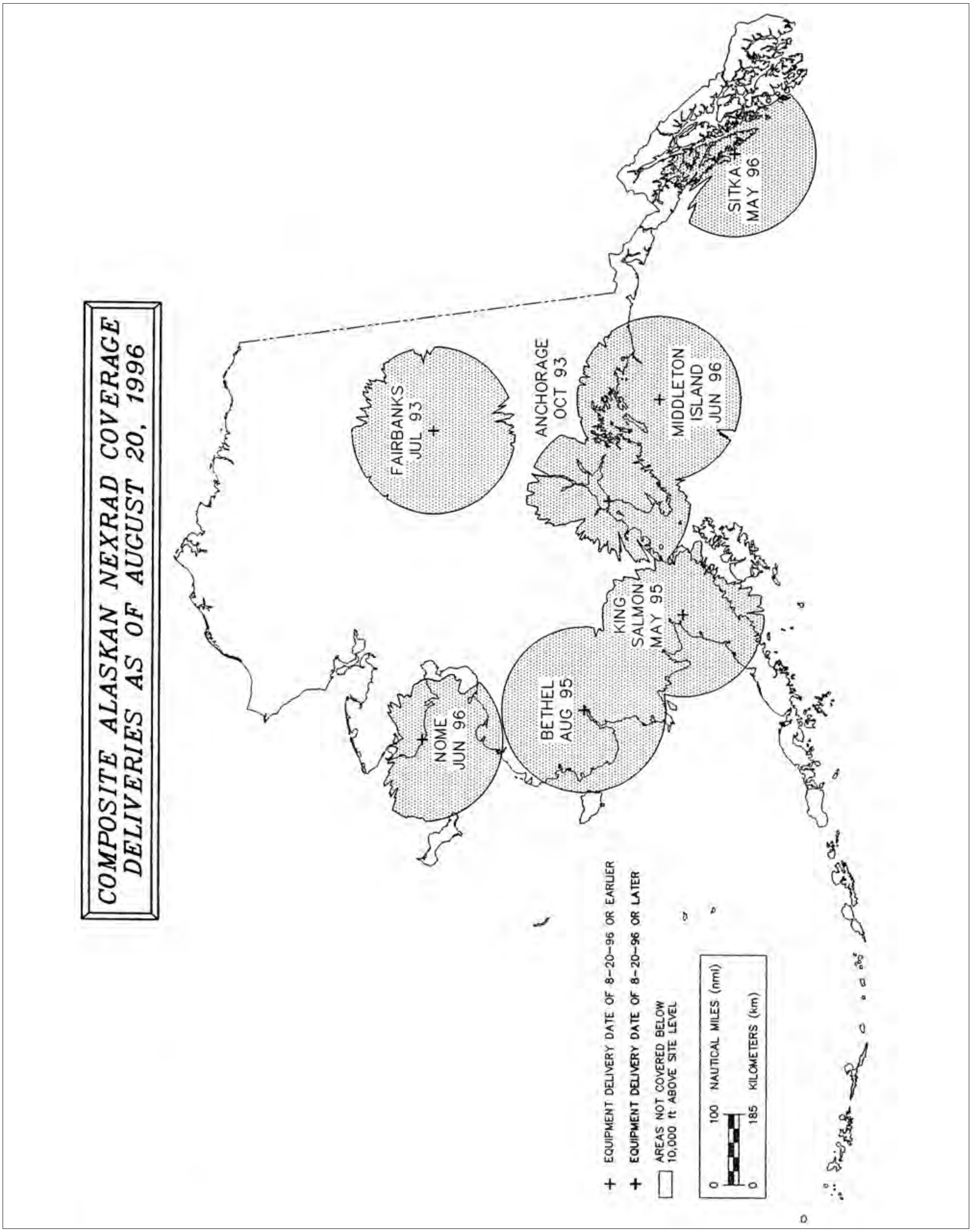


FIG GEN 3.5−30
NEXRAD Coverage

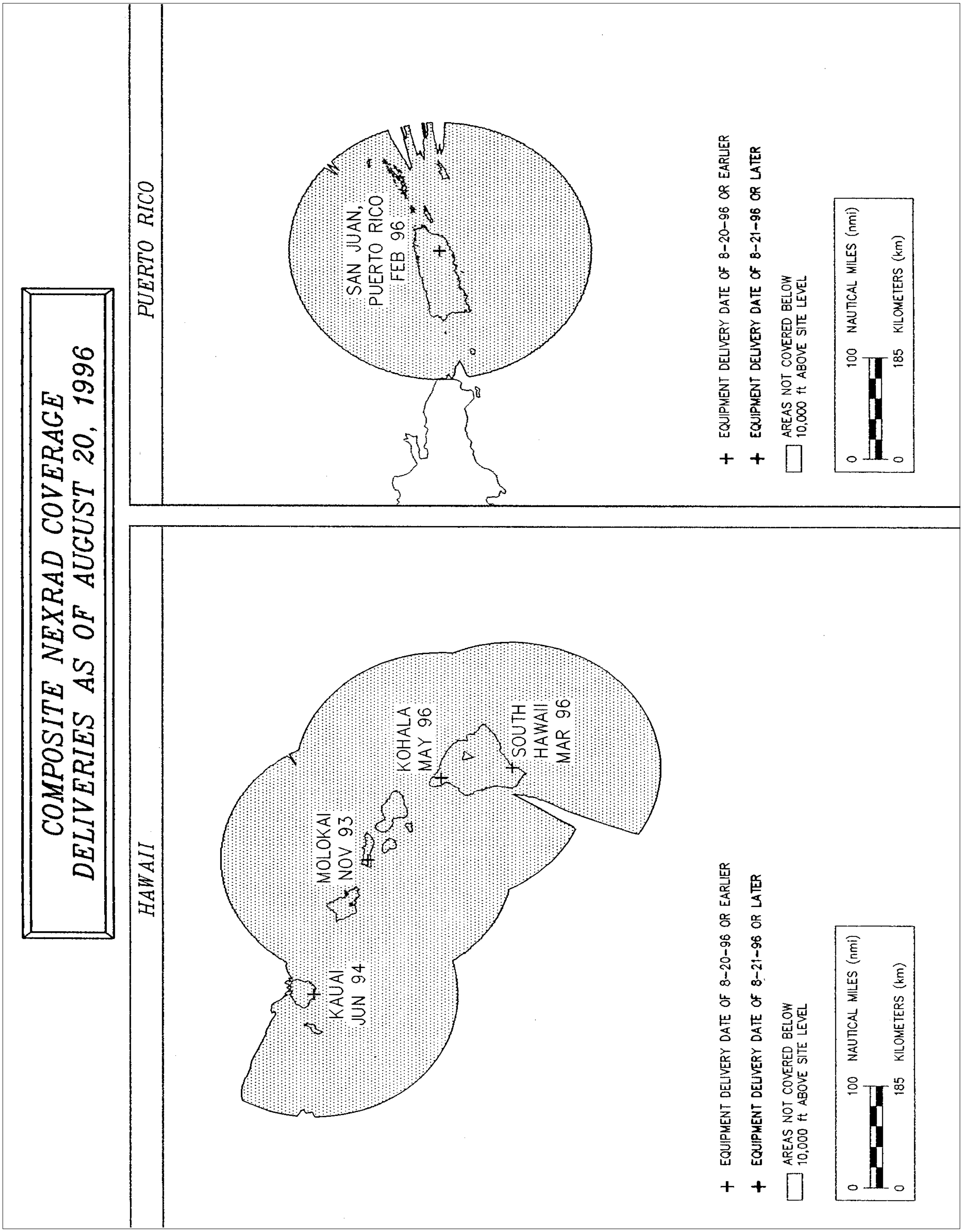


FIG GEN 3.5−31

Volcanic Activity Reporting Form (VAR)

Air−reports are critically important in assessing the hazards which volcanic ash cloud presents to aircraft operations.

OPERATOR:			A/C IDENTIFICATION: (as indicated on flight plan)		
PILOT-IN-COMMAND:					
DEP FROM:	DATE:	TIME; UTC:	ARR AT:	DATE:	TIME; UTC:
ADDRESSEE			AIREP SPECIAL		
Items 1–8 are to be reported immediately to the ATS unit that you are in contact with.					
1) AIRCRAFT IDENTIFICATION			2) POSITION		
3) TIME			4) FLIGHT LEVEL OR ALTITUDE		
5) VOLCANIC ACTIVITY OBSERVED AT (position or bearing, estimated level of ash cloud and distance from aircraft)					
6) AIR TEMPERATURE			7) SPOT WIND		
8) SUPPLEMENTARY INFORMATION SO_2 detected Yes ☐ No ☐ Ash encountered Yes ☐ No ☐			Other ____________ (Brief description of activity especially vertical and lateral extent of ash cloud and, where possible, horizontal movement, rate of growth, etc.)		
After landing complete items 9–16 then fax form to: (Fax number to be provided by the meteorological authority based on local arrangements between the meteorological authority and the operator concerned.)					

9) DENSITY OF ASH CLOUD	☐ (a) Wispy	☐ (b) Moderate dense	☐ (c) Very dense
10) COLOUR OF ASH CLOUD	☐ (a) White ☐ (d) Black	☐ (b) Light grey ☐ (e) Other ____________	☐ (c) Dark grey
11) ERUPTION	☐ (a) Continuous	☐ (b) Intermittent	☐ (c) Not visible
12) POSITION OF ACTIVITY	☐ (a) Summit ☐ (d) Multiple	☐ (b) Side ☐ (e) Not observed	☐ (c) Single
13) OTHER OBSERVED FEATURES OF ERUPTION	☐ (a) Lightning ☐ (d) Ash fallout	☐ (b) Glow ☐ (e) Mushroom cloud	☐ (c) Large rocks ☐ (f) All
14) EFFECT ON AIRCRAFT	☐ (a) Communication ☐ (d) Pitot static	☐ (b) Navigation systems ☐ (e) Windscreen	☐ (c) Engines ☐ (f) Windows
15) OTHER EFFECTS	☐ (a) Turbulence	☐ (b) St. Elmo's Fire	☐ (c) Other fumes
16) OTHER INFORMATION (Any information considered useful.)			

Date: 07/19/2010

PART 2 – EN ROUTE (ENR)

ENR 0.

ENR 0.1 Preface – Not applicable
ENR 0.2 Record of AIP Amendments – See GEN 0.2−1
ENR 0.3 Record of AIP Supplements – Not applicable

ENR 0.4 Checklist of Pages

PAGE	DATE
1.4−13	21 MAR 24
1.4−14	21 MAR 24
1.4−15	21 MAR 24
1.4−16	20 FEB 25
1.4−17	20 FEB 25
1.4−18	20 FEB 25
1.4−19	20 FEB 25
1.5−1	21 MAR 24
1.5−2	21 MAR 24
1.5−3	21 MAR 24
1.5−4	21 MAR 24
1.5−5	21 MAR 24
1.5−6	21 MAR 24
1.5−7	21 MAR 24
1.5−8	21 MAR 24
1.5−9	21 MAR 24
1.5−10	21 MAR 24
1.5−11	21 MAR 24
1.5−12	5 SEP 24
1.5−13	5 SEP 24
1.5−14	5 SEP 24
1.5−15	5 SEP 24
1.5−16	20 FEB 25
1.5−17	20 FEB 25
1.5−18	20 FEB 25
1.5−19	20 FEB 25
1.5−20	20 FEB 25
1.5−21	20 FEB 25
1.5−22	20 FEB 25
1.5−23	20 FEB 25
1.5−24	20 FEB 25
1.5−25	20 FEB 25
1.5−26	20 FEB 25
1.5−27	20 FEB 25
1.5−28	20 FEB 25
1.5−29	20 FEB 25
1.5−30	20 FEB 25
1.5−31	20 FEB 25
1.5−32	20 FEB 25
1.5−33	20 FEB 25
1.5−34	20 FEB 25
1.5−35	20 FEB 25
1.5−36	20 FEB 25
1.5−37	20 FEB 25
1.5−38	20 FEB 25
1.5−39	20 FEB 25
1.5−40	20 FEB 25
1.5−41	20 FEB 25
1.5−42	20 FEB 25
1.5−43	20 FEB 25
1.5−44	20 FEB 25

PAGE	DATE
1.5−45	20 FEB 25
1.5−46	20 FEB 25
1.5−47	20 FEB 25
1.5−48	20 FEB 25
1.5−49	20 FEB 25
1.5−50	20 FEB 25
1.5−51	20 FEB 25
1.5−52	20 FEB 25
1.5−53	20 FEB 25
1.5−54	20 FEB 25
1.5−55	20 FEB 25
1.5−56	20 FEB 25
1.5−57	20 FEB 25
1.5−58	20 FEB 25
1.5−59	20 FEB 25
1.5−60	20 FEB 25
1.5−61	20 FEB 25
1.5−62	20 FEB 25
1.5−63	20 FEB 25
1.5−64	20 FEB 25
1.5−65	20 FEB 25
1.5−66	20 FEB 25
1.5−67	20 FEB 25
1.5−68	20 FEB 25
1.5−69	20 FEB 25
1.5−70	20 FEB 25
1.5−71	20 FEB 25
1.5−72	20 FEB 25
1.5−73	20 FEB 25
1.5−74	20 FEB 25
1.5−75	20 FEB 25
1.5−76	20 FEB 25
1.5−77	20 FEB 25
1.5−78	20 FEB 25
1.5−79	20 FEB 25
1.5−80	20 FEB 25
1.5−81	20 FEB 25
1.5−82	20 FEB 25
1.5−83	20 FEB 25
1.5−84	20 FEB 25
1.5−85	20 FEB 25
1.5−86	20 FEB 25
1.5−87	20 FEB 25
1.5−88	20 FEB 25
1.5−89	20 FEB 25
1.5−90	20 FEB 25
1.5−91	20 FEB 25
1.5−92	20 FEB 25
1.6−1	5 SEP 24
1.6−2	21 MAR 24
1.6−3	21 MAR 24
1.6−4	21 MAR 24

PAGE	DATE
1.6−5	21 MAR 24
1.6−6	21 MAR 24
1.6−7	21 MAR 24
1.6−8	21 MAR 24
1.6−9	21 MAR 24
1.6−10	21 MAR 24
1.6−11	21 MAR 24
1.7−1	21 MAR 24
1.7−2	21 MAR 24
1.7−3	21 MAR 24
1.8−1	21 MAR 24
1.8−2	21 MAR 24
1.8−3	21 MAR 24
1.8−4	21 MAR 24
1.8−5	21 MAR 24
1.8−6	21 MAR 24
1.8−7	21 MAR 24
1.8−8	21 MAR 24
1.9−1	21 MAR 24
1.10−1	5 SEP 24
1.10−2	21 MAR 24
1.10−3	21 MAR 24
1.10−4	20 FEB 25
1.10−5	21 MAR 24
1.10−6	21 MAR 24
1.10−7	21 MAR 24
1.10−8	21 MAR 24
1.10−9	21 MAR 24
1.10−10	5 SEP 24
1.10−11	5 SEP 24
1.10−12	5 SEP 24
1.10−13	21 MAR 24
1.10−14	21 MAR 24
1.10−15	21 MAR 24
1.10−16	21 MAR 24
1.10−17	21 MAR 24
1.10−18	21 MAR 24
1.10−19	21 MAR 24
1.11−1	21 MAR 24
1.11−2	21 MAR 24
1.12−1	21 MAR 24
1.12−2	21 MAR 24
1.12−3	21 MAR 24
1.12−4	21 MAR 24
1.12−5	21 MAR 24
1.12−6	21 MAR 24
1.12−7	21 MAR 24
1.12−8	21 MAR 24
1.12−9	21 MAR 24
1.12−10	21 MAR 24
1.12−11	21 MAR 24

PAGE	DATE
1.12−12	21 MAR 24
1.12−13	21 MAR 24
1.12−14	21 MAR 24
1.12−15	21 MAR 24
1.13−1	21 MAR 24
1.14−1	21 MAR 24
1.15−1	21 MAR 24
1.15−2	21 MAR 24
1.15−3	21 MAR 24
1.15−4	21 MAR 24
1.15−5	21 MAR 24
1.15−6	21 MAR 24
1.15−7	21 MAR 24
1.15−8	21 MAR 24
1.15−9	21 MAR 24
1.16−1	21 MAR 24
1.16−2	21 MAR 24
1.16−3	21 MAR 24
1.17−1	21 MAR 24
1.17−2	21 MAR 24
1.17−3	21 MAR 24
1.17−4	21 MAR 24
1.17−5	21 MAR 24
1.17−6	21 MAR 24
1.17−7	21 MAR 24
1.17−8	21 MAR 24
1.17−9	21 MAR 24
1.17−10	21 MAR 24
1.17−11	21 MAR 24
1.17−12	5 SEP 24
1.17−13	5 SEP 24
ENR 2	
2−1	21 MAR 24
ENR 3	
3.1−1	5 SEP 24
3.2−1	5 SEP 24
3.3−1	21 MAR 24
3.4−1	21 MAR 24
3.5−1	21 MAR 24
3.5−2	21 MAR 24
3.5−3	21 MAR 24
3.5−4	21 MAR 24
ENR 4	
4.1−1	21 MAR 24
4.1−2	21 MAR 24
4.1−3	21 MAR 24
4.1−4	21 MAR 24
4.1−5	21 MAR 24
4.1−6	21 MAR 24

PAGE	DATE
4.1−7	21 MAR 24
4.1−8	21 MAR 24
4.1−9	21 MAR 24
4.1−10	21 MAR 24
4.1−11	21 MAR 24
4.1−12	21 MAR 24
4.1−13	21 MAR 24
4.1−14	21 MAR 24
4.1−15	21 MAR 24
4.1−16	21 MAR 24
4.1−17	21 MAR 24
4.1−18	21 MAR 24
4.1−19	21 MAR 24
4.1−20	5 SEP 24
4.1−21	21 MAR 24
4.1−22	21 MAR 24
4.1−23	21 MAR 24
4.1−24	21 MAR 24
4.1−25	21 MAR 24
4.1−26	21 MAR 24
4.1−27	21 MAR 24
4.1−28	21 MAR 24
4.1−29	21 MAR 24
4.1−30	21 MAR 24
4.1−31	21 MAR 24
4.1−32	21 MAR 24
4.1−33	21 MAR 24
4.1−34	21 MAR 24
4.1−35	21 MAR 24
4.1−36	21 MAR 24
4.1−37	21 MAR 24
4.1−38	21 MAR 24
4.1−39	21 MAR 24
4.1−40	21 MAR 24
4.2−1	21 MAR 24
ENR 5	
5.1−1	21 MAR 24
5.1−2	21 MAR 24
5.1−3	21 MAR 24
5.1−4	21 MAR 24
5.1−5	21 MAR 24
5.1−6	21 MAR 24
5.2−1	21 MAR 24
5.2−2	5 SEP 24
5.2−3	5 SEP 24
5.3−1	21 MAR 24
5.4−1	21 MAR 24
5.5−1	21 MAR 24
5.6−1	21 MAR 24
5.6−2	21 MAR 24
5.6−3	21 MAR 24

PAGE	DATE
5.7−1	21 MAR 24
5.7−2	21 MAR 24
5.7−3	21 MAR 24
5.7−4	21 MAR 24
5.7−5	21 MAR 24
5.7−6	21 MAR 24
5.7−7	21 MAR 24
5.7−8	21 MAR 24
5.7−9	21 MAR 24
5.7−10	21 MAR 24
5.7−11	21 MAR 24
5.7−12	21 MAR 24
5.7−13	21 MAR 24
5.7−14	21 MAR 24
5.7−15	21 MAR 24
5.7−16	21 MAR 24
5.7−17	21 MAR 24
5.7−18	21 MAR 24
ENR 6	
6.1−1	21 MAR 24
6.1−2	21 MAR 24
6.1−3	21 MAR 24
6.1−4	21 MAR 24
6.1−5	21 MAR 24
6.1−6	21 MAR 24
6.1−7	21 MAR 24
6.1−8	21 MAR 24
6.2−1	21 MAR 24
6.2−2	21 MAR 24
6.2−3	21 MAR 24
6.2−4	21 MAR 24
6.2−5	21 MAR 24
6.2−6	21 MAR 24
6.2−7	21 MAR 24
6.2−8	21 MAR 24
6.2−9	21 MAR 24
6.2−10	21 MAR 24
6.2−11	21 MAR 24
6.2−12	21 MAR 24
6.2−13	21 MAR 24
6.2−14	21 MAR 24
6.2−15	21 MAR 24
6.2−17	21 MAR 24
6.2−18	21 MAR 24
6.2−19	21 MAR 24
6.2−20	21 MAR 24
ENR 7	
7.1−1	20 FEB 25
7.1−2	20 FEB 25

ENR 0.5 List of Hand Amendments to the AIP − Not applicable

TBL ENR 1.4−3

Class C Airspace Areas by State

State/City	Airport
ALABAMA	
Birmingham	Birmingham−Shuttlesworth International
Huntsville	International−Carl T Jones Fld
Mobile	Regional
ALASKA	
Anchorage	Ted Stevens International
ARIZONA	
Davis−Monthan	AFB
Tucson	International
ARKANSAS	
Fayetteville (Springdale)	Northwest Arkansas Regional
Little Rock	Adams Field
CALIFORNIA	
Beale	AFB
Burbank	Bob Hope
Fresno	Yosemite International
Monterey	Peninsula
Oakland	Metropolitan Oakland International
Ontario	International
Riverside	March AFB
Sacramento	International
San Jose	Norman Y. Mineta International
Santa Ana	John Wayne/Orange County
Santa Barbara	Municipal
COLORADO	
Colorado Springs	Municipal
CONNECTICUT	
Windsor Locks	Bradley International
FLORIDA	
Daytona Beach	International
Fort Lauderdale	Hollywood International
Fort Myers	SW Florida Regional
Jacksonville	International
Orlando	Sanford International
Palm Beach	International
Pensacola	NAS
Pensacola	International
Sarasota	Bradenton International
Tallahassee	Regional
Whiting	NAS
GEORGIA	
Savannah	Hilton Head International
HAWAII	
Kahului	Kahului
IDAHO	
Boise	Air Terminal
ILLINOIS	
Champaign	Urbana U of Illinois−Willard
Chicago	Midway International
Moline	Quad City International
Peoria	Greater Peoria Regional
Springfield	Abraham Lincoln Capital
INDIANA	
Evansville	Regional
Fort Wayne	International
Indianapolis	International
South Bend	Regional
IOWA	
Cedar Rapids	The Eastern Iowa
Des Moines	International
KANSAS	
Wichita	Mid−Continent
KENTUCKY	
Lexington	Blue Grass
Louisville	International−Standiford Field
LOUISIANA	
Baton Rouge	Metropolitan, Ryan Field
Lafayette	Regional
Shreveport	Barksdale AFB
Shreveport	Regional
MAINE	
Bangor	International
Portland	International Jetport
MICHIGAN	
Flint	Bishop International
Grand Rapids	Gerald R. Ford International
Lansing	Capital City
MISSISSIPPI	
Columbus	AFB
Jackson	Jackson−Evers International
MISSOURI	
Springfield	Springfield−Branson National
MONTANA	
Billings	Logan International
NEBRASKA	
Lincoln	Lincoln
Omaha	Eppley Airfield
Offutt	AFB
NEVADA	
Reno	Reno/Tahoe International
NEW HAMPSHIRE	
Manchester	Manchester
NEW JERSEY	
Atlantic City	International
NEW MEXICO	
Albuquerque	International Sunport
NEW YORK	
Albany	International
Buffalo	Niagara International
Islip	Long Island MacArthur
Rochester	Greater Rochester International
Syracuse	Hancock International

State/City	Airport
NORTH CAROLINA	
Asheville	Regional
Fayetteville	Regional/Grannis Field
Greensboro	Piedmont Triad International
Pope	AFB
Raleigh	Raleigh−Durham International
OHIO	
Akron	Akron−Canton Regional
Columbus	Port Columbus International
Dayton	James M. Cox International
Toledo	Express
OKLAHOMA	
Oklahoma City	Will Rogers World
Tinker	AFB
Tulsa	International
OREGON	
Portland	International
PENNSYLVANIA	
Allentown	Lehigh Valley International
PUERTO RICO	
San Juan	Luis Munoz Marin International
RHODE ISLAND	
Providence	Theodore Francis Green State
SOUTH CAROLINA	
Charleston	AFB/International
Columbia	Metropolitan
Greer	Greenville−Spartanburg International
Myrtle Beach	Myrtle Beach International
Shaw	AFB
TENNESSEE	
Chattanooga	Lovell Field
Knoxville	McGhee Tyson
Nashville	International

State/City	Airport
TEXAS	
Abilene	Regional
Amarillo	Rick Husband International
Austin	Austin−Bergstrom International
Corpus Christi	International
Dyess	AFB
El Paso	International
Harlingen	Valley International
Laughlin	AFB
Lubbock	Preston Smith International
Midland	International
San Antonio	International
VERMONT	
Burlington	International
VIRGIN ISLANDS	
St. Thomas	Charlotte Amalie Cyril E. King
VIRGINIA	
Richmond	International
Norfolk	International
Roanoke	Regional/Woodrum Field
WASHINGTON	
Point Roberts	Vancouver International
Spokane	Fairchild AFB
Spokane	International
Whidbey Island	NAS, Ault Field
WEST VIRGINIA	
Charleston	Yeager
WISCONSIN	
Green Bay	Austin Straubel International
Madison	Dane County Regional−Traux Field
Milwaukee	General Mitchell International

2.5 Class D Airspace

2.5.1 Definition. Generally, Class D airspace extends upward from the surface to 2,500 feet above the airport elevation (charted in MSL) surrounding those airports that have an operational control tower. The configuration of each Class D airspace area is individually tailored and when instrument procedures are published, the airspace will normally be designed to contain the procedures.

2.5.1.1 Class D surface areas may be designated as full-time or part-time. Part-time Class D effective times are published in the Chart Supplement.

2.5.1.2 Part−time Class D surface areas may default to either a Class E surface area or Class G airspace. When a part–time Class D surface area defaults to Class G, the surface area airspace becomes Class G up to, but not including, the overlying controlled airspace. Normally, the overlying controlled airspace is the Class E transition area airspace that begins at either 700 feet or 1200 feet AGL. This may be determined by consulting the applicable VFR Sectional or Terminal Area Charts.

2.5.2 Operating Rules and Pilot Equipment Requirements

2.5.2.1 Pilot Certification. No specific certification required.

2.5.2.2 Equipment. Unless otherwise authorized by ATC, an operable two−way radio is required.

2.6.5.5 Federal Airways and Low−altitude RNAV Routes. Federal airways and low−altitude RNAV routes are Class E airspace areas and, unless otherwise specified, they extend upward from 1,200 feet AGL to, but not including,18,000 feet MSL. Federal airways consist of L/MF airways (colored Federal airways) and VOR Federal airways. L/MF airways are green, red, amber, and blue. VOR Federal airways are classified as Domestic, Alaskan, and Hawaiian. Low−altitude RNAV routes include T−routes and helicopter RNAV routes (TK−routes).

2.6.5.6 Offshore Airspace Areas. There are Class E airspace areas that extend upward from a specified altitude to, but not including, 18,000 feet MSL and are designated as offshore airspace areas. These areas provide controlled airspace beyond 12 nautical miles from the coast of the U.S. in those areas where there is a requirement to provide IFR en route ATC services and within which the U.S. is applying domestic procedures.

2.6.6 Separation for VFR Aircraft. No separation services are provided to VFR aircraft.

3. Class G Airspace

3.1 General

Class G airspace (uncontrolled) is that portion of airspace that has not been designated as Class A, Class B, Class C, Class D, or Class E airspace.

3.2 VFR Requirements

Rules governing VFR flight have been adopted to assist the pilot in meeting his/her responsibility to see and avoid other aircraft. Minimum flight visibility and distance from clouds required for VFR flight are contained in 14 CFR Section 91.155. (See TBL ENR 1.4−1 for a tabular presentation of these rules).

3.3 IFR Requirements

3.3.1 Title 14 CFR specifies the pilot and aircraft equipment requirements for IFR flight. Pilots are reminded that in addition to altitude or flight level requirements, 14 CFR Section 91.177 includes a requirement to remain at least 1,000 feet (2,000 feet in designated mountainous terrain) above the highest obstacle within a horizontal distance of 4 nautical miles from the course to be flown.

3.3.2 IFR Altitudes. (See TBL ENR 1.4−4.)

4. Other Airspace Areas

4.1 Airport Advisory/Information Services

4.1.1 There are two advisory type services available at selected airports. Airports offering these services are listed in the Chart Supplement and the published service hours may be changed by NOTAM D.

4.1.1.1 Local Airport Advisory (LAA) service is available only in Alaska and is operated within 10 statute miles of an airport where a control tower is not operating but where a FSS is located on the airport. At such locations, the FSS provides a complete local airport advisory service to arriving and departing aircraft. During periods of fast changing weather the FSS will automatically provide Final Guard as part of the service from the time the aircraft reports "on−final" or "taking−the−active−runway" until the aircraft reports "on−the−ground" or "airborne."

NOTE−
Current FAA policy, when requesting remote ATC services, requires that a pilot monitor the automated weather broadcast at the landing airport prior to requesting ATC services. The FSS automatically provides Final Guard, when appropriate, during LAA operations. Final Guard is a value added wind/altimeter monitoring service, which provides an automatic wind and altimeter check during active weather situations when the pilot reports on−final or taking the active runway. During the landing or take−off operation when the winds or altimeter are actively changing the FSS will blind broadcast significant changes when the specialist believes the change might affect the operation. Pilots should acknowledge the first wind/altimeter check but due to cockpit activity no acknowledgement is expected for the blind broadcasts. It is prudent for a pilot to report on−the−ground or airborne to end the service.

TBL ENR 1.4−4
IFR Altitudes
Class G Airspace

If your magnetic course (ground track) is:	And you are below 18,000 feet MSL, fly:
0° to 179°	Odd thousands MSL, (3,000; 5,000; 7,000, etc.)
180° to 359°	Even thousands MSL, (2,000; 4,000; 6,000, etc.)

4.1.1.2 Remote Airport Information Service (RAIS) is provided in support of short term special events like small to medium fly−ins. The service is advertised by NOTAM D only. The FSS will not have access to a continuous readout of the current winds and altimeter; therefore, RAIS does not include weather and/or Final Guard service. However, known traffic, special event instructions, and all other services are provided.

NOTE−
The airport authority and/or manager should request RAIS support on official letterhead directly with the manager of the FSS that will provide the service at least 60 days in advance. Approval authority rests with the FSS manager and is based on workload and resource availability.

REFERENCE−
See GEN 3.3, Air Traffic Services, Paragraph 9.2, Traffic Advisory Practices at Airports Without Operating Control Towers.

4.1.1.3 It is not mandatory that pilots participate in the Airport Advisory programs. Participation enhances safety for everyone operating around busy GA airports; therefore, everyone is encouraged to participate and provide feedback that will help improve the program.

4.2 Published VFR Routes. Published VFR routes for transitioning around, under, and through complex airspace such as Class B airspace were developed through a number of FAA and industry initiatives. All of the following terms; i.e., “VFR Flyway,” “VFR Corridor,” and “VFR Transition Route” have been used when referring to the same or different types of routes or airspace. The following paragraphs identify and clarify the functionality of each type of route and specify where and when an ATC clearance is required.

4.2.1 VFR Flyways

4.2.1.1 A VFR Flyway is defined as a general flight path not defined as a specific course, for use by pilots in planning flights into, out of, through, or near complex terminal airspace to avoid Class B airspace. An ATC clearance is NOT required to fly these routes.

4.2.1.2 VFR Flyways are depicted on the reverse side of some of the VFR Terminal Area Charts (TACs). These charts identify VFR flyways designed to help VFR pilots avoid major controlled traffic flows. They may further depict multiple VFR routings throughout the area which may be used as an alternative to flight within Class B airspace. The ground references provide a guide for improved visual navigation. These routes are not intended to discourage requests for VFR operations within Class B airspace but are designed solely to assist pilots in planning for flights under and around busy Class B airspace without entering Class B airspace.

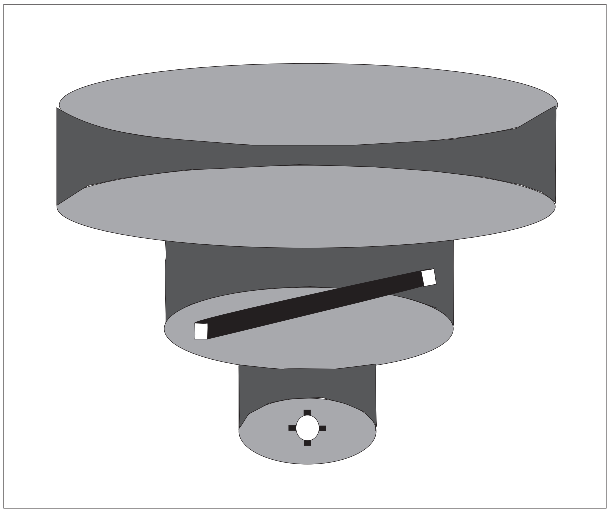
4.2.1.3 It is very important to remember that these suggested routes are not sterile of other traffic. The entire Class B airspace, and the airspace underneath it, may be heavily congested with many different types of aircraft. Pilot adherence to VFR rules must be exercised at all times. Communications must be established and maintained between your aircraft and any control tower while transiting Class C or Class D surface areas of airports under Class B airspace.

4.2.2 VFR Corridors

4.2.2.1 The design of a few of the first Class B airspace areas provided a corridor for the passage of uncontrolled traffic. A VFR corridor is defined as airspace through Class B airspace, with defined vertical and lateral boundaries, in which aircraft may operate without an ATC clearance or communication with air traffic control.

4.2.2.2 These corridors are, in effect, a “hole” through Class B airspace. (See FIG ENR 1.4−2.) A classic example would be the corridor through the Los Angeles Class B airspace, which has been subsequently changed to Special Flight Rules airspace (SFR). A corridor is surrounded on all sides by Class B airspace and does not extend down to the surface like a VFR Flyway. Because of their finite lateral and vertical limits, and the volume of VFR traffic using a corridor, extreme caution and vigilance must be exercised.

FIG ENR 1.4−2
Class B Airspace



4.2.2.3 Because of the heavy traffic volume and the procedures necessary to efficiently manage the flow of traffic, it has not been possible to incorporate VFR corridors in the development or modifications of Class B airspace in recent years.

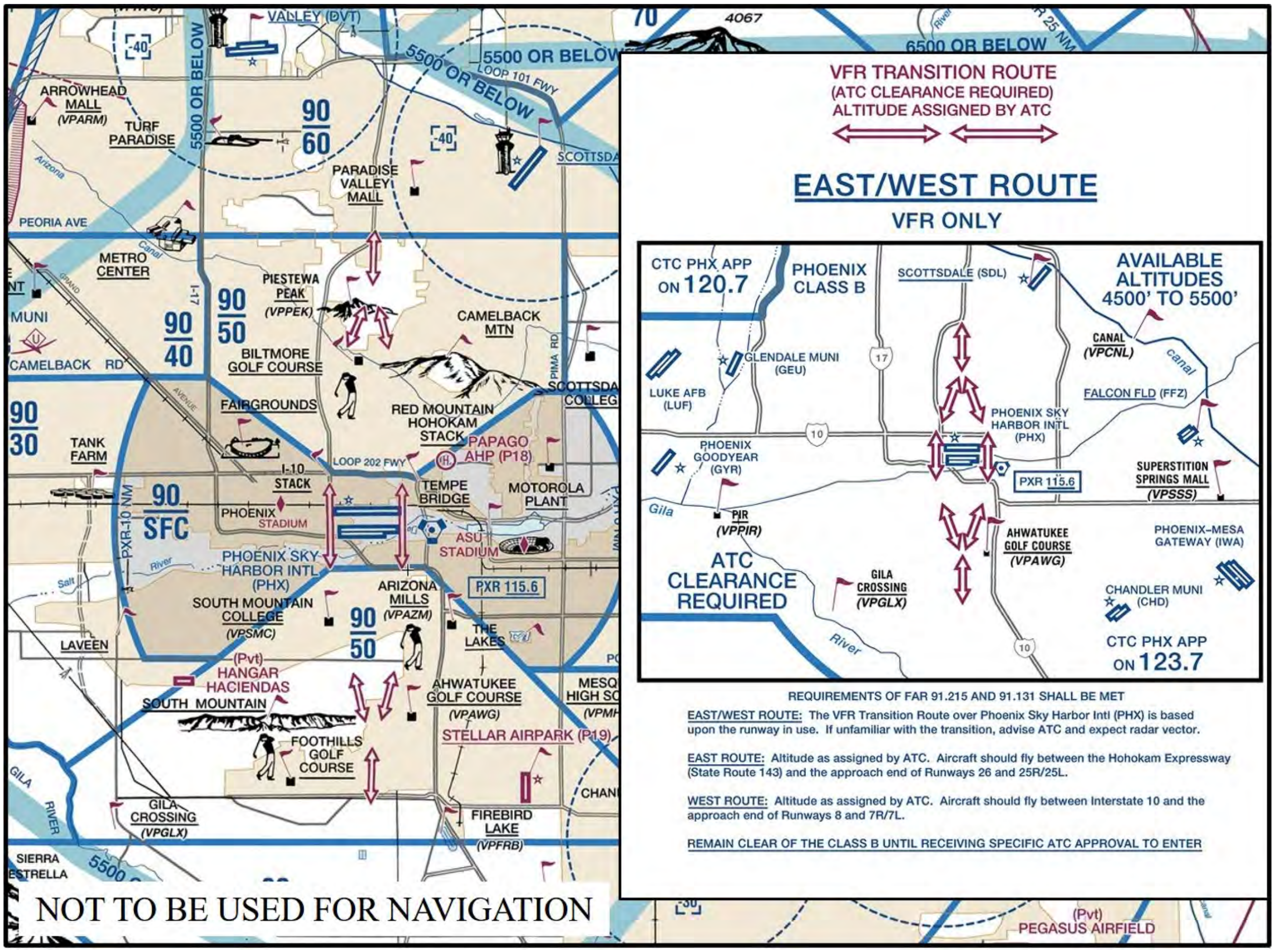
4.2.3 VFR Transition Routes

4.2.3.1 To accommodate VFR traffic through terminal airspace, VFR Transition Routes were developed. A VFR Transition Route is defined as a specific flight course depicted and described on a TAC and/or VFR Flyway Planning Chart. Communication with ATC where the route transitions Class B, Class C, and/or Class D airspace is required. In addition to communication requirements, a clearance is required to operate in Class B airspace. VFR Transition Routes may include published altitudes or ATC-assigned altitudes. Per 14 CFR section 91.123, pilot compliance is expected for all route and altitude restrictions as published or assigned by ATC. VFR Transition Route and altitude assignments do not relieve pilots from their duty to comply with 14 CFR section 91.119. Pilots are expected to request an alternate clearance if necessary for compliance.

4.2.3.2 These routes, as depicted in FIG ENR 1.4−2, are designed to show the pilot where to position the aircraft where an ATC assignment or clearance for the route can normally be expected with minimal or no delay. Until ATC authorization is received, pilots must remain clear of Class B airspace. On initial contact, pilots should advise ATC of their position, altitude, route name desired, and direction of flight.

4.2.3.3 For secondary airports underlying or in close proximity to Class B or Class C airspace, VFR Transition Routes may be developed and depicted for arrivals/departures. These arrivals/departures may be requested from or assigned by ATC.

FIG ENR 1.4−3
VFR Transition Route



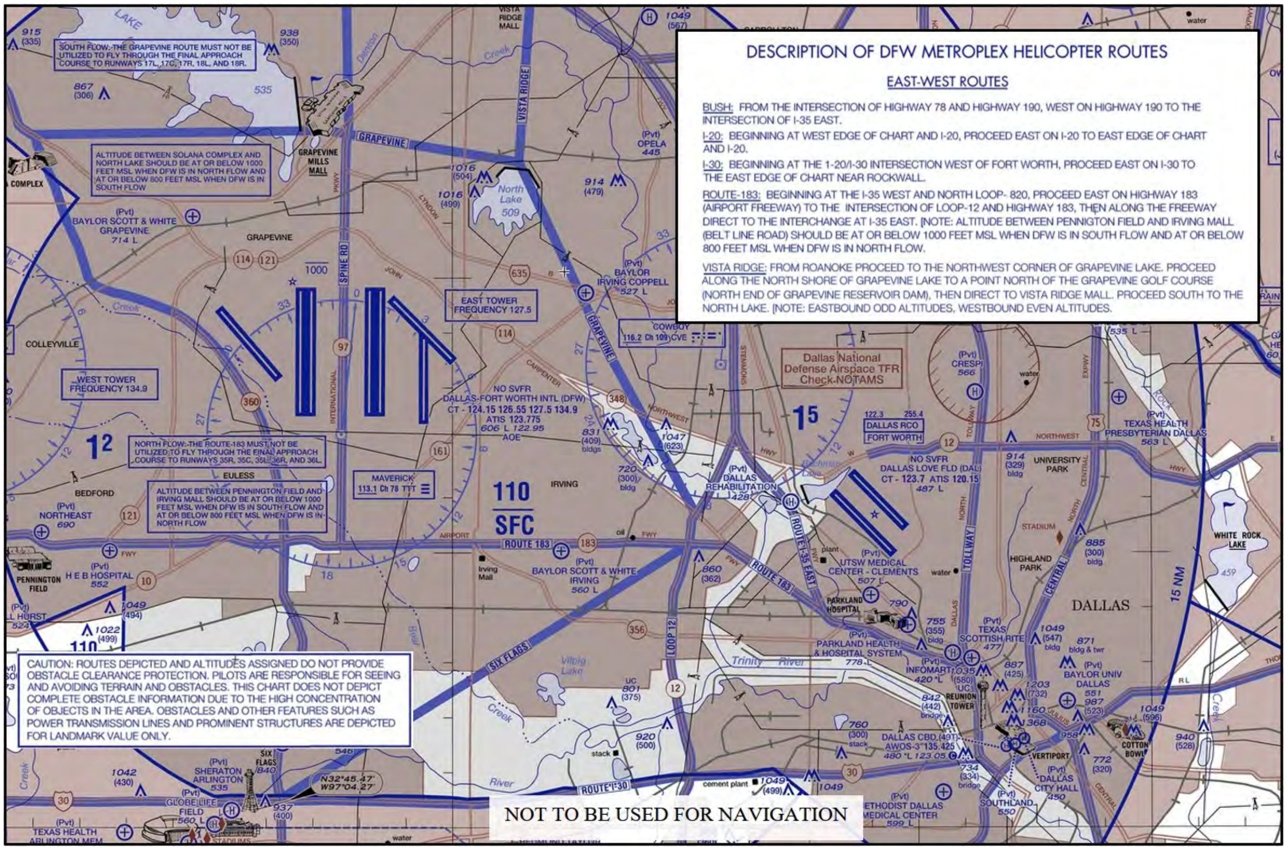
4.2.4 Helicopter Routes

4.2.4.1 Helicopter Routes are depicted on a specialized VFR chart established for select high traffic density areas to enhance helicopter access and ease of operation. The Helicopter Route Chart depicts prominent geographical features, roads and obstructions. A Helicopter Route is a specific VFR flight course and is depicted on the Helicopter Route Chart. These routes contain specific altitudes and instructions for navigating over visual reference points as published, or as instructed by ATC.

4.2.4.2 Helicopter Route Charts, as depicted in FIG ENR 1.4−4, incorporate expanded ground reference and unique symbology to improve visual navigation. The charts contain additional information such as frequencies to self−announce on and other route information. On initial contact, pilots should advise ATC of their position, altitude, and route name desired. Helicopter Routes may include published altitudes or ATC-assigned altitudes. Per 14 CFR section 91.123, pilot compliance is expected for all route and altitude restrictions as published or assigned by ATC. Helicopter Route and altitude assignments do not relieve pilots from their duty to comply with 14 CFR section 91.119 and 132.203(b). Pilots are expected to request an alternate clearance if necessary for compliance.

FIG ENR 1.4−4

Helicopter Route Chart



4.3 Terminal Radar Service Area (TRSA)

4.3.1 Background. The terminal radar service areas (TRSA) were originally established as part of the Terminal Radar Program at selected airports. TRSAs were never controlled airspace from a regulatory standpoint because the establishment of TRSAs were never subject to the rulemaking process; consequently, TRSAs are not contained in 14 CFR Part 71 nor are there any TRSA operating rules in Part 91. Part of the Airport Radar Service Area (ARSA) program was to eventually replace all TRSAs. However, the ARSA requirements became relatively stringent, and it was subsequently decided that TRSAs would have to meet ARSA criteria before they would be converted. TRSAs do not fit into any of the U.S. Airspace Classes; therefore, they will continue to be non−Part 71 airspace areas where participating pilots can receive additional radar services which have been redefined as TRSA Service.

4.3.2 TRSA Areas. The primary airport(s) within the TRSA become(s) Class D airspace. The remaining portion of the TRSA overlies other controlled airspace which is normally Class E airspace beginning at 700 or 1,200 feet and established to transition to/from the en route/terminal environment.

4.3.3 Participation. Pilots operating under VFR are encouraged to contact the radar approach control and avail themselves of the TRSA Services. However, participation is voluntary on the part of the pilot. See ENR 1.1, paragraph 40.2, for details and procedures.

4.3.4 Charts. TRSAs are depicted on VFR sectional and terminal area charts with a solid black line and altitudes for each segment. The Class D portion is charted with a blue segmented line.

4.2 A fuel efficient descent is basically an uninterrupted descent (except where level flight is required for speed adjustment) from cruising altitude to the point when level flight is necessary for the pilot to stabilize the aircraft on final approach. The procedure for a fuel efficient descent is based on an altitude loss which is most efficient for the majority of aircraft being served. This will generally result in a descent gradient window of 250−350 feet per nautical mile.

4.3 When crossing altitudes and speed restrictions are issued verbally or are depicted on a chart, ATC will expect the pilot to descend first to the crossing altitude and then reduce speed. Verbal clearances for descent will normally permit an uninterrupted descent in accordance with the procedure as described in paragraph 4.2 above. Acceptance of a charted fuel efficient descent (Runway Profile Descent) clearance requires the pilot to adhere to the altitudes, speeds, and headings depicted on the charts unless otherwise instructed by ATC. PILOTS RECEIVING A CLEARANCE FOR A FUEL EFFICIENT DESCENT ARE EXPECTED TO ADVISE ATC IF THEY DO NOT HAVE RUNWAY PROFILE DESCENT CHARTS PUBLISHED FOR THAT AIRPORT OR ARE UNABLE TO COMPLY WITH THE CLEARANCE.

5. Advance Information on Instrument Approaches

5.1 When landing at airports with approach control services and where two or more instrument approach procedures are published, pilots will be provided in advance of their arrival with the type of approach to expect or that they may be vectored for a visual approach. This information will be broadcast either by a controller or on ATIS. It will not be furnished when the visibility is three miles or better and the ceiling is at or above the highest initial approach altitude established for any low altitude instrument approach procedure for the airport.

5.2 The purpose of this information is to aid the pilot in planning arrival actions; however, it is not an ATC clearance or commitment and is subject to change. Pilots should bear in mind that fluctuating weather, shifting winds, blocked runway, etc., are conditions which may result in changes to approach information previously received. It is important that pilots advise ATC immediately if they are unable to execute the approach ATC advised will be used, or if they prefer another type of approach.

5.3 Aircraft destined to uncontrolled airports which have automated weather data with broadcast capability should monitor the ASOS/AWOS frequency to ascertain the current weather for the airport. The pilot must advise ATC when he/she has received the broadcast weather and state his/her intentions.

NOTE−

1. *ASOS/AWOS should be set to provide one−minute broadcast weather updates at uncontrolled airports that are without weather broadcast capability by a human observer.*

2. *Controllers will consider the long line disseminated weather from an automated weather system at an uncontrolled airport as trend and planning information only and will rely on the pilot for current weather information for the airport. If the pilot is unable to receive the current broadcast weather, the last long−line disseminated weather will be issued to the pilot. When receiving IFR services, the pilot/aircraft operator is responsible for determining if weather/visibility is adequate for approach/landing.*

5.4 When making an IFR approach to an airport not served by a tower or FSS, after the ATC controller advises "CHANGE TO ADVISORY FREQUENCY APPROVED," you should broadcast your intentions, including the type of approach being executed, your position, and when over the final approach fix inbound (nonprecision approach) or when over the outer marker or the fix used in lieu of the outer marker inbound (precision approach). Continue to monitor the appropriate frequency (UNICOM, etc.) for reports from other pilots.

6. Approach Clearance

6.1 An aircraft which has been cleared to a holding fix and subsequently "cleared . . . approach" has not received new routing. Even though clearance for the approach may have been issued prior to the aircraft reaching the holding fix, ATC would expect the pilot to proceed via the holding fix (the last assigned route), and the feeder route associated with that fix (if a feeder route is published on the approach chart) to the initial approach fix (IAF) to commence the approach. WHEN CLEARED FOR THE APPROACH, THE PUBLISHED OFF AIRWAY (FEEDER) ROUTES THAT LEAD FROM THE EN ROUTE STRUCTURE TO THE IAF ARE PART OF THE APPROACH CLEARANCE.

6.2 If a feeder route to an IAF begins at a fix located along the route of flight prior to reaching the holding fix, and clearance for an approach is issued, a pilot should commence the approach via the published feeder route; i.e., the aircraft would not be expected to overfly the feeder route and return to it. The pilot is expected to commence the approach in a similar manner at the IAF, if the IAF for the procedure is located along the route of flight to the holding fix.

6.3 If a route of flight directly to the initial approach fix is desired, it should be so stated by the controller with phraseology to include the words "direct . . . ," "proceed direct" or a similar phrase which the pilot can interpret without question. If a pilot is uncertain of the clearance, immediately query ATC as to what route of flight is desired.

6.4 The name of an instrument approach, as published, is used to identify the approach, even though a component of the approach aid, such as the glideslope on an Instrument Landing System, is inoperative or unreliable. The controller will use the name of the approach as published, but must advise the aircraft at the time an approach clearance is issued that the inoperative or unreliable approach aid component is unusable, except when the title of the published approach procedures otherwise allows, for example, ILS or LOC.

6.5 At times ATC may not specify a particular approach procedure in the clearance, but will state "CLEARED APPROACH."

6.5.1 This clearance indicates the pilot may execute any one of the authorized IAPs for that airport.

6.5.2 The clearance may be issued in conjunction with the route to or over an IAF or feeder fix.

6.5.3 This clearance does not constitute approval for the pilot to execute a contact approach or a visual approach to the airport or runway.

6.6 Except when being vectored to the final approach course, pilots cleared for an IAP are expected to execute the entire procedure commencing at an IAF or an associated feeder route as described on the IAP chart. Pilots are not required to execute the entire procedure if:

6.6.1 An appropriate new or revised ATC clearance is received, or

6.6.2 The IFR flight plan is canceled.

6.7 The following applies to aircraft on radar vectors and/or cleared "direct to" in conjunction with an approach clearance:

6.7.1 Maintain the last altitude assigned by ATC until the aircraft is established on a published segment of a transition route, or approach procedure segment, or other published route, for which a lower altitude is published on the chart. If already on an established route, or approach or arrival segment, you may descend to whatever minimum altitude is listed for that route or segment

6.7.2 Continue on the vector heading until intercepting the next published ground track applicable to the approach clearance.

6.7.3 Once reaching the final approach fix via the published segments, the pilot may continue on approach to a landing.

6.7.4 If proceeding to an IAF with a published course reversal (procedure turn or hold-in-lieu of PT pattern), except when cleared for a straight in approach by ATC, the pilot must execute the procedure turn/hold-in-lieu of PT, and complete the approach.

6.7.5 If cleared to an IAF/IF via a NoPT route, or no procedure turn/hold-in-lieu of PT is published, continue with the published approach.

6.7.6 In addition to the above, RNAV aircraft may be issued a clearance direct to the IAF/IF at intercept angles not greater than 90 degrees for both conventional and RNAV instrument approaches. Controllers may issue a heading or a course direct to a fix between the IF and FAF at intercept angles not greater than 30 degrees for both conventional and RNAV instrument approaches. In all cases, controllers will assign altitudes that ensure obstacle clearance and will permit a normal descent to the FAF. When clearing aircraft direct to the IF, ATC will radar monitor the aircraft until the IF and will advise the pilot to expect clearance direct to the IF at least 5 miles from the fix. ATC must issue a straight-in approach clearance when clearing an aircraft direct to an IAF/IF with a procedure turn or hold−in−lieu of a procedure turn, and ATC does not want the aircraft to execute the course reversal.

NOTE−
Refer to 14 CFR 91.175 (i).

6.8 RNAV aircraft may be issued a clearance direct to the FAF that is also charted as an IAF, in which case the pilot is expected to execute the depicted procedure turn or hold-in-lieu of procedure turn. ATC will not issue a straight-in approach clearance. If the pilot desires a straight-in approach, they must request vectors to the final approach course outside of the FAF or fly a published "NoPT" route. When visual approaches are in use, ATC may clear an aircraft direct to the FAF.

NOTE−
1. *In anticipation of a clearance by ATC to any fix published on an instrument approach procedure, pilots of RNAV aircraft are advised to select an appropriate IAF or feeder fix when loading an instrument approach procedure into the RNAV system.*

2. *Selection of "Vectors-to-Final" or "Vectors" option for an instrument approach may prevent approach fixes located outside of the FAF from being loaded into an RNAV system. Therefore, the selection of these options is discouraged due to increased workload for pilots to reprogram the navigation system.*

6.9 Arrival Holding. Some approach charts have an arrival holding pattern depicted at an IAF or at a feeder fix located along an airway. The arrival hold is depicted using a "thin line" since it is not always a mandatory part of the instrument procedure.

6.9.1 Arrival holding is charted where holding is frequently required prior to starting the approach procedure so that detailed holding instructions are not required. The arrival holding pattern is not authorized unless assigned by ATC. Holding at the same fix may also be depicted on the en route chart.

6.9.2 Arrival holding is also charted where it is necessary to use a holding pattern to align the aircraft for procedure entry from an airway due to turn angle limitations imposed by procedure design standards. When the turn angle from an airway into the approach procedure exceeds the permissible limits, an arrival holding pattern may be published along with a note on the procedure specifying the fix, the airway, and arrival direction where use of the arrival hold is required for procedure entry. Unlike a hold−in−lieu of procedure turn, use of the arrival holding pattern is not authorized until assigned by ATC. If ATC does not assign the arrival hold before reaching the holding fix, the pilot should request the hold for procedure entry. Once established on the inbound holding course and an approach clearance has been received, the published procedure can commence. Alternatively, if using the holding pattern for procedure entry is not desired, the pilot may ask ATC for maneuvering airspace to align the aircraft with the feeder course.

EXAMPLE−
Planview Chart Note: "Proc NA via V343 northeast bound without holding at JOXIT. ATC CLNC REQD."

6.10 An RF leg is defined as a constant radius circular path around a defined turn center that starts and terminates at a fix. An RF leg may be published as part of a procedure. Since not all aircraft have the capability to fly these leg types, pilots are responsible for knowing if they can conduct an RNAV approach with an RF leg. Requirements for RF legs will be indicated on the approach chart in the notes section or at the applicable initial approach fix. Controllers will clear RNAV-equipped aircraft for instrument approach procedures containing RF legs:

6.10.1 Via published transitions, or

6.10.2 In accordance with paragraph 6.7.6 above, and

6.10.3 ATC will not clear aircraft direct to any waypoint beginning or within an RF leg, and will not assign fix/waypoint crossing speeds in excess of charted speed restrictions.

EXAMPLE−
1. *Controllers will not clear aircraft direct to THIRD because that waypoint begins the RF leg, and aircraft cannot be*

vectored or cleared to TURNN or vectored to intercept the approach segment at any point between THIRD and FORTH because this is the RF leg. (See FIG ENR 1.5−9.)

6.11 When necessary to cancel a previously issued approach clearance, the controller will advise the pilot "Cancel Approach Clearance" followed by any additional instructions when applicable.

7. Landing Priority

7.1 A clearance for a specific type of approach (ILS, RNAV, GLS, ADF, VOR, or visual approach) to an aircraft operating on an IFR flight plan does not mean that landing priority will be given over other traffic. Traffic control towers handle all aircraft, regardless of the type of flight plan, on a "first−come, first−served" basis. Therefore, because of local traffic or runway in use, it may be necessary for the controller, in the interest of safety, to provide a different landing sequence. In any case, a landing sequence will be issued to each aircraft as soon as possible to enable the pilot to properly adjust the aircraft's flight path.

8. Procedure Turn and Hold−in−lieu of Procedure Turn

8.1 A procedure turn is the maneuver prescribed when it is necessary to reverse direction to establish the aircraft inbound on an intermediate or final approach course. The procedure turn or hold−in−lieu−of−PT is a required maneuver when it is depicted on the approach chart, unless cleared by ATC for a straight−in approach. Additionally, the procedure turn or hold−in−lieu−of−PT is not permitted when the symbol "No PT" is depicted on the initial segment being used, when a RADAR VECTOR to the final approach course is provided, or when conducting a timed approach from a holding fix. The altitude prescribed for the procedure turn is a minimum altitude until the aircraft is established on the inbound course. The maneuver must be completed within the distance specified in the profile view. For a hold−in−lieu−of−PT, the holding pattern should be flown as depicted and the specified leg length/timing must not be exceeded.

NOTE−
The pilot may elect to use the procedure turn or hold−in−lieu−of−PT when it is not required by the procedure, but must first receive an amended clearance from ATC. If the pilot is uncertain whether the ATC clearance intends for a procedure turn to be conducted or to allow for a straight−in approach, the pilot must immediately request clarification from ATC (14 CFR Section 91.123).

8.1.1 On U.S. Government charts, a barbed arrow indicates the maneuvering side of the outbound course on which the procedure turn is made. Headings are provided for course reversal using the 45 degree type procedure turn. However, the point at which the turn may be commenced and the type and rate of turn is left to the discretion of the pilot (limited by the charted remain within xx NM distance). Some of the options are the 45 degree procedure turn, the racetrack pattern, the teardrop procedure turn, or the 80 degree ↔ 260 degree course reversal. Racetrack entries should be conducted on the maneuvering side where the majority of protected airspace resides. If an entry places the pilot on the non−maneuvering side of the PT, correction to intercept the outbound course ensures remaining within protected airspace. Some procedure turns are specified by procedural track. These turns must be flown exactly as depicted.

8.1.2 Descent to the procedure turn (PT) completion altitude from the PT fix altitude (when one has been published or assigned by ATC) must not begin until crossing over the PT fix or abeam and proceeding outbound. Some procedures contain a note in the chart profile view that says "Maintain (altitude) or above until established outbound for procedure turn" (See FIG ENR 1.5−10). Newer procedures will simply depict an "at or above" altitude at the PT fix without a chart note (See FIG ENR 1.5−11). Both are there to ensure required obstacle clearance is provided in the procedure turn entry zone (See FIG ENR 1.5−12). Absence of a chart note or specified minimum altitude adjacent to the PT fix is an indication that descent to the procedure turn altitude can commence immediately upon crossing over the PT fix, regardless of the direction of flight. This is because the minimum altitudes in the PT entry zone and the PT maneuvering zone are the same.

8.1.3 When the approach procedure involves a procedure turn, a maximum speed of not greater than 200 knots (IAS) should be observed from first overheading the course reversal IAF through the procedure turn maneuver to ensure containment within the obstruction clearance area. Pilots should begin the outbound turn immediately after passing the procedure turn fix. The procedure turn maneuver must be executed within the distance specified in the profile view. The normal procedure turn distance is 10 miles. This may be reduced to a minimum of 5 miles where only Category A or helicopter aircraft are to be operated or increased to as much as 15 miles to accommodate high performance aircraft.

8.1.4 A teardrop procedure or penetration turn may be specified in some procedures for a required course reversal. The teardrop procedure consists of departure from an initial approach fix on an outbound course followed by a turn toward and intercepting the inbound course at or prior to the intermediate fix or point. Its purpose is to permit an aircraft to reverse direction and lose considerable altitude within reasonably limited airspace. Where no fix is available to mark the beginning of the intermediate segment, it must be assumed to commence at a point 10 miles prior to the final approach fix. When the facility is located on the airport, an aircraft is considered to be on final approach upon completion of the penetration turn. However, the final approach segment begins on the final approach course 10 miles from the facility.

FIG ENR 1.5−9

Example of an RNAV Approach with RF Leg

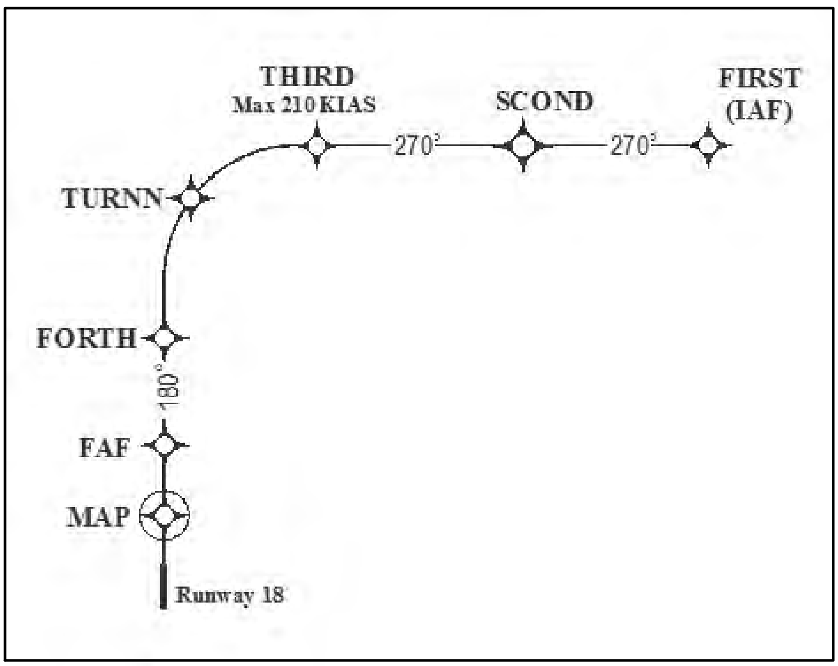


FIG ENR 1.5−10

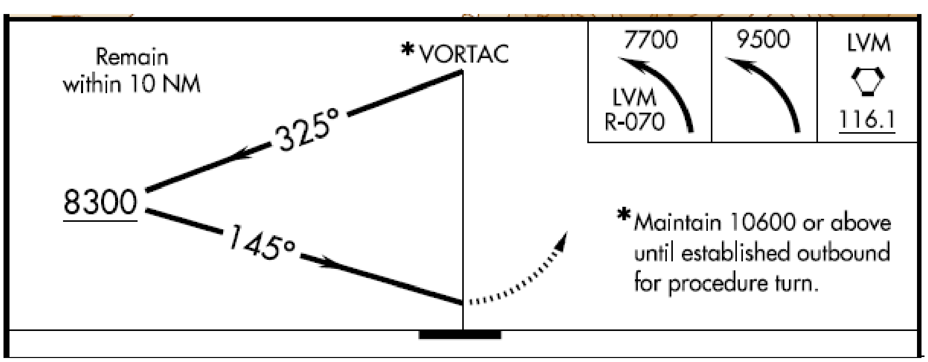
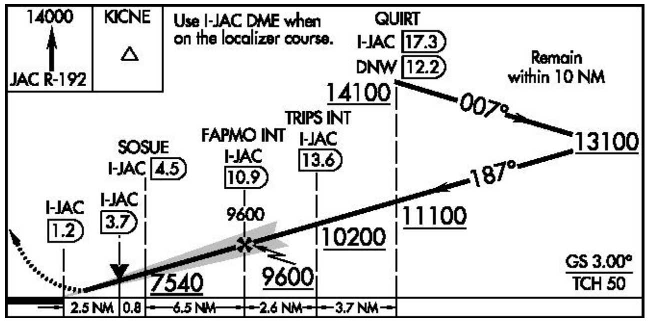


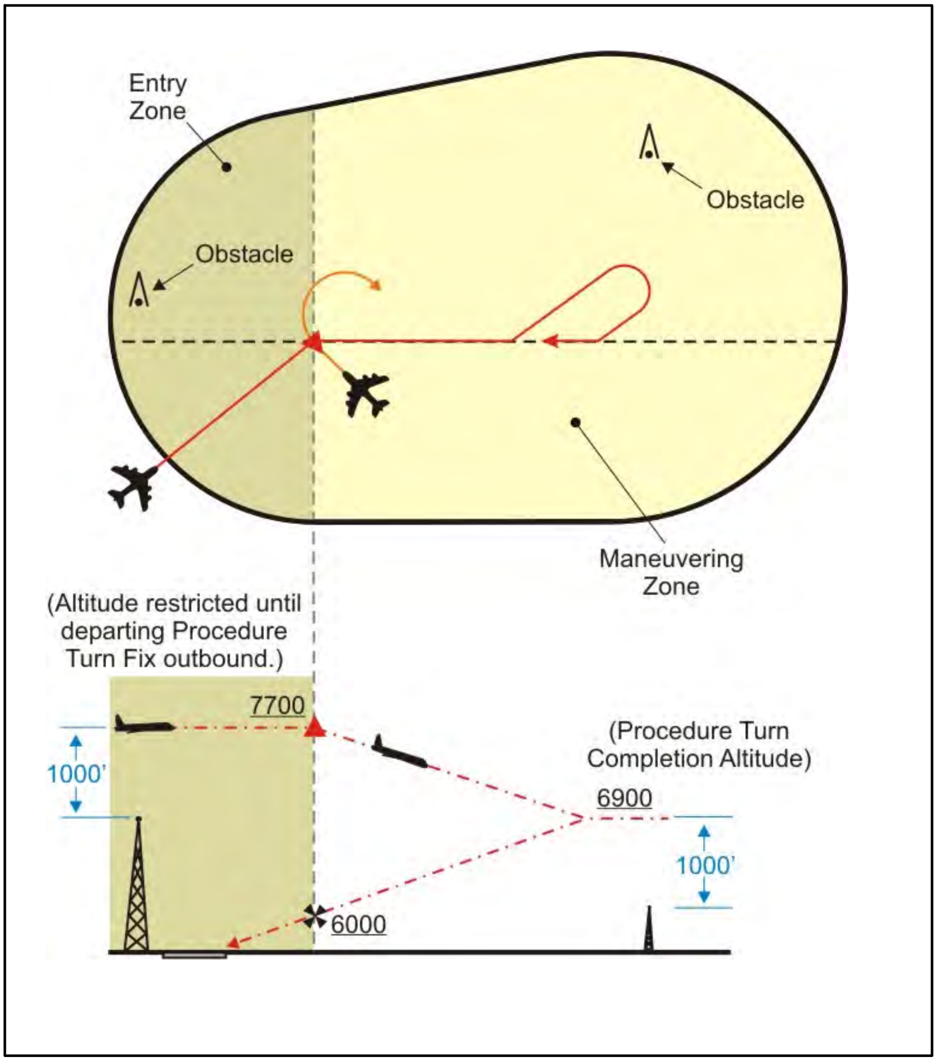
FIG ENR 1.5−11



8.1.5 A holding pattern in lieu of procedure turn may be specified for course reversal in some procedures. In such cases, the holding pattern is established over an intermediate fix or a final approach fix. The holding pattern distance or time specified in the profile view must be observed. For a hold−in−lieu−of−PT, the holding pattern direction must be flown as depicted and the specified leg length/timing must not be exceeded. Maximum holding airspeed limitations as set forth for all holding patterns apply. The holding pattern maneuver is completed when the aircraft is established on the inbound course after executing the appropriate entry. If cleared for the approach prior to returning to the holding fix, and the aircraft is at the prescribed altitude, additional circuits of the holding pattern are not necessary nor expected by ATC. If pilots elect to make additional circuits to lose excessive altitude or to become better established on course, it is their responsibility to so advise ATC upon receipt of their approach clearance.

8.1.6 A procedure turn is not required when an approach can be made directly from a specified intermediate fix to the final approach fix. In such cases, the term "NoPT" is used with the appropriate course and altitude to denote that the procedure turn is not required. If a procedure turn is desired, and when cleared to do so by ATC, descent below the procedure turn altitude should not be made until the aircraft is established on the inbound course, since some NoPT altitudes may be lower than the procedure turn altitudes.

FIG ENR 1.5−12


Entry
Zone
Obstacle
Obstacle
Maneuvering
Zone
(Altitude restricted until
departing Procedure
Turn Fix outbound.)
7700
1000'
(Procedure Turn
Completion Altitude)
6900
1000'
6000

8.2 Limitations on Procedure Turns

8.2.1 In the case of a radar initial approach to a final approach fix or position, or a timed approach from a holding fix, or where the procedure specifies NoPT, no pilot may make a procedure turn unless, when final approach clearance is received, the pilot so advises ATC and a clearance is received to executive a procedure turn.

8.2.2 When a teardrop procedure turn is depicted and a course reversal is required, this type turn must be executed.

8.2.3 When a holding pattern replaces a procedure turn, the holding pattern must be followed, except when RADAR VECTORING is provided or when NoPT is shown on the approach course. The recommended entry procedures will ensure the aircraft remains within the holding pattern's protected airspace. As in the procedure turn, the descent from the minimum holding pattern altitude to the final approach fix altitude (when lower) may not commence until the aircraft is established on the inbound course. Where a holding pattern is established in−lieu−of a procedure turn, the maximum holding pattern airspeeds apply.

NOTE−
See paragraph 1.9.2.1, Airspeeds.

8.2.4 The absence of the procedure turn barb in the plan view indicates that a procedure turn is not authorized for that procedure.

9. RNP AR (Authorization Required) Instrument Procedures

9.1 RNP AR procedures require authorization analogous to the special authorization required for Category II or III ILS procedures. All operators require specific authorization from the FAA to fly any RNP AR approach or departure procedure. The FAA issues RNP AR authorization via operations specification (OpSpec), management specification (Mspec), or letter of authorization (LOA). There are no exceptions. Operators can find comprehensive information on RNP AR aircraft eligibility, operating procedures, and training requirements in AC 90−101, Approval Guidance for RNP Procedures with AR.

9.2 Unique characteristics of RNP AR Operations Approach title. The FAA titles all RNP AR instrument approach procedures (IAP) as "RNAV (RNP) RWY XX." All RNP AR procedures will clearly state "Authorization Required" on the procedure chart.

9.3 RNP value. RNP AR procedures are characterized by use of a lateral Obstacle Evaluation Area (OEA) equal to two times the RNP value (2 x RNP) in nautical miles. No secondary lateral OEA or additional buffers are used. RNP AR procedures require a minimum lateral accuracy value of RNP 0.30. Each published line of minima in an RNP AR procedure has an associated RNP value that defines the procedure's lateral performance requirement in the Final Approach Segment. Each approved RNP AR operator's FAA−issued authorization will identify a minimum authorized RNP approach value This value may vary depending on aircraft configuration or operational procedures (e.g., use of flight director or autopilot).

9.4 Radius−to−fix (RF) legs. Many RNP AR IFPs contain RF legs. Aircraft eligibility for RF legs is required in any authorization for RNP AR operations.

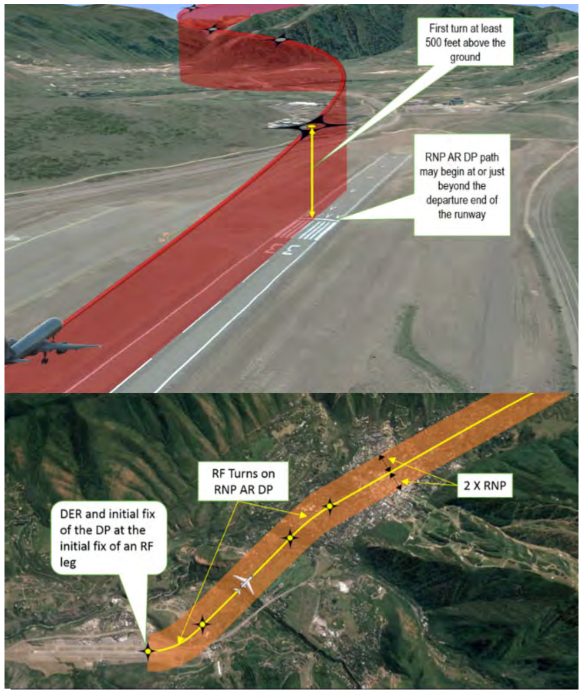
9.5 Missed Approach RNP value less than 1.00 NM. Some RNP AR IFPs require an RNP lateral accuracy value of less than 1.00 NM in the missed approach segment. The operator's FAA−issued RNP AR authorization will specify whether the operator may fly a missed approach procedure requiring a lateral accuracy value less than 1.00 NM. AC 90−101 identifies specific operating procedures and training requirements applicable to this aspect of RNP AR procedures.

9.6 Non−standard speeds or climb gradients. RNP AR approaches may require non−standard approach speeds and/or missed approach climb gradients. RNP AR approach charts will reflect any non−standard requirements and pilots must confirm they can meet those requirements before commencing the approach.

9.7 RNP AR Departure Procedures (RNP AR DP). RNP AR approach authorization is a mandatory prerequisite for an operator to be eligible to perform RNP AR DPs. RNP AR DPs can utilize a minimum RNP value of RNP

0.30, may include higher than standard climb gradients, and may include RF turns. Close in RF turns associated with RNP AR DPs may begin as soon as the departure end of the runway (DER). For specific eligibility guidance, operators should refer to AC 90−101.

FIG ENR 1.5−13
Example of an RNP AR DP



10. Side−step Maneuver

10.1 ATC may authorize a standard instrument approach procedure which serves either one of parallel runways that are separated by 1,200 feet or less followed by a straight-in landing on the adjacent runway.

10.2 Aircraft that will execute a side-step maneuver will be cleared for a specified approach procedure and landing on the adjacent parallel runway. Example, “cleared ILS runway 7 left approach, side-step to runway 7 right.” Pilots are expected to commence the side-step maneuver as soon as possible after the runway or runway environment is in sight. Compliance with minimum altitudes associated with stepdown fixes is expected even after the side−step maneuver is initiated.

NOTE−
Side−step minima are flown to a Minimum Descent Altitude (MDA) regardless of the approach authorized.

10.3 Landing minimums to the adjacent runway will be based on nonprecision criteria and therefore higher than the precision minimums to the primary runway, but will normally be lower than the published circling minimums.

11. Approach and Landing Minimums

11.1 Landing Minimums. The rules applicable to landing minimums are contained in 14 CFR Section 91.175. TBL ENR 1.5−2 may be used to convert RVR to ground or flight visibility. For converting RVR values that fall between listed values, use the next higher RVR value; do not interpolate. For example, when converting 1800 RVR, use 2400 RVR with the resultant visibility of $^1/_2$ mile.

TBL ENR 1.5−2
RVR Value Conversions

RVR	Visibility (statute miles)
1600	$^1/_4$
2400	$^1/_2$
3200	$^5/_8$
4000	$^3/_4$
4500	$^7/_8$
5000	1
6000	1 $^1/_4$

11.1.1 Aircraft approach category means a grouping of aircraft based on a speed of V_{REF} at the maximum certified landing weight, if specified, or if V_{REF} is not specified, 1.3_{VSO} at the maximum certified landing weight. V_{REF}, V_{SO}, and the maximum certified landing weight are those values as established for the aircraft by the certification authority of the country of registry. A pilot must maneuver the aircraft within the circling approach protected area (see FIG ENR 1.5−14) to achieve the obstacle and terrain clearances provided by procedure design criteria.

11.1.2 In addition to pilot techniques for maneuvering, one acceptable method to reduce the risk of flying out of the circling approach protected area is to use either the minima corresponding to the category determined during certification or minima associated with a higher category. Helicopters may use Category A minima. If it is necessary to operate at a speed in excess of the upper limit of the speed range for an aircraft's category, the minimums for the higher category should be used. This may occur with certain aircraft types operating in heavy/gusty wind, icing, or non−normal conditions. For example, an airplane which fits into Category B, but is circling to land at a speed of 145 knots, should use the approach Category D minimums. As an additional example, a Category A airplane (or helicopter) which is operating at 130 knots on a straight−in approach should use the approach Category C minimums.

11.1.3 A pilot who chooses an alternative method when it is necessary to maneuver at a speed that exceeds the category speed limit (for example, where higher category minimums are not published) should consider the following factors that can significantly affect the actual ground track flown:

11.1.3.1 Bank angle. For example, at 165 knots groundspeed, the radius of turn increases from 4,194 feet using 30 degrees of bank to 6,654 feet when using 20 degrees of bank. When using a shallower bank angle, it may be necessary to modify the flightpath or indicated airspeed to remain within the circling approach protected area. Pilots should be aware that excessive bank angle can lead to a loss of aircraft control.

11.1.3.2 Indicated airspeed. Procedure design criteria typically utilize the highest speed for a particular category. If a pilot chooses to operate at a higher speed, other factors should be modified to ensure that the aircraft remains within the circling approach protected area.

11.1.3.3 Wind speed and direction. For example, it is not uncommon to maneuver the aircraft to a downwind leg where the groundspeed will be considerably higher than the indicated airspeed. Pilots must carefully plan the initiation of all turns to ensure that the aircraft remains within the circling approach protected area.

11.1.3.4 Pilot technique. Pilots frequently have many options with regard to flightpath when conducting circling approaches. Sound planning and judgment are vital to proper execution. The lateral and vertical path to be flown should be carefully considered using current weather and terrain information to ensure that the aircraft remains within the circling approach protected area.

11.1.4 It is important to remember that 14 CFR Section 91.175(c) requires that "where a DA/DH or MDA is applicable, no pilot may operate an aircraft below the authorized MDA or continue an approach below the authorized DA/DH unless the aircraft is continuously in a position from which a descent to a landing on the intended runway can be made at a normal rate of descent using normal maneuvers, and for operations conducted under Part 121 or Part 135 unless that descent rate will allow touchdown to occur within the touchdown zone of the runway of intended landing."

11.1.5 See the following category limits:

11.1.5.1 Category A: Speed less than 91 knots.

11.1.5.2 Category B: Speed 91 knots or more but less than 121 knots.

11.1.5.3 Category C: Speed 121 knots or more but less than 141 knots.

11.1.5.4 Category D: Speed 141 knots or more but less than 166 knots.

11.1.5.5 Category E: Speed 166 knots or more.

NOTE−
V_{REF} in the above definition refers to the speed used in establishing the approved landing distance under the airworthiness regulations constituting the type certification basis of the airplane, regardless of whether that speed for a particular airplane is 1.3 V_{SO}, 1.23 V_{SR}, or some higher speed required for airplane controllability. This speed, at the maximum certificated landing weight, determines the lowest applicable approach category for all approaches regardless of actual landing weight.

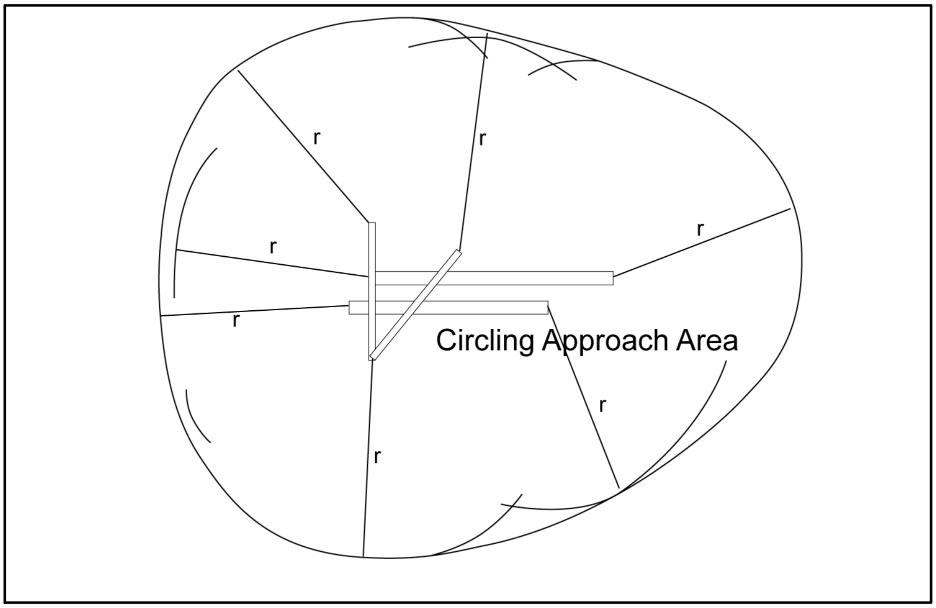
11.2 Published Approach Minimums. Approach minimums are published for different aircraft categories and consist of a minimum altitude (DA, DH, MDA) and required visibility. These minimums are determined by applying the appropriate TERPS criteria. When a fix is incorporated in a nonprecision final segment, two sets of minimums may be published; one for the pilot that is able to identify the fix, and a second for the pilot that cannot. Two sets of minimums may also be published when a second altimeter source is used in the procedure. When a nonprecision procedure incorporates both a stepdown fix in the final segment and a second altimeter source, two sets of minimums are published to account for the stepdown fix and a note addresses minimums for the second altimeter source.

11.3 Obstacle Clearance. Final approach obstacle clearance is provided from the start of the final segment to the runway or missed approach point, whichever occurs last. Side-step obstacle protection is provided by increasing the width of the final approach obstacle clearance area.

11.3.1 Circling approach protected areas are defined by the tangential connection of arcs drawn from each runway end (see FIG ENR 1.5−14). Circling approach protected areas developed prior to late 2012 used fixed radius distances, dependent on aircraft approach category, as shown in the table on page B2 of the U.S. TPP. The approaches using standard circling approach areas can be identified by the absence of the "negative C" symbol on the circling line of minima. Circling approach protected areas developed after late 2012 use the radius distance shown in the table on page B2 of the U.S. TPP, dependent on aircraft approach category, and the altitude of the circling MDA, which accounts for true airspeed increase with altitude. The approaches using expanded circling approach areas can be identified by the presence of the "negative C" symbol on the circling line of minima (see FIG ENR 1.5−15). Because of obstacles near the airport, a portion of the circling area may be restricted by a procedural note; for example, "Circling NA E of RWY 17−35." Obstacle clearance is provided at the published minimums (MDA) for the pilot who makes a straight−in approach, side−steps, or circles. Once below the MDA the pilot must see and avoid obstacles. Executing the missed approach after starting to maneuver usually places the aircraft beyond the MAP. The aircraft is clear of obstacles when at or above the MDA while inside the circling area, but simply joining the missed approach ground track from the circling maneuver may not provide vertical obstacle clearance once the aircraft exits the circling area. Additional climb inside the circling area may be required before joining the missed approach track. See ENR 1.5−27., Missed Approach, for additional considerations when starting a missed approach at other than the MAP.

FIG ENR 1.5−14

Final Approach Obstacle Clearance



NOTE−

Circling approach area radii vary according to approach category and MSL circling altitude due to TAS changes − see FIG ENR 1.5−15.

FIG ENR 1.5−15

Standard and Expanded Circling Approach Radii in the U.S. TPP

STANDARD CIRCLING APPROACH MANEUVERING RADIUS

Circling approach protected areas developed prior to late 2012 used the radius distances shown in the following table, expressed in nautical miles (NM), dependent on aircraft approach category. The approaches using standard circling approach areas can be identified by the absence of the C symbol on the circling line of minima.

Circling MDA in feet MSL	Approach Category and Circling Radius (NM)				
	CAT A	CAT B	CAT C	CAT D	CAT E
All Altitudes	1.3	1.5	1.7	2.3	4.5

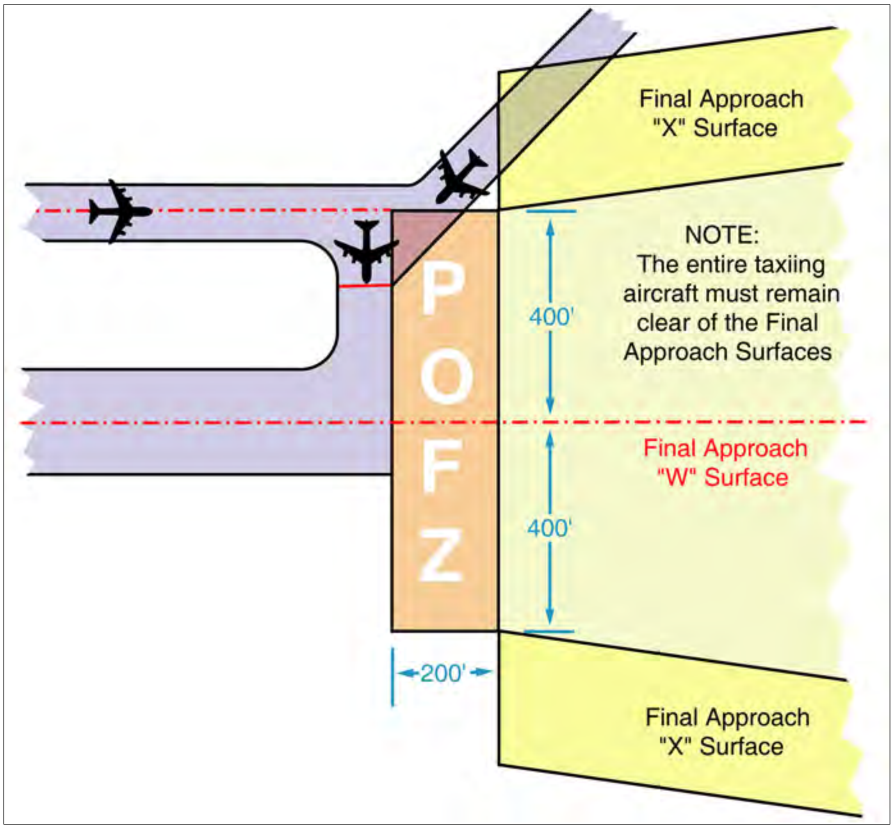
C EXPANDED CIRCLING APPROACH MANEUVERING AIRSPACE RADIUS

Circling approach protected areas developed after late 2012 use the radius distance shown in the following table, expressed in nautical miles (NM), dependent on aircraft approach category, and the altitude of the circling MDA, which accounts for true airspeed increase with altitude. The approaches using expanded circling approach areas can be identified by the presence of the C symbol on the circling line of minima.

Circling MDA in feet MSL	Approach Category and Circling Radius (NM)				
	CAT A	CAT B	CAT C	CAT D	CAT E
1000 or less	1.3	1.7	2.7	3.6	4.5
1001-3000	1.3	1.8	2.8	3.7	4.6
3001-5000	1.3	1.8	2.9	3.8	4.8
5001-7000	1.3	1.9	3.0	4.0	5.0
7001-9000	1.4	2.0	3.2	4.2	5.3
9001 and above	1.4	2.1	3.3	4.4	5.5

FIG ENR 1.5−16

Precision Obstacle Free Zone (POFZ)



11.3.2 Precision Obstacle Free Zone (POFZ). A volume of airspace above an area beginning at the runway threshold, at the threshold elevation, and centered on the extended runway centerline. The POFZ is 200 feet (60m) long and 800 feet (240m) wide. The POFZ must be clear when an aircraft on a vertically guided final approach is within 2 nautical miles of the runway threshold and the official weather observation is a ceiling below 250 feet or visibility less than 3/4 statute mile (SM) (or runway visual range below 4,000 feet). If the POFZ is not clear, the MINIMUM authorized height above touchdown (HAT) and visibility is 250 feet and 3/4 SM. The POFZ is considered clear even if the wing of the aircraft holding on a taxiway waiting for runway clearance penetrates the POFZ; however, neither the fuselage nor the tail may infringe on the POFZ. The POFZ is applicable at all runway ends including displaced thresholds. (See FIG ENR 1.5−16.)

11.4 Straight−In Minimums are shown on the IAP when the final approach course is within 30 degrees of the runway alignment and a normal descent can be made from the IFR altitude shown on the IAP to the runway surface. When either the normal rate of descent or the runway alignment factor of 30 degrees is exceeded, a straight−in minimum is not published and a circling minimum applies. The fact that a straight−in minimum is not published does not preclude pilots from landing straight−in if they have the active runway in sight and have sufficient time to make a normal approach for landing. Under such conditions and when ATC has cleared them for landing on that runway, pilots are not expected to circle even though only circling minimums are published. If they desire to circle, they should advise ATC.

11.5 Side−Step Maneuver Minimums. Landing minimums for a side−step maneuver to the adjacent runway will normally be higher than the minimums to the primary runway.

11.6 Circling Minimums. In some busy terminal areas, ATC may not allow circling and circling minimums will not be published. Published circling minimums provide obstacle clearance when pilots remain within the appropriate area of protection. Pilots should remain at or above the circling altitude until the aircraft is continuously in a position from which a descent to a landing on the intended runway can be made at a normal rate of descent using normal maneuvers. Circling may require maneuvers at low altitude, at low airspeed, and in marginal weather conditions. Pilots must use sound judgment, have an in−depth knowledge of their capabilities, and fully understand the aircraft performance to determine the exact circling maneuver since weather, unique airport design, and the aircraft position, altitude, and airspeed must all be considered. The following basic rules apply:

11.6.1 Maneuver the shortest path to the base or downwind leg, as appropriate, considering existing weather conditions. There is no restriction from passing over the airport or other runways.

11.6.2 It should be recognized that circling maneuvers may be made while VFR or other flying is in progress at the airport. Standard left turns or specific instruction from the controller for maneuvering must be considered when circling to land.

11.6.3 At airports without a control tower, it may be desirable to fly over the airport to observe wind and turn indicators and other traffic which may be on the runway or flying in the vicinity of the airport.

REFERENCE−
AC 90−66A, Recommended Standards Traffic patterns for Aeronautical Operations at Airports without Operating Control Towers.

11.6.4 The missed approach point (MAP) varies depending upon the approach flown. For vertically guided approaches, the MAP is at the decision altitude/decision height. Non−vertically guided and circling procedures share the same MAP and the pilot determines this MAP by timing from the final approach fix, by a fix, a NAVAID, or a waypoint. Circling from a GLS, an ILS without a localizer line of minima or an RNAV (GPS) approach without an LNAV line of minima is prohibited.

11.7 Instrument Approaches at a Military Field. When instrument approaches are conducted by civil aircraft at military airports, they must be conducted in accordance with the procedures and minimums approved by the military agency having jurisdiction over the airport.

12. Instrument Approach Procedure (IAP) Charts

12.1 14 CFR Section 91.175(a), Instrument approaches to civil airports, requires the use of SIAPs prescribed for the airport in 14 CFR Part 97 unless otherwise authorized by the Administrator (including ATC). If there are military procedures published at a civil airport, aircraft operating under 14 CFR Part 91 must use the civil procedure(s). Civil procedures are defined with "FAA" in parenthesis; e.g., (FAA), at the top, center of the procedure chart. DOD procedures are defined using the abbreviation of the applicable military service in parenthesis; for example, (USAF), (USN), (USA). 14 CFR Section 91.175(g), Military airports, requires civil pilots flying into or out of military airports to comply with the IAP's and takeoff and landing minimums prescribed by the authority having jurisdiction at those airports. Unless an emergency exists, civil aircraft operating at military airports normally require advance authorization, commonly referred to as "Prior Permission Required" or "PPR." Information on obtaining a PPR for a particular military airport can be found in the Chart Supplement.

NOTE−
Civil aircraft may conduct practice VFR approaches using DOD instrument approach procedures when approved by the air traffic controller.

12.1.1 IAPs (standard and special, civil and military) are based on joint civil and military criteria contained in the U.S. Standard for TERPS. The design of IAPs based on criteria contained in TERPS, takes into account the interrelationship between airports, facilities, and the surrounding environment, terrain, obstacles, noise sensitivity, etc. Appropriate altitudes, courses, headings, distances, and other limitations are specified and, once approved, the procedures are published and distributed by government and commercial cartographers as instrument approach charts.

12.1.2 Not all IAPs are published in chart form. Radar IAPs are established where requirements and facilities exist but they are printed in tabular form in appropriate U.S. Government Flight Information Publications.

12.1.3 The navigation equipment required to join and fly an instrument approach procedure is indicated by the title of the procedure and notes on the chart.

12.1.3.1 Straight−in IAPs are identified by the navigational system providing the final approach guidance and the runway to which the approach is aligned (e.g., VOR RWY 13). Circling only approaches are identified by the navigational system providing final approach guidance and a letter (e.g., VOR A). More than one navigational system separated by a slash indicates that more than one type of equipment must be used to execute the final approach (e.g., VOR/DME RWY 31). More than one navigational system separated by the word "or" indicates either type of equipment may be used to execute the final approach (for example, VOR or GPS RWY 15).

NOTE−
This procedure identification method has changed and these procedures will be revised in the course of the normal procedure amendment process. The slash and equipment (e.g., /DME) information will be removed with future amendments. Pilots should review the procedure's notes, planview annotations,and PBN/equipment requirements boxes to determine the capability needed to accomplish the procedure.

12.1.3.2 In some cases, other types of navigation systems including radar may be required to execute other portions of the approach or to navigate to the IAF (e.g., an NDB procedure turn to an ILS, an NDB in the missed approach, or radar required to join the procedure or identify a fix). When radar or other equipment is required for procedure entry from the en route environment, a note will be charted in the planview of the approach procedure chart (for example, RADAR REQUIRED or ADF REQUIRED). When radar or other equipment is required on portions of the procedure outside the final approach segment, including the missed approach, a note will be charted in the notes box of the pilot briefing portion of the approach chart (for example, RADAR REQUIRED or DME REQUIRED). Notes are not charted when VOR is required outside the final approach segment. Pilots should ensure that the aircraft is equipped with the required NAVAID(s) in order to execute the approach, including the missed approach.

NOTE−
Some military (i.e., U.S. Air Force and U.S. Navy) IAPs have these "additional equipment required" notes charted only in the planview of the approach procedure and do not conform to the same application standards used by the FAA.

12.1.3.3 The FAA has initiated a program to provide a new notation for LOC approaches when charted on an ILS approach requiring other navigational aids to fly the final approach course. The LOC minimums will be annotated with the NAVAID required (for example, "DME Required" or "RADAR Required"). During the transition period, ILS approaches will still exist without the annotation.

12.1.3.4 Many ILS approaches having minima based on RVR are eligible for a landing minimum of RVR 1800. Some of these approaches are to runways that have touchdown zone and centerline lights. For many runways that do not have touchdown and centerline lights, it is still possible to allow a landing minimum of RVR 1800. For these runways, the normal ILS minimum of RVR 2400 can be annotated with a single or double asterisk or the dagger symbol "†"; for example "** 696/24 200 (200/1/2)." A note is included on the chart stating "**RVR 1800 authorized with use of FD or AP or HUD to DA." The pilot must use the flight director, or autopilot with an approved approach coupler, or head up display to decision altitude or to the initiation of a missed approach. In the interest of safety, single pilot operators should not fly approaches to 1800 RVR minimums on runways without touchdown and centerline lights using only a flight director, unless accompanied by the use of an autopilot with an approach coupler.

12.1.3.5 The naming of multiple approaches of the same type to the same runway is also changing. Multiple approaches with the same guidance will be annotated with an alphabetical suffix beginning at the end of the alphabet and working backwards for subsequent procedures (e.g., ILS Z RWY 28, ILS Y RWY 28, etc.). The existing annotations such as ILS 2 RWY 28 or Silver ILS RWY 28 will be phased out and replaced with the new designation. The Cat II and Cat III designations are used to differentiate between multiple ILSs to the same runway unless there are multiples of the same type.

12.1.3.6 RNAV (GPS) approaches to LNAV, LP, LNAV/VNAV and LPV lines of minima using WAAS and RNAV (GPS) approaches to LNAV and LNAV/VNAV lines of minima using GPS are charted as RNAV (GPS) RWY (Number) (e.g., RNAV (GPS) RWY 21).

12.1.3.7 Performance−Based Navigation (PBN) Box. As charts are updated, a procedure's PBN requirements and conventional equipment requirements will be prominently displayed in separate, standardized notes boxes.

For procedures with PBN elements, the PBN box will contain the procedure's navigation specification(s); and, if required: specific sensors or infrastructure needed for the navigation solution, any additional or advanced functional requirements, the minimum Required Navigation Performance (RNP) value, and any amplifying remarks. Items listed in this PBN box are REQUIRED for the procedure's PBN elements. For example, an ILS with an RNAV missed approach would require a specific capability to fly the missed approach portion of the procedure. That required capability will be listed in the PBN box. The separate Equipment Requirements box will list ground−based equipment requirements. On procedures with both PBN elements and equipment requirements, the PBN requirements box will be listed first. The publication of these notes will continue incrementally until all charts have been amended to comply with the new standard.

12.1.4 Approach minimums are based on the local altimeter setting for that airport, unless annotated otherwise; for example, Oklahoma City/Will Rogers World approaches are based on having a Will Rogers World altimeter setting. When a different altimeter source is required, or more than one source is authorized, it will be annotated on the approach chart; e.g., use Sidney altimeter setting, if not received, use Scottsbluff altimeter setting. Approach minimums may be raised when a nonlocal altimeter source is authorized. When more than one altimeter source is authorized, and the minima are different, they will be shown by separate lines in the approach minima box or a note; e.g., use Manhattan altimeter setting; when not available use Salina altimeter setting and increase all MDAs 40 feet. When the altimeter must be obtained from a source other than air traffic a note will indicate the source; e.g., Obtain local altimeter setting on CTAF. When the altimeter setting(s) on which the approach is based is not available, the approach is not authorized. Baro−VNAV must be flown using the local altimeter setting only. Where no local altimeter is available, the LNAV/VNAV line will still be published for use by WAAS receivers with a note that Baro−VNAV is not authorized. When a local and at least one other altimeter setting source is authorized and the local altimeter is not available Baro−VNAV is not authorized; however, the LNAV/VNAV minima can still be used by WAAS receivers using the alternate altimeter setting source.

NOTE−
Barometric Vertical Navigation (baro−VNAV). An RNAV system function which uses barometric altitude information from the aircraft's altimeter to compute and present a vertical guidance path to the pilot. The specified vertical path is computed as a geometric path, typically computed between two waypoints or an angle based computation from a single waypoint. Further guidance may be found in Advisory Circular 90−105.

12.1.5 A pilot adhering to the altitudes, flight paths, and weather minimums depicted on the IAP chart or vectors and altitudes issued by the radar controller, is assured of terrain and obstruction clearance and runway or airport alignment during approach for landing.

12.1.6 IAPs are designed to provide an IFR descent from the en route environment to a point where a safe landing can be made. They are prescribed and approved by appropriate civil or military authority to ensure a safe descent during instrument flight conditions at a specific airport. It is important that pilots understand these procedures and their use prior to attempting to fly instrument approaches.

12.1.7 TERPS criteria are provided for the following types of instrument approach procedures:

12.1.7.1 Precision Approach (PA). An instrument approach based on a navigation system that provides course and glidepath deviation information meeting the precision standards of ICAO Annex 10. For example, PAR, ILS,and GLS are precision approaches.

12.1.7.2 Approach with Vertical Guidance (APV). An instrument approach based on a navigation system that is not required to meet the precision approach standards of ICAO Annex 10 but provides course and glidepath deviation information. For example, Baro−VNAV, LDA with glidepath, LNAV/VNAV and LPV are APV approaches.

12.1.7.3 Nonprecision Approach (NPA). An instrument approach based on a navigation system which provides course deviation information, but no glidepath deviation information. For example, VOR, NDB and LNAV. As noted in subparagraph 12.10, Vertical Descent Angle (VDA) on Nonprecision Approaches, some approach procedures may provide a Vertical Descent Angle as an aid in flying a stabilized approach, without requiring its use in order to fly the procedure. This does not make the approach an APV procedure, since it must still be flown to an MDA and has not been evaluated with a glidepath.

12.2 The method used to depict prescribed altitudes on instrument approach charts differs according to techniques employed by different chart publishers. Prescribed altitudes may be depicted in four different configurations: minimum, maximum, mandatory, and recommended. The U.S. Government distributes charts produced by National Geospatial−Intelligence Agency (NGA) and FAA. Altitudes are depicted on these charts in the profile view with underscore, overscore, both or none to identify them as minimum, maximum, mandatory or recommended.

12.2.1 Minimum altitude will be depicted with the altitude value underscored. Aircraft are required to maintain altitude at or above the depicted value, for example, $\underline{3000}$.

12.2.2 Maximum altitude will be depicted with the altitude value overscored. Aircraft are required to maintain altitude at or below the depicted value, for example, $\overline{4000}$.

12.2.3 Mandatory altitude will be depicted with the altitude value both underscored and overscored. Aircraft are required to maintain altitude at the depicted value, for example, $\overline{\underline{5000}}$.

12.2.4 Recommended altitude will be depicted with no overscore or underscore. These altitudes are depicted for descent planning, for example, 6000.

NOTE−

1. *Pilots are cautioned to adhere to altitudes as prescribed because, in certain instances, they may be used as the basis for vertical separation of aircraft by ATC. When a depicted altitude is specified in the ATC clearance, that altitude becomes mandatory as defined above.*

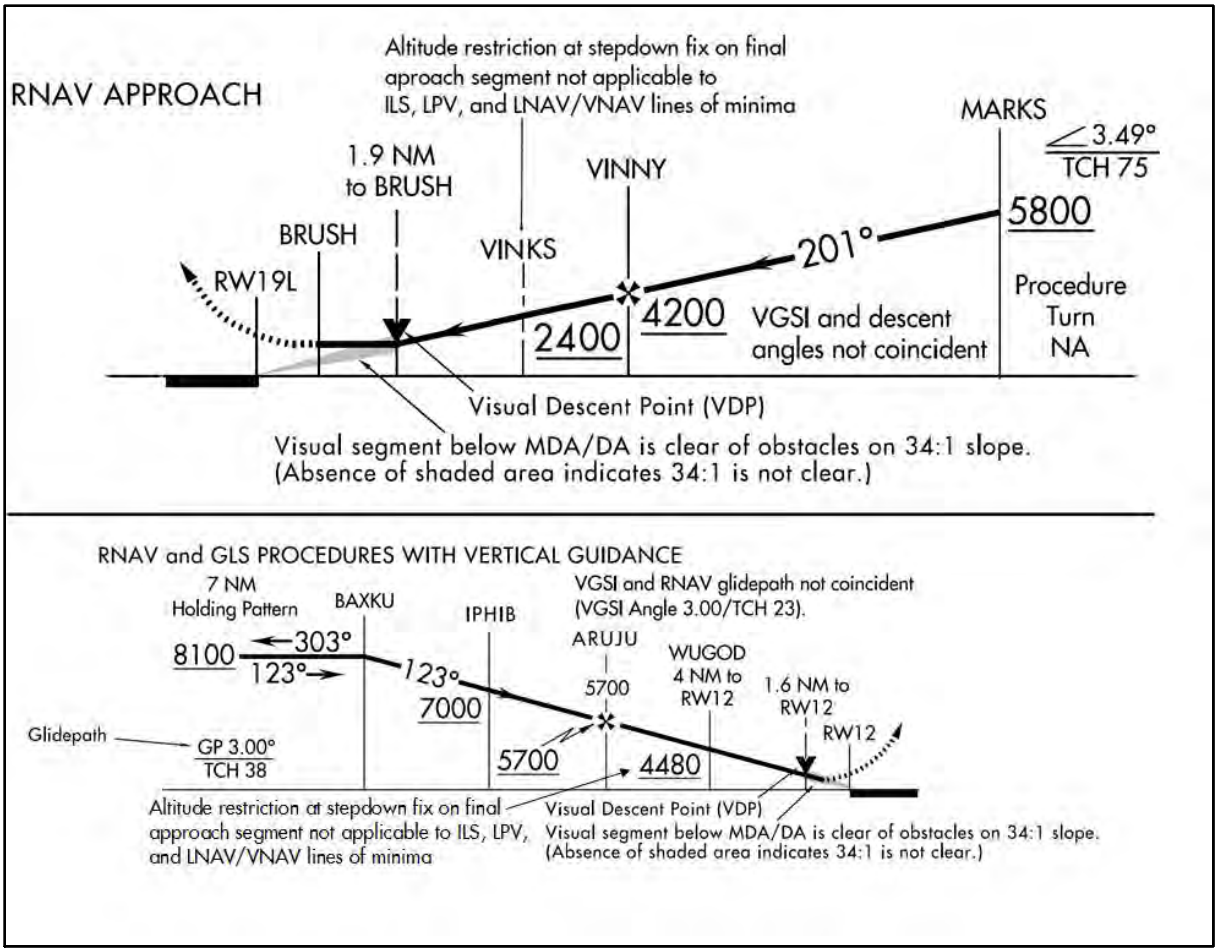
2. *The ILS glide slope is intended to be intercepted at the published glide slope intercept altitude. This point marks the PFAF and is depicted by the "lightning bolt" symbol on U.S. Government charts. Intercepting the glide slope at this altitude marks the beginning of the final approach segment and ensures required obstacle clearance during descent from the glide slope intercept altitude to the lowest published decision altitude for the approach. Interception and tracking of the glide slope prior to the published glide slope interception altitude does not necessarily ensure that minimum, maximum, and/or mandatory altitudes published for any preceding fixes will be complied with during the descent. If the pilot chooses to track the glide slope prior to the glide slope interception altitude, they remain responsible for complying with published altitudes for any preceding stepdown fixes encountered during the subsequent descent.*

3. *Approaches used for simultaneous (parallel) independent and simultaneous close parallel operations procedurally require descending on the glideslope from the altitude at which the approach clearance is issued (refer to ENR 1.5−19. and ENR 1.5−20.). For simultaneous close parallel (PRM) approaches, the Attention All Users Page (AAUP) may publish a note which indicates that descending on the glideslope/glidepath meets all crossing restrictions. However, if no such note is published, and for simultaneous independent approaches (4300 and greater runway separation) where an AAUP is not published, pilots are cautioned to monitor their descent on the glideslope/path outside of the PFAF to ensure compliance with published crossing restrictions during simultaneous operations.*

4. *When parallel approach courses are less than 2500 feet apart and reduced in-trail spacing is authorized for simultaneous dependent operations, a chart note will indicate that simultaneous operations require use of vertical guidance and that the pilot should maintain last assigned altitude until established on glide slope. These approaches procedurally require utilization of the ILS glide slope for wake turbulence mitigation. Pilots should not confuse these simultaneous dependent operations with (SOIA) simultaneous close parallel PRM approaches, where PRM appears in the approach title.*

12.2.5 Altitude restrictions depicted at stepdown fixes within the final approach segment are applicable only when flying a Non−Precision Approach to a straight−in or circling line of minima identified as an MDA. These altitude restrictions may be annotated with a note "LOC only" or "LNAV only." Stepdown fix altitude restrictions within the final approach segment do not apply to pilots using Precision Approach (ILS) or Approach with Vertical Guidance (LPV, LNAV/VNAV) lines of minima identified as a DA, since obstacle clearance on these approaches is based on the aircraft following the applicable vertical guidance. Pilots are responsible for adherence to stepdown fix altitude restrictions when outside the final approach segment (i.e., initial or intermediate segment), regardless of which type of procedure the pilot is flying. (See FIG ENR 1.5−17).

FIG ENR 1.5−17
Instrument Approach Procedure Stepdown Fixes



12.3 The **Minimum Safe Altitudes (MSA)** is published for emergency use on IAP or departure procedure (DP) graphic charts. MSAs provide 1,000 feet of clearance over all obstacles, but do not necessarily assure acceptable navigation signal coverage. The MSA depiction on the plan view of an approach chart or on a DP graphic chart contains the identifier of the center point of the MSA, the applicable radius of the MSA, a depiction of the sector(s), and the minimum altitudes above mean sea level which provide obstacle clearance. For conventional navigation systems, the MSA is normally based on the primary omnidirectional facility on which the IAP or DP graphic chart is predicated, but may be based on the airport reference point (ARP) if no suitable facility is available. For RNAV approaches or DP graphic charts, the MSA is based on an RNAV waypoint. MSAs normally have a 25 NM radius; however, for conventional navigation systems, this radius may be expanded to 30 NM if necessary to encompass the airport landing surfaces. A single sector altitude is normally established, however when the MSA is based on a facility and it is necessary to obtain relief from obstacles, an MSA with up to four sectors may be established.

12.4 Terminal Arrival Area (TAA)

12.4.1 The TAA provides a transition from the en route structure to the terminal environment with little required pilot/air traffic control interface for aircraft equipped with Area Navigation (RNAV) systems. A TAA provides minimum altitudes with standard obstacle clearance when operating within the TAA boundaries. TAAs are primarily used on RNAV approaches but may be used on an ILS approach when RNAV is the sole means for navigation to the IF; however, they are not normally used in areas of heavy concentration of air traffic.

12.4.2 The basic design of the RNAV procedure underlying the TAA is normally the "T" design (also called the "Basic T"). The "T" design incorporates two IAFs plus a dual purpose IF/IAF that functions as both an intermediate fix and an initial approach fix. The T configuration continues from the IF/IAF to the final approach fix (FAF) and then to the missed approach point (MAP). The two base leg IAFs are typically aligned in a straight-line perpendicular to the intermediate course connecting at the IF/IAF. A Hold-in-Lieu-of Procedure Turn (HILPT) is anchored at the IF/IAF and depicted on U.S. Government publications using the "hold−in−lieu −of−PT" holding pattern symbol. When the HILPT is necessary for course alignment and/or descent, the dual purpose IF/IAF serves as an IAF during the entry into the pattern. Following entry into the HILPT pattern and when flying a route or sector labeled "NoPT," the dual-purpose fix serves as an IF, marking the beginning of the Intermediate Segment. See FIG ENR 1.5−18 and FIG ENR 1.5−19 for the Basic "T" TAA configuration.

FIG ENR 1.5−18
Basic "T" Design

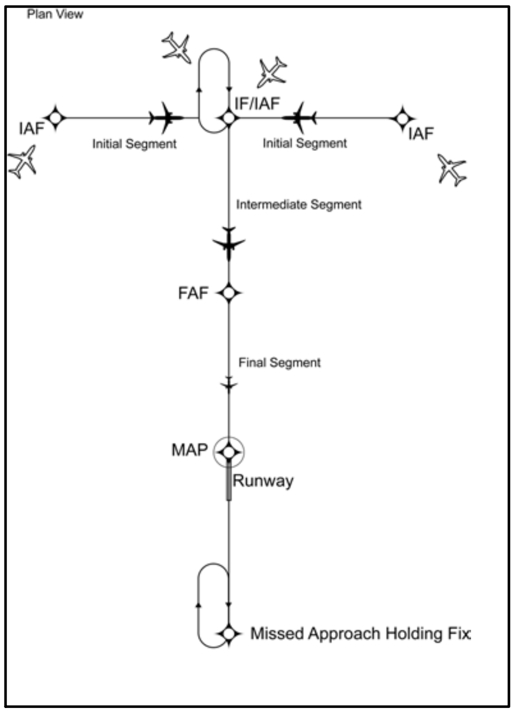
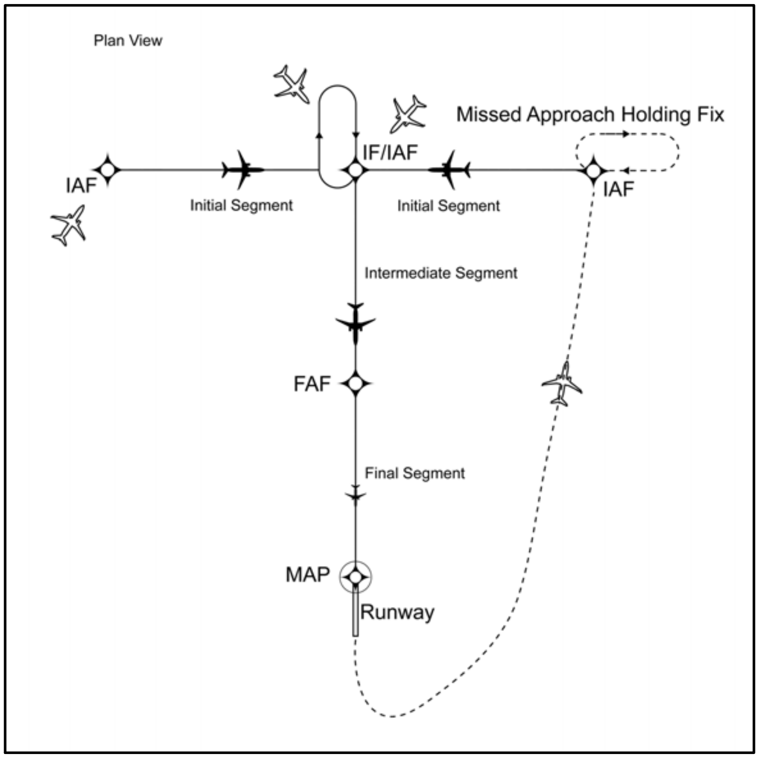


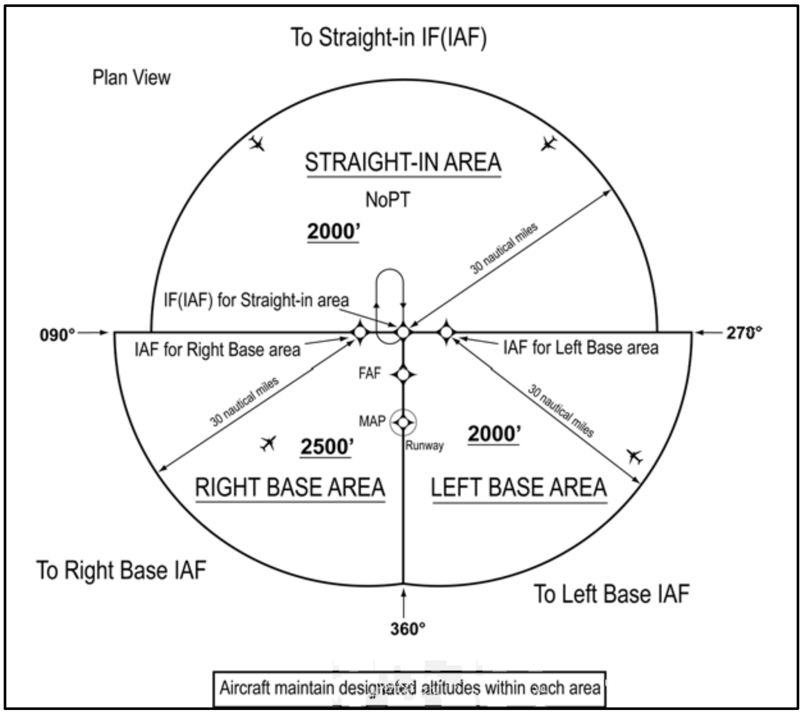
FIG ENR 1.5−19

Basic “T” Design



12.4.3 The standard TAA based on the “T” design consists of three areas defined by the Initial Approach Fix (IAF) legs and the intermediate segment course beginning at the IF/IAF. These areas are called the straight−in, left−base, and right−base areas. (See FIG ENR 1.5−20). TAA area lateral boundaries are identified by magnetic courses TO the IF/IAF. The straight−in area can be further divided into pie−shaped sectors with the boundaries identified by magnetic courses TO the (IF/ IAF), and may contain stepdown sections defined by arcs based on RNAV distances from the IF/IAF. (See FIG ENR 1.5−21). The right/left−base areas can only be subdivided using arcs based on RNAV distances from the IAFs for those areas.

FIG ENR 1.5−20
TAA Area



12.4.4 Entry from the terminal area onto the procedure is normally accomplished via a no procedure turn (NoPT) routing or via a course reversal maneuver. The published procedure will be annotated "NoPT" to indicate when the course reversal is not authorized when flying within a particular TAA sector. Otherwise, the pilot is expected to execute the course reversal under the provisions of 14 CFR Section 91.175. The pilot may elect to use the course reversal pattern when it is not required by the procedure, but must receive clearance from air traffic control before beginning the procedure.

12.4.4.1 ATC should not clear an aircraft to the left base leg or right base leg IAF within a TAA at an intercept angle exceeding 90 degrees. Pilots must not execute the HILPT course reversal when the sector or procedure segment is labeled "NoPT."

12.4.4.2 ATC may clear aircraft direct to the fix labeled IF/IAF if the course to the IF/IAF is within the straight-in sector labeled "NoPT" and the intercept angle does not exceed 90 degrees. Pilots are expected to proceed direct to the IF/IAF and accomplish a straight-in approach. Do not execute HILPT course reversal. Pilots are also expected to fly the straight−in approach when ATC provides radar vectors and monitoring to the IF/IAF and issues a "straight-in" approach clearance; otherwise, the pilot *is expected* to execute the HILPT course reversal.

12.4.4.3 On rare occasions, ATC may clear the aircraft for an approach at the airport without specifying the approach procedure by name or by a specific approach (for example, "cleared RNAV Runway 34 approach") without specifying a particular IAF. In either case, the pilot should proceed direct to the IAF or to the IF/IAF associated with the sector that the aircraft will enter the TAA and join the approach course from that point and if required by that sector (i.e., sector is not labeled "NoPT), complete the HILPT course reversal.

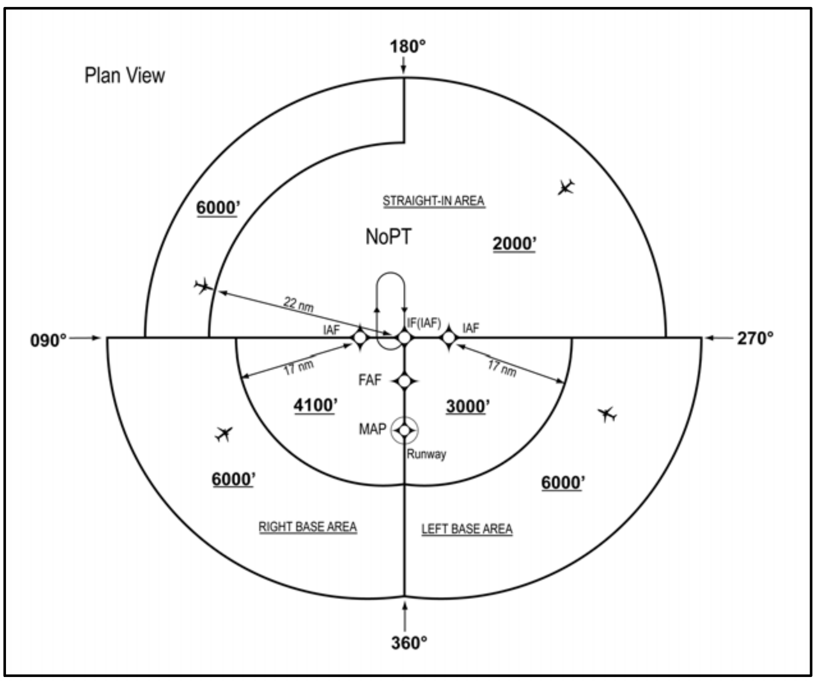
NOTE−
If approaching with a TO bearing that is on a sector boundary, the pilot is expected to proceed in accordance with a "NoPT" routing unless otherwise instructed by ATC.

12.4.5 Altitudes published within the TAA replace the MSA altitude. However, unlike MSA altitudes the TAA altitudes are operationally usable altitudes. These altitudes provide at least 1,000 feet of obstacle clearance, more in mountainous areas. It is important that the pilot knows which area of the TAA the aircraft will enter in order to comply with the minimum altitude requirements. The pilot can determine which area of the TAA the aircraft will enter by determining the magnetic bearing of the aircraft TO the fix labeled IF/IAF. The bearing should then be compared to the published lateral boundary bearings that define the TAA areas. Do not use magnetic bearing to the right-base or left-base IAFs to determine position.

12.4.5.1 An ATC clearance direct to an IAF or to the IF/IAF without an approach clearance does not authorize a pilot to descend to a lower TAA altitude. If a pilot desires a lower altitude without an approach clearance, request the lower TAA altitude from ATC. Pilots not sure of the clearance should confirm their clearance with ATC or request a specific clearance. Pilots entering the TAA with two−way radio communications failure (14 CFR Section 91.185, IFR Operations: Two−way Radio Communications Failure), must maintain the highest altitude prescribed by Section 91.185(c)(2) until arriving at the appropriate IAF.

12.4.5.2 Once cleared for the approach, pilots may descend in the TAA sector to the minimum altitude depicted within the defined area/subdivision, unless instructed otherwise by air traffic control. Pilots should plan their descent within the TAA to permit a normal descent from the IF/IAF to the FAF. In FIG ENR 1.5−21, pilots within the left or right−base areas are expected to maintain a minimum altitude of 6,000 feet until within 17 NM of the associated IAF. After crossing the 17 NM arc, descent is authorized to the lower charted altitudes. Pilots approaching from the northwest are expected to maintain a minimum altitude of 6,000 feet, and when within 22 NM of the IF/IAF, descend to a minimum altitude of 2,000 feet MSL until crossing the IF/IAF.

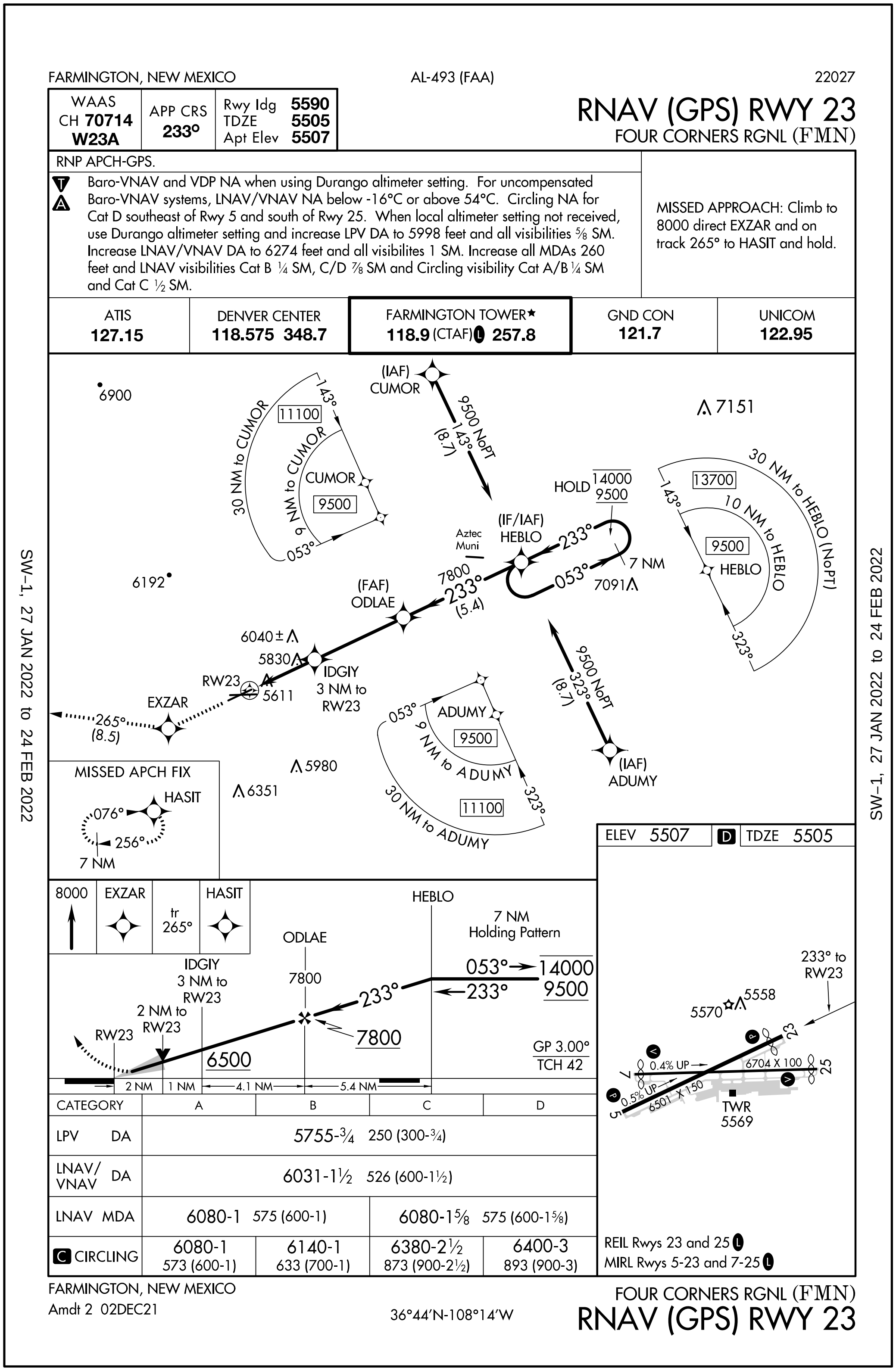
FIG ENR 1.5−21
Sectored TAA Areas



12.4.6 U.S. Government charts depict TAAs using icons located in the plan view outside the depiction of the actual approach procedure. (See FIG ENR 1.5−22). Use of icons is necessary to avoid obscuring any portion of the "T" procedure (altitudes, courses, minimum altitudes, etc.). The icon for each TAA area will be located and oriented on the plan view with respect to the direction of arrival to the approach procedure, and will show all TAA minimum altitudes and sector/radius subdivisions. The IAF for each area of the TAA is included on the icon where it appears on the approach to help the pilot orient the icon to the approach procedure. The IAF name and the distance of the TAA area boundary from the IAF are included on the outside arc of the TAA area icon.

FIG ENR 1.5−22

RNAV (GPS) Approach Chart



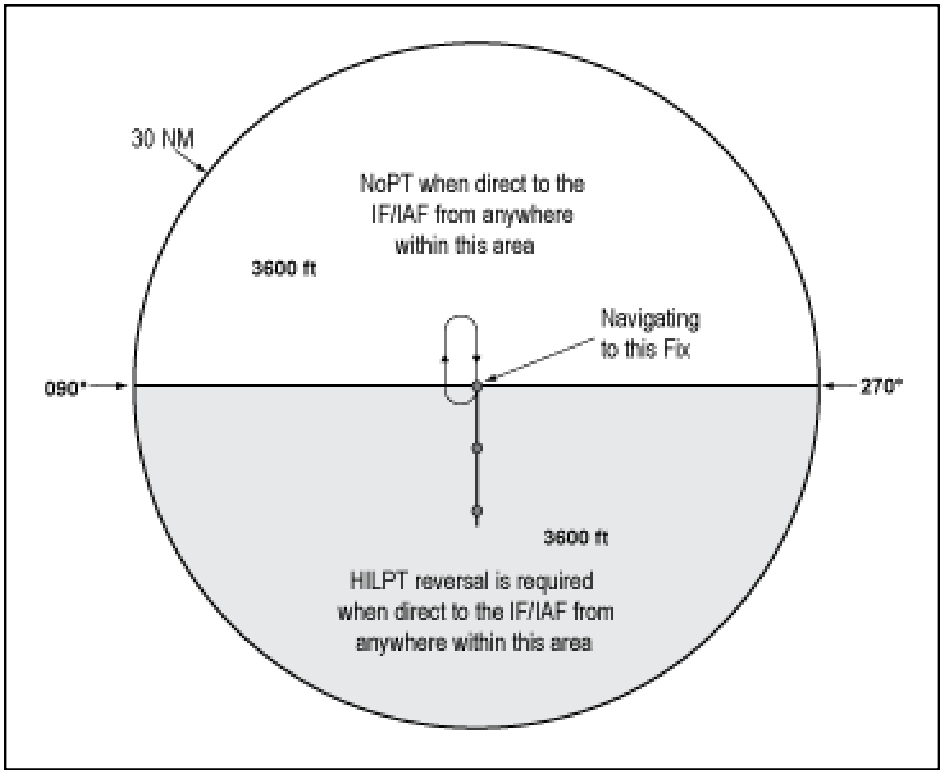
CATEGORY	A	B	C	D
LPV DA	5755-¾ 250 (300-¾)			
LNAV/VNAV DA	6031-1½ 526 (600-1½)			
LNAV MDA	6080-1 575 (600-1)		6080-1⅝ 575 (600-1⅝)	
CIRCLING	6080-1 573 (600-1)	6140-1 633 (700-1)	6380-2½ 873 (900-2½)	6400-3 893 (900-3)

12.4.7 TAAs may be modified from the standard size and shape to accommodate operational or ATC requirements. Some areas may be eliminated, while the other areas are expanded. The "T" design may be modified by the procedure designers where required by terrain or ATC considerations. For instance, the "T" design may appear more like a regularly or irregularly shaped "Y," upside down "L," or an "I."

12.4.7.1 FIG ENR 1.5−23 depicts a TAA without a left base leg and right base leg. In this generalized example, pilots approaching on a bearing TO the IF/IAF from 271 clockwise to 089 are expected to execute a course reversal because the amount of turn required at the IF/IAF exceeds 90 degrees. The term "NoPT" will be annotated on the boundary of the TAA icon for the other portion of the TAA.

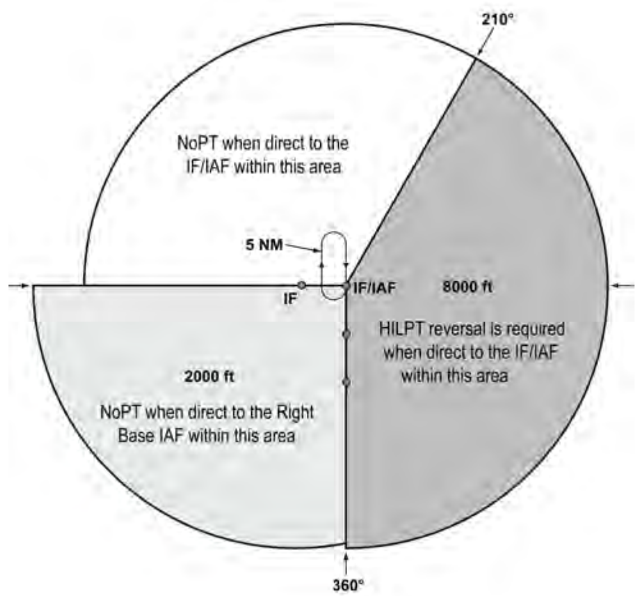
FIG ENR 1.5−23

TAA with Left and Right Base Areas Eliminated



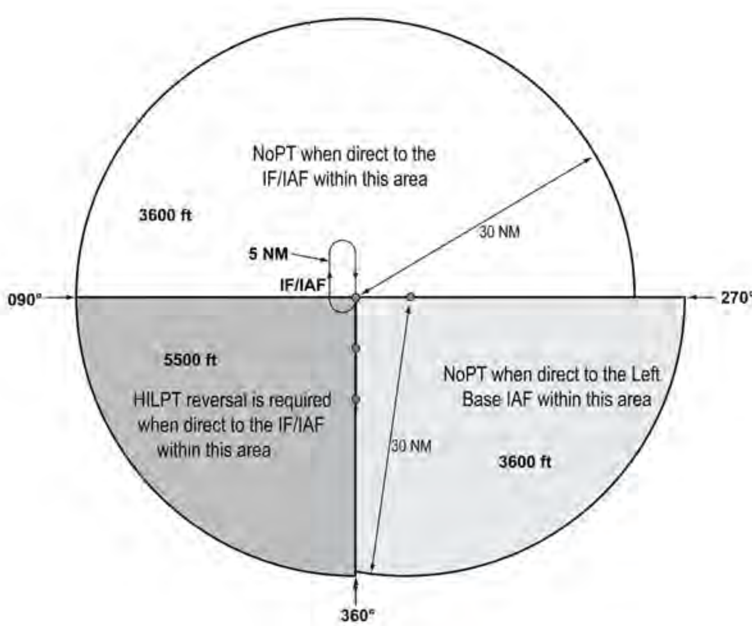
12.4.7.2 FIG ENR 1.5−24 depicts another TAA modification that pilots may encounter. In this generalized example, the left base area and part of the straight-in area have been eliminated. Pilots operating within the TAA between 210 clockwise to 360 bearing TO the IF/IAF are expected to proceed direct to the IF/IAF and then execute the course reversal in order to properly align the aircraft for entry onto the intermediate segment or to avoid an excessive descent rate. Aircraft operating in areas from 001 clockwise to 090 bearing TO the IF/IAF are expected to proceed direct to the right base IAF and not execute course reversal maneuver. Aircraft cleared direct the IF/IAF by ATC in this sector will be expected to accomplish HILTP. Aircraft operating in areas 091 clockwise to 209 bearing TO the IF/IAF are expected to proceed direct to the IF/IAF and not execute the course reversal. These two areas are annotated "NoPT" at the TAA boundary of the icon in these areas when displayed on the approach chart's plan view.

FIG ENR 1.5−24
TAA with Left Base and Part of Straight−In Area Eliminated



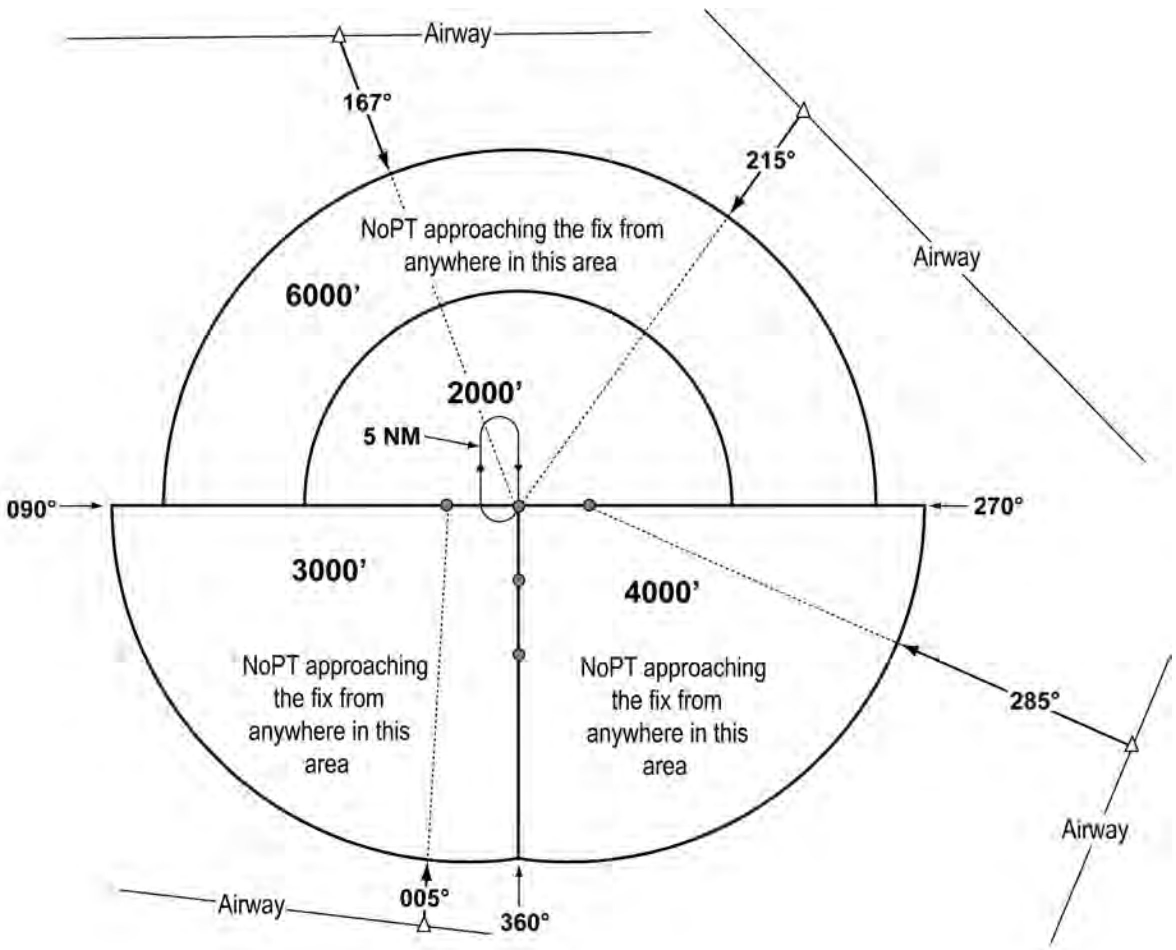
12.4.7.3 FIG ENR 1.5−25 depicts a TAA with right base leg and part of the straight-in area eliminated.

FIG ENR 1.5−25
TAA with Right Base Eliminated



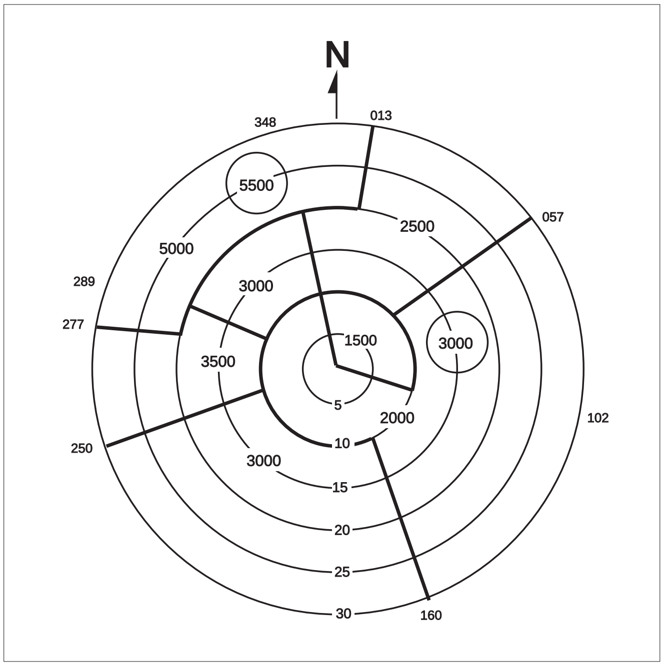
12.4.8 When an airway does not cross the lateral TAA boundaries, a feeder route will be established from an airway fix or NAVAID to the TAA boundary to provide a transition from the en route structure to the appropriate IAF. Each feeder route will terminate at the TAA boundary and will be aligned along a path pointing to the associated IAF. Pilots should descend to the TAA altitude after crossing the TAA boundary and cleared for the approach by ATC. (See FIG ENR 1.5−26.)

FIG ENR 1.5−26
Examples of a TAA with Feeders from an Airway



12.4.9 Each waypoint on the "T" is assigned a pronounceable 5−letter name, except the missed approach waypoint. These names are used for ATC communications, RNAV databases, and aeronautical navigation products. The missed approach waypoint is assigned a pronounceable name when it is not located at the runway threshold.

FIG ENR 1.5−27
Minimum Vectoring Altitude Charts



12.5 Minimum Vectoring Altitudes (MVAs) are established for use by ATC when radar ATC is exercised. MVA charts are prepared by air traffic facilities at locations where there are numerous different minimum IFR altitudes. Each MVA chart has sectors large enough to accommodate vectoring of aircraft within the sector at the MVA. Each sector boundary is at least 3 miles from the obstruction determining the MVA. To avoid a large sector with an excessively high MVA due to an isolated prominent obstruction, the obstruction may be enclosed in a buffer area whose boundaries are at least 3 miles from the obstruction. This is done to facilitate vectoring around the obstruction. (See FIG ENR 1.5−27.)

12.5.1 The minimum vectoring altitude in each sector provides 1,000 feet above the highest obstacle in nonmountainous areas and 2,000 feet above the highest obstacle in designated mountainous areas. Where lower MVAs are required in designated mountainous areas to achieve compatibility with terminal routes or to permit vectoring to an IAP, 1,000 feet of obstacle clearance may be authorized with the use of ATC Surveillance. The minimum vectoring altitude will provide at least 300 feet above the floor of controlled airspace.

NOTE−
OROCA is a published altitude which provides 1,000 feet of terrain and obstruction clearance in the US (2,000 feet of clearance in designated mountainous areas). These altitudes are not assessed for NAVAID signal coverage, air traffic control surveillance, or communications coverage, and are published for general situational awareness, flight planning and in−flight contingency use.

12.5.2 Because of differences in the areas considered for MVA, and those applied to other minimum altitudes, and the ability to isolate specific obstacles, some MVAs may be lower than the nonradar Minimum En Route Altitudes (MEAs), Minimum Obstruction Clearance Altitudes (MOCAs) or other minimum altitudes depicted on charts for a given location. While being radar vectored, IFR altitude assignments by ATC will be at or above MVA.

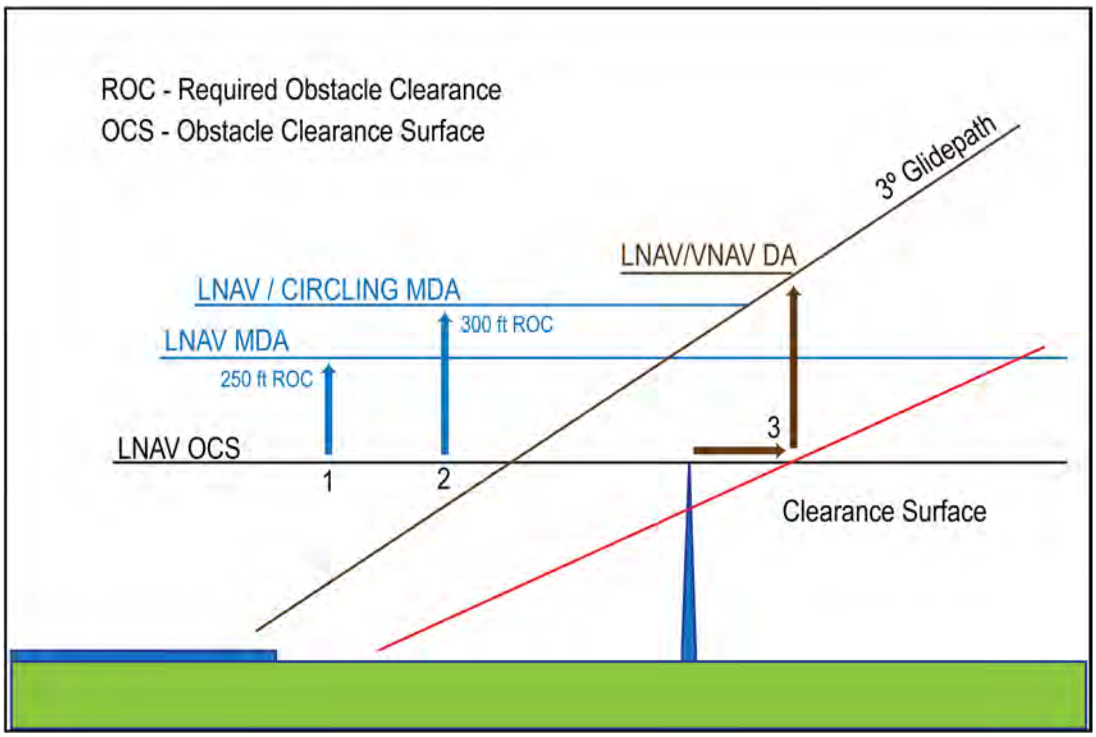
12.5.3 The MVA/MIA may be lower than the TAA minimum altitude. If ATC has assigned an altitude to an aircraft that is below the TAA minimum altitude, the aircraft will either be assigned an altitude to maintain until established on a segment of a published route or instrument approach procedure, or climbed to the TAA altitude.

12.6 Circling. Circling minimums charted on an RNAV (GPS) approach chart may be lower than the LNAV/VNAV line of minima, but never lower than the LNAV line of minima (straight-in approach). Pilots may safely perform the circling maneuver at the circling published line of minima if the approach and circling maneuver is properly performed according to aircraft category and operational limitations.

FIG ENR 1.5−28
Example of LNAV and Circling Minima Lower Than LNAV/VNAV DA.
Harrisburg International RNAV (GPS) RWY 13

CATEGORY	A	B	C	D
LPV DA	**558/24** 250 (300 – ½)			
LNAV/ VNAV DA	**1572 – 5** 1264 (1300 – 5)			
LNAV MDA	**1180 / 24** 872 (900 – ½)	**1180 / 40** 872 (900 – ¾)	**1180 / 2** 872 (900 – 2)	**1180 / 2 ¼** 872 (900 – 2 ¼)
CIRCLING	**1180 – 1** 870 (900 – 1)	**1180 – 1 ¼** 870 (900 – 1 ¼)	**1180 – 2 ½** 870 (900 – 2 ½)	**1180 – 2 ¾** 870 (900 – 2 ¾)

FIG ENR 1.5−29
Explanation of LNAV and/or Circling Minima Lower than LNAV/VNAV DA



12.7 FIG ENR 1.5−29 provides a visual representation of an obstacle evaluation and calculation of LNAV MDA, Circling MDA, LNAV/VNAV DA.

12.7.1 No vertical guidance (LNAV). A line is drawn horizontal at obstacle height and 250 feet added for Required Obstacle Clearance (ROC). The controlling obstacle used to determine LNAV MDA can be different than the controlling obstacle used in determining ROC for circling MDA. Other factors may force a number larger than 250 ft to be added to the LNAV OCS. The number is rounded up to the next higher 20 foot increment.

12.7.2 Circling MDA. The circling MDA will provide 300 foot obstacle clearance within the area considered for obstacle clearance and may be lower than the LNAV/VNAV DA, but never lower than the straight in LNAV MDA. This may occur when different controlling obstacles are used or when other controlling factors force the LNAV MDA to be higher than 250 feet above the LNAV OCS. In FIG ENR 1.5−28, the required obstacle clearance for both the LNAV and Circle resulted in the same MDA, but lower than the LNAV/VNAV DA. FIG ENR 1.5−29 provides an illustration of this type of situation.

12.7.3 Vertical guidance (LNAV/VNAV). A line is drawn horizontal at obstacle height until reaching the obstacle clearance surface (OCS). At the OCS, a vertical line is drawn until reaching the glide path. This is the DA for the approach. This method places the offending obstacle in front of the LNAV/VNAV DA so it can be seen and avoided. In some situations, this may result in the LNAV/VNAV DA being higher than the LNAV and/or Circling MDA.

12.8 The Visual Descent Point (VDP) identified by the symbol (V), is a defined point on the final approach course of a nonprecision straight−in approach procedure from which a stabilized visual descent from the MDA to the runway touchdown point may be commenced. The pilot should not descend below the MDA prior to reaching the VDP. The VDP will be identified by DME or RNAV along−track distance to the MAP. The VDP distance is based on the lowest MDA published on the IAP and harmonized with the angle of the visual glide slope indicator (VGSI) (if installed) or the procedure VDA (if no VGSI is installed). A VDP may not be published under certain circumstances which may result in a destabilized descent between the MDA and the runway touchdown point. Such circumstances include an obstacle penetrating the visual surface between the MDA and runway threshold, lack of distance measuring capability, or the procedure design prevents a VDP to be identified.

12.8.1 VGSI systems may be used as a visual aid to the pilot to determine if the aircraft is in a position to make a stabilized descent from the MDA. When the visibility is close to minimums, the VGSI may not be visible at the VDP due to its location beyond the MAP.

12.8.2 Pilots not equipped to receive the VDP should fly the approach procedure as though no VDP had been provided.

12.8.3 On a straight-in nonprecision IAP, descent below the MDA between the VDP and the MAP may be inadvisable or impossible. Aircraft speed, height above the runway, descent rate, amount of turn, and runway length are some of the factors which must be considered by the pilot to determine if a safe descent and landing can be accomplished.

12.9 A visual segment obstruction evaluation is accomplished during procedure design on all IAPs. Obstacles (both lighted and unlighted) are allowed to penetrate the visual segment obstacle identification surfaces. Identified obstacle penetrations may cause restrictions to instrument approach operations which may include an increased approach visibility requirement, not publishing a VDP, and/or prohibiting night instrument operations to the runway. There is no implicit obstacle protection from the MDA/DA to the touchdown point. Accordingly, it is the responsibility of the pilot to visually acquire and avoid obstacles below the MDA/DA during transition to landing.

12.9.1 Unlighted obstacle penetrations may result in prohibiting night instrument operations to the runway. A chart note will be published in the pilot briefing strip "Procedure NA at Night."

12.9.2 Use of a VGSI may be approved in lieu of obstruction lighting to restore night instrument operations to the runway. A chart note will be published in the pilot briefing strip " Straight-in Rwy XX at Night, operational VGSI required, remain on or above VGSI glidepath until threshold."

12.10 The highest obstacle (man-made, terrain, or vegetation) will be charted on the planview of an IAP. Other obstacles may be charted in either the planview or the airport sketch based on distance from the runway and available chart space. The elevation of the charted obstacle will be shown to the nearest foot above mean sea level. Obstacles without a verified accuracy are indicated by a ± symbol following the elevation value.

12.11 Vertical Descent Angle (VDA). FAA policy is to publish a VDA/TCH on all nonprecision approaches except those published in conjunction with vertically guided minimums (i.e., ILS or LOC RWY XX) or no-FAF procedures without a step-down fix (i.e., on−airport VOR or NDB). A VDA does not guarantee obstacle protection below the MDA in the visual segment. The presence of a VDA does not change any nonprecision approach requirements.

12.11.1 Obstacles may penetrate the obstacle identification surface below the MDA in the visual segment of an IAP that has a published VDA/TCH. When the VDA/TCH is not authorized due to an obstacle penetration that would require a pilot to deviate from the VDA between MDA and touchdown, the VDA/TCH will be replaced with the note "Visual Segment- Obstacles" in the profile view of the IAP (See FIG ENR 1.5−30). Accordingly, pilots are advised to carefully review approach procedures to identify where the optimum stabilized descent to landing can be initiated. Pilots that follow the previously published descent angle, provided by the RNAV system, below the MDA on procedures with this note may encounter obstacles in the visual segment. Pilots must visually avoid any obstacles below the MDA.

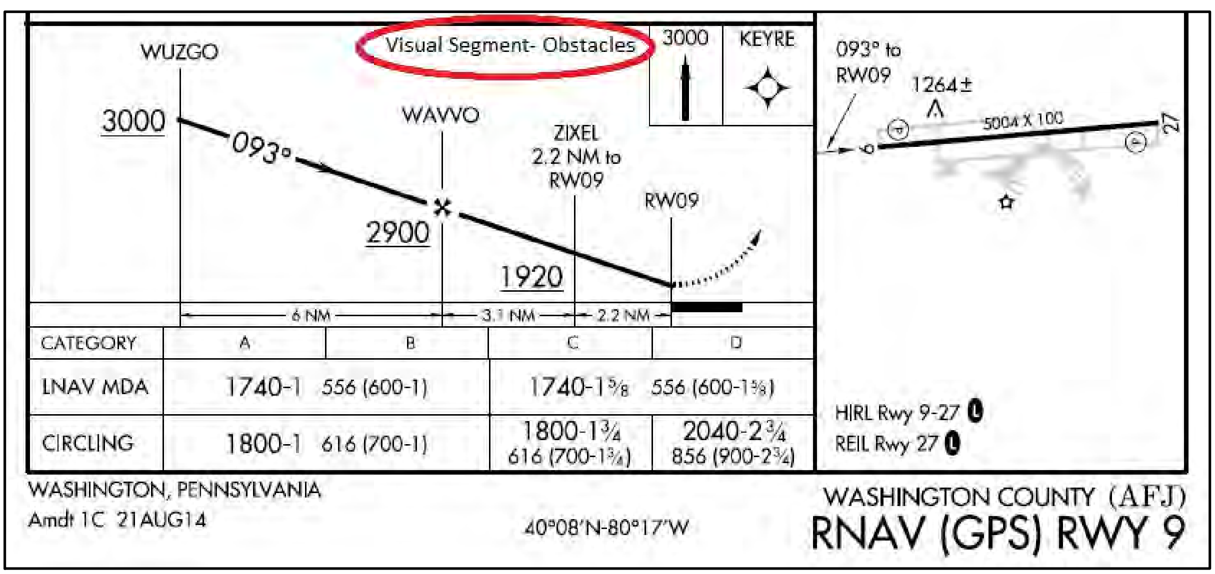
12.11.1.1 VDA/TCH data is furnished by FAA on the official source document for publication on IAP charts and for coding in the navigation database unless, as noted previously, replaced by the note "Visual Segment – Obstacles."

12.11.1.2 Commercial chart providers and navigation systems may publish or calculate a VDA/TCH even when the FAA does not provide such data. Pilots are cautioned that they are responsible for obstacle avoidance in the visual segment regardless of the presence or absence of a VDA/TCH and associated navigation system advisory vertical guidance.

12.11.2 The threshold crossing height (TCH) used to compute the descent angle is published with the VDA. The VDA and TCH information are charted on the profile view of the IAP following the fix (FAF/stepdown) used to compute the VDA. If no PA/APV IAP is established to the same runway, the VDA will be equal to or higher than the glide path angle of the VGSI installed on the same runway provided it is within instrument procedure criteria. A chart note will indicate if the VGSI is not coincident with the VDA. Pilots must be aware that the published VDA is for advisory information only and not to be considered instrument procedure derived vertical guidance. The VDA solely offers an aid to help pilots establish a continuous, stabilized descent during final approach.

FIG ENR 1.5−30

Example of a Chart Note



12.11.3 Pilots may use the published angle and estimated/actual groundspeed to find a target rate of descent from the rate of descent table published in the back of the U.S. Terminal Procedures Publication. This rate of descent can be flown with the Vertical Velocity Indicator (VVI) in order to use the VDA as an aid to flying a stabilized descent. No special equipment is required.

12.11.4 A straight−in aligned procedure may be restricted to circling only minimums when an excessive descent gradient necessitates. The descent angle between the FAF/stepdown fix and the Circling MDA must not exceed the maximum descent angle allowed by TERPS criteria. A published VDA on these procedures does not imply that landing straight ahead is recommended or even possible. The descent rate based on the VDA may exceed the capabilities of the aircraft and the pilot must determine how to best maneuver the aircraft within the circling area in order to land safely.

12.12 In isolated cases, an IAP may contain a published visual flight path. These procedures are annotated "Fly Visual to Airport" or "Fly Visual." A dashed arrow indicating the visual flight path will be included in the profile and plan views with a defined flightpath or approximate heading and distance to the end of the runway.

12.12.1 The depicted ground track or flightpath associated with the "Fly Visual to Airport" segment should be flown with flight instrumentation (when advisory lateral and vertical guidance is provided) and/or pilotage or dead reckoning navigation techniques. When executing the "Fly Visual to Airport" segment, the flight visibility must not be less than that prescribed in the IAP; the pilot must remain clear of clouds and proceed to the airport maintaining visual contact with the ground. Altitude on the visual flight path is at the discretion of the pilot, and recommended altitudes may be shown, but it is the responsibility of the pilot to visually acquire and avoid obstacles in the "Fly Visual to Airport" segment.

12.12.2 Missed approach obstacle clearance is assured only if the missed approach is commenced at or above the MDA/DA and flown from the published MAP. Before initiating an IAP that contains a "Fly Visual to Airport" segment, the pilot should have preplanned climb out options based on aircraft performance and terrain features. Obstacle clearance is the responsibility of the pilot when the missed approach maneuver is initiated below the MDA/DA or when the approach is continued beyond the MAP.

NOTE−
The FAA Administrator retains the authority to approve instrument approach procedures where the pilot, on arrival at the MDA/DA on the prescribed flightpath, may not necessarily have one of the visual references specified in 14 CFR § 91.175 and related rules. While it is not a function of procedure design to ensure compliance with § 91.175, the pilot is always required to assess prevailing flight visibility against the published minima. When published on the procedure, the annotation "Fly Visual to Airport" provides specific relief only from §91.175 (c)(3)(i) through (x) requirements that the pilot have distinctly visible and identifiable visual references prior to descent below MDA/DA.

12.13 Area Navigation (RNAV) Instrument Approach Charts. Reliance on RNAV systems for instrument operations is becoming more commonplace as new systems such as GPS and augmented GPS such as the Wide Area Augmentation System (WAAS) are developed and deployed. In order to support full integration of RNAV procedures into the National Airspace System (NAS), the FAA developed a new charting format for IAPs (See FIG ENR 1.5−22). This format avoids unnecessary duplication and proliferation of instrument approach charts. The original stand alone GPS charts, titled simply "GPS," are being converted to the newer format as the procedures are revised. One reason for the revision is the addition of WAAS based minima to the approach chart. The reformatted approach chart is titled "RNAV (GPS) RWY XX." Up to four lines of minima are included on these charts. GLS (Ground Based Augmentation System (GBAS) Landing System) was a placeholder for future WAAS and LAAS minima, and the minima was always listed as N/A. The GLS minima line has now been replaced by the WAAS LPV (Localizer Performance with Vertical Guidance) minima on most RNAV (GPS) charts. LNAV/VNAV (lateral navigation/vertical navigation) was added to support both WAAS electronic vertical guidance and Barometric VNAV. LPV and LNAV/VNAV are both APV procedures as described in paragraph 12.1.7. The original GPS minima, titled "S−XX," for straight in runway XX, is retitled LNAV (lateral navigation). Circling minima may also be published. A new type of nonprecision WAAS minima will also be published on this chart and titled LP (localizer performance). LP will be published in locations where vertically guided minima cannot be provided due to terrain and obstacles and therefore, no LPV or LNAV/VNAV minima will be published. GBAS procedures are published on a separate chart and the GLS minima line is to be used only for GBAS. ATC clearance for the RNAV procedure authorizes a properly certified pilot to utilize any minimums for which the aircraft is certified (for example, a WAAS equipped aircraft utilizes the LPV or LP minima but a GPS only aircraft may not). The RNAV chart includes information formatted for quick reference by the pilot or flight crew at the top of the chart. This portion of the chart, developed based on a study by the

Department of Transportation, Volpe National Transportation System Center, is commonly referred to as the pilot briefing.

12.13.1 The minima lines are:

12.13.1.1 GLS. "GLS" is the acronym for GBAS Landing System. The U.S. version of GBAS has traditionally been referred to as LAAS. The worldwide community has adopted GBAS as the official term for this type of navigation system. To coincide with international terminology, the FAA is also adopting the term GBAS to be consistent with the international community. This line was originally published as a placeholder for both WAAS and LAAS minima and marked as N/A since no minima was published. As the concepts for GBAS and WAAS procedure publication have evolved, GLS will now be used only for GBAS minima, which will be on a separate approach chart. Most RNAV(GPS) approach charts have had the GLS minima line replaced by a WAAS LPV line of minima.

12.13.1.2 LPV. "LPV" is the acronym for localizer performance with vertical guidance. RNAV (GPS) approaches to LPV lines of minima take advantage of the improved accuracy of WAAS lateral and vertical guidance to provide an approach that is very similar to a Category I Instrument Landing System (ILS). The approach to LPV line of minima is designed for angular guidance with increasing sensitivity as the aircraft gets closer to the runway. The sensitivities are nearly identical to those of the ILS at similar distances. This was done intentionally to allow the skills required to proficiently fly an ILS to readily transfer to flying RNAV (GPS) approaches to the LPV line of minima. Just as with an ILS, the LPV has vertical guidance and is flown to a DA. Aircraft can fly this minima line with a statement in the Aircraft Flight Manual that the installed equipment supports LPV approaches. This includes Class 3 and 4 TSO−C146 GPS/WAAS equipment.

12.13.1.3 LNAV/VNAV. LNAV/VNAV identifies APV minimums developed to accommodate an RNAV IAP with vertical guidance, usually provided by approach certified Baro−VNAV, but with lateral and vertical integrity limits larger than a precision approach or LPV. LNAV stands for Lateral Navigation; VNAV stands for Vertical Navigation. This minima line can be flown by aircraft with a statement in the Aircraft Flight Manual that the installed equipment supports GPS approaches and has an approach−approved barometric VNAV, or if the aircraft has been demonstrated to support LNAV/VNAV approaches. This includes Class 2, 3 and 4 TSO−C146 GPS/WAAS equipment. Aircraft using LNAV/VNAV minimums will descend to landing via an internally generated descent path based on satellite or other approach approved VNAV systems. Since electronic vertical guidance is provided, the minima will be published as a DA. Other navigation systems may be specifically authorized to use this line of minima. (See Section A, Terms/Landing Minima Data, of the U.S. Terminal Procedures books.)

12.13.1.4 LP. "LP" is the acronym for localizer performance. Approaches to LP lines of minima take advantage of the improved accuracy of WAAS to provide approaches, with lateral guidance and angular guidance. Angular guidance does not refer to a glideslope angle but rather to the increased lateral sensitivity as the aircraft gets closer to the runway, similar to localizer approaches. However, the LP line of minima is a Minimum Descent Altitude (MDA) rather than a DA (H). Procedures with LP lines of minima will not be published with another approach that contains approved vertical guidance (LNAV/VNAV or LPV). It is possible to have LP and LNAV published on the same approach chart but LP will only be published if it provides lower minima than an LNAV line of minima. LP is not a fail−down mode for LPV. LP will only be published if terrain, obstructions, or some other reason prevent publishing a vertically guided procedure. WAAS avionics may provide GNSS−based advisory vertical guidance during an approach to an LP line of minima. Barometric altimeter information remains the primary altitude reference for complying with any altitude restrictions. WAAS equipment may not support LP, even if it supports LPV, if it was approved before TSO−C145b and TSO−C146b. Receivers approved under previous TSOs may require an upgrade by the manufacturer in order to be used to fly to LP minima. Receivers approved for LP must have a statement in the approved Flight Manual or Supplemental Flight Manual including LP as one of the approved approach types.

12.13.1.5 LNAV. This minima is for lateral navigation only, and the approach minimum altitude will be published as a minimum descent altitude (MDA). LNAV provides the same level of service as the present GPS stand alone approaches. LNAV minimums support the following navigation systems: WAAS, when the navigation solution will not support vertical navigation; and, GPS navigation systems which are presently authorized to conduct GPS approaches.

NOTE−
GPS receivers approved for approach operations in accordance with: AC 20−138, Airworthiness Approval of Positioning and Navigation Systems, qualify for this minima. WAAS navigation equipment must be approved in accordance with the requirements specified in TSO−C145() or TSO−C146() and installed in accordance with Advisory Circular AC 20−138.

12.13.2 Other systems may be authorized to utilize these approaches. See the description in Section A of the U.S. Terminal Procedures books for details. Operational approval must also be obtained for Baro−VNAV systems to operate to the LNAV/VNAV minimums. Baro−VNAV may not be authorized on some approaches due to other factors, such as no local altimeter source being available. Baro−VNAV is not authorized on LPV procedures. Pilots are directed to their local Flight Standards District Office (FSDO) for additional information.

NOTE−
RNAV and Baro−VNAV systems must have a manufacturer supplied electronic database which must include the waypoints, altitudes, and vertical data for the procedure to be flown. The system must be able to retrieve the procedure by name from the aircraft navigation database, not just as a manually entered series of waypoints.

12.13.3 ILS or RNAV (GPS) Charts.

12.13.3.1 Some RNAV (GPS) charts will also contain an ILS line of minima to make use of the ILS precision final in conjunction with the RNAV GPS capabilities for the portions of the procedure prior to the final approach segment and for the missed approach. Obstacle clearance for the portions of the procedure other than the final approach segment is still based on GPS criteria.

NOTE−
*Some GPS receiver installations inhibit GPS navigation whenever **ANY** ILS frequency is tuned. Pilots flying aircraft with receivers installed in this manner must wait until they are on the intermediate segment of the procedure prior to the PFAF (PFAF is the active waypoint) to tune the ILS frequency and must tune the ILS back to a VOR frequency in order to fly the GPS based missed approach.*

12.13.3.2 Charting. There are charting differences between ILS, RNAV (GPS), and GLS approaches.

a) The LAAS procedure is titled "GLS RWY XX" on the approach chart.

b) The VDB provides information to the airborne receiver where the guidance is synthesized.

c) The LAAS procedure is identified by a four alpha−numeric character field referred to as the RPI or approach ID and is similar to the IDENT feature of the ILS.

d) The RPI is charted.

e) Most RNAV(GPS) approach charts have had the GLS (NA) minima line replaced by an LPV line of minima.

f) Since the concepts for LAAS and WAAS procedure publication have evolved, GLS will now be used only for LAAS minima, which will be on a separate approach chart.

12.13.4 Required Navigation Performance (RNP)

12.13.4.1 Pilots are advised to refer to the "TERMS/LANDING MINIMUMS DATA" (Section A) of the U.S. Government Terminal Procedures books for aircraft approach eligibility requirements by specific RNP level requirements.

12.13.4.2 Some aircraft have RNP approval in their AFM without a GPS sensor. The lowest level of sensors that the FAA will support for RNP service is DME/DME. However, necessary DME signal may not be available at the airport of intended operations. For those locations having an RNAV chart published with LNAV/VNAV minimums, a procedure note may be provided such as "DME/DME RNP−0.3 NA." This means that RNP aircraft dependent on DME/DME to achieve RNP−0.3 are not authorized to conduct this approach. Where DME facility availability is a factor, the note may read "DME/DME RNP−0.3 Authorized; ABC and XYZ Required." This means that ABC and XYZ facilities have been determined by flight inspection to be required in the navigation solution to assure RNP−0.3. VOR/DME updating must not be used for approach procedures.

12.13.5 Chart Terminology

12.13.5.1 Decision Altitude (DA) replaces the familiar term Decision Height (DH). DA conforms to the international convention where altitudes relate to MSL and heights relate to AGL. DA will eventually be published for other types of instrument approach procedures with vertical guidance, as well. DA indicates to the pilot that the published descent profile is flown to the DA (MSL), where a missed approach will be initiated if visual references for landing are not established. Obstacle clearance is provided to allow a momentary descent below DA while transitioning from the final approach to the missed approach. The aircraft is expected to follow the missed instructions while continuing along the published final approach course to at least the published runway threshold waypoint or MAP (if not at the threshold) before executing any turns.

12.13.5.2 Minimum Descent Altitude (MDA) has been in use for many years, and will continue to be used for the LNAV only and circling procedures.

12.13.5.3 Threshold Crossing Height (TCH) has been traditionally used in "precision" approaches as the height of the glide slope above threshold. With publication of LNAV/VNAV minimums and RNAV descent angles, including graphically depicted descent profiles, TCH also applies to the height of the "descent angle," or glidepath, at the threshold. Unless otherwise required for larger type aircraft which may be using the IAP, the typical TCH is 30 to 50 feet.

12.13.6 The MINIMA FORMAT will also change slightly.

12.13.6.1 Each line of minima on the RNAV IAP is titled to reflect the level of service available; e.g., GLS, LPV, LNAV/VNAV, LP, and LNAV. CIRCLING minima will also be provided.

12.13.6.2 The minima title box indicates the nature of the minimum altitude for the IAP. For example:

a) DA will be published next to the minima line title for minimums supporting vertical guidance such as for GLS, LPV or LNAV/VNAV.

b) MDA will be published as the minima line on approaches with lateral guidance only, LNAV, or LP. Descent below the MDA must meet the conditions stated in 14 CFR Section 91.175.

c) Where two or more systems, such as LPV and LNAV/VNAV, share the same minima, each line of minima will be displayed separately.

12.13.7 Chart Symbology changed slightly to include:

12.13.7.1 Descent Profile. The published descent profile and a graphical depiction of the vertical path to the runway will be shown. Graphical depiction of the RNAV vertical guidance will differ from the traditional depiction of an ILS glide slope (feather) through the use of a shorter vertical track beginning at the decision altitude.

a) It is FAA policy to design IAPs with minimum altitudes established at fixes/waypoints to achieve optimum stabilized (constant rate) descents within each procedure segment. This design can enhance the safety of the operations and contribute toward reduction in the occurrence of controlled flight into terrain (CFIT) accidents. Additionally, the National Transportation Safety Board (NTSB) recently emphasized that pilots could benefit from publication of the appropriate IAP descent angle for a stabilized descent on final approach. The RNAV IAP format includes the descent angle to the hundredth of a degree; e.g., 3.00 degrees. The angle will be provided in the graphically depicted descent profile.

b) The stabilized approach may be performed by reference to vertical navigation information provided by WAAS or LNAV/VNAV systems; or for LNAV−only systems, by the pilot determining the appropriate aircraft attitude/groundspeed combination to attain a constant rate descent which best emulates the published angle. To aid the pilot, U.S. Government Terminal Procedures Publication charts publish an expanded Rate of Descent Table on the inside of the back hard cover for use in planning and executing precision descents under known or approximate groundspeed conditions.

12.13.7.2 Visual Descent Point (VDP). A VDP will be published on most RNAV IAPs. VDPs apply only to aircraft utilizing LP or LNAV minima, not LPV or LNAV/VNAV minimums.

12.13.7.3 Missed Approach Symbology. In order to make missed approach guidance more readily understood, a method has been developed to display missed approach guidance in the profile view through the use of quick reference icons. Due to limited space in the profile area, only four or fewer icons can be shown. However, the icons may not provide representation of the entire missed approach procedure. The entire set of textual missed approach instructions are provided at the top of the approach chart in the pilot briefing. (See FIG ENR 1.5−22.)

12.13.7.4 Waypoints. All RNAV or GPS stand−alone IAPs are flown using data pertaining to the particular IAP obtained from an onboard database, including the sequence of all WPs used for the approach and missed approach, except that step down waypoints may not be included in some TSO−C−129 receiver databases. Included in the database, in most receivers, is coding that informs the navigation system of which WPs are fly−over (FO) or fly−by (FB). The navigation system may provide guidance appropriately − including leading the turn prior to a fly−by WP; or causing overflight of a fly−over WP. Where the navigation system does not provide such guidance, the pilot must accomplish the turn lead or waypoint overflight manually. Chart symbology for the FB WP provides pilot awareness of expected actions. Refer to the legend of the U.S. Terminal Procedures books.

12.13.7.5 TAAs are described in subparagraph 12.4, Terminal Arrival Area (TAA). When published, the RNAV chart depicts the TAA areas through the use of "icons" representing each TAA area associated with the RNAV procedure (See FIG ENR 1.5−22). These icons are depicted in the plan view of the approach chart, generally arranged on the chart in accordance with their position relative to the aircrafts arrival from the en route structure. The WP, to which navigation is appropriate and expected within each specific TAA area, will be named and depicted on the associated TAA icon. Each depicted named WP is the IAF for arrivals from within that area. TAAs may not be used on all RNAV procedures because of airspace congestion or other reasons.

12.13.7.6 Published Temperature Limitations. There are currently two temperature limitations that may be published in the notes box of the middle briefing strip on an instrument approach procedure (IAP). The two published temperature limitations are:

a) A temperature range limitation associated with the use of Baro−VNAV that may be published on an United States PBN IAP titled RNAV (GPS) or RNAV (RNP); and/or

b) A Cold Temperature Airport (CTA) limitation designated by a snowflake ICON and temperature in Celsius (C) that is published on every IAP for the airfield.

REFERENCE−
AIP, Section ENR 1.8, Cold Temperature Barometric Altimeter Errors, Setting Procedures, and Cold Temperature Airports (CTA).

12.13.7.7 WAAS Channel Number/Approach ID. The WAAS Channel Number is an optional equipment capability that allows the use of a 5−digit number to select a specific final approach segment without using the menu method. The Approach ID is an airport unique 4−character combination for verifying the selection and extraction of the correct final approach segment information from the aircraft database. It is similar to the ILS ident, but displayed visually rather than aurally. The Approach ID consists of the letter W for WAAS, the runway number, and a letter other than L, C or R, which could be confused with Left, Center and Right, e.g., W35A. Approach IDs are assigned in the order that WAAS approaches are built to that runway number at that airport. The WAAS Channel Number and Approach ID are displayed in the upper left corner of the approach procedure pilot briefing.

12.13.7.8 At locations where outages of WAAS vertical guidance may occur daily due to initial system limitations, a negative W symbol (W) will be placed on RNAV (GPS) approach charts. Many of these outages will be very short in duration, but may result in the disruption of the vertical portion of the approach. The W symbol indicates that NOTAMs or Air Traffic advisories are not provided for outages which occur in the WAAS LNAV/VNAV or LPV vertical service. Use LNAV or circling minima for flight planning at these locations, whether as a destination or alternate. For flight operations at these locations, when the WAAS avionics indicate that LNAV/VNAV or LPV service is available, then vertical guidance may be used to complete the approach using the displayed level of service. Should an outage occur during the procedure, reversion to LNAV minima may be required. As the WAAS coverage is expanded, the W will be removed.

NOTE−
Properly trained and approved, as required, TSO-C145() and TSO-C146() equipped users (WAAS users) with and using approved baro-VNAV equipment may plan for LNAV/VNAV DA at an alternate airport. Specifically authorized WAAS users with and using approved baro-VNAV equipment may also plan for RNP 0.3 DA at the alternate airport as long as the pilot has verified RNP availability through an approved prediction program.

13. Special Instrument Approach Procedures

13.1 Instrument Approach Procedure (IAP) charts reflect the criteria associated with the U.S. Standard for Terminal Instrument [Approach] Procedures (TERPs), which prescribes standardized methods for use in developing IAPs. Standard IAPs are published in the Federal Register (FR) in accordance with Title 14 of the Code of Federal Regulations, Part 97, and are available for use by appropriately qualified pilots operating properly equipped and airworthy aircraft in accordance with operating rules and procedures acceptable to the FAA. Special IAPs are also developed using TERPS but are not given public notice in the FR. The FAA authorizes only certain individual pilots and/or pilots in individual organizations to use special IAPs, and may require additional crew training and/or aircraft equipment or performance, and may also require the use of landing aids, communications, or weather services not available for public use. Additionally, IAPs that service private use airports or heliports are generally special IAPs. FDC NOTAMs for Specials, FDC T-NOTAMs, may also be used to promulgate safety-of-flight information relating to Specials provided the location has a valid landing area identifier and is serviced by the United States NOTAM system. Pilots may access NOTAMs online or through an FAA Flight Service Station (FSS). FSS specialists will not automatically provide NOTAM information to pilots for special IAPs during telephone pre−flight briefings. Pilots who are authorized by the FAA to use special IAPs must specifically request FDC NOTAM information for the particular special IAP they plan to use.

14. Radar Approaches

14.1 The only airborne radio equipment required for radar approaches is a functioning radio transmitter and receiver. The radar controller vectors the aircraft to align it with the runway centerline. The controller continues the vectors to keep the aircraft on course until the pilot can complete the approach and landing by visual reference to the surface. There are two types of radar approaches, “Precision” (PAR) and “Surveillance” (ASR).

14.2 A radar approach may be given to any aircraft upon request and may be offered to pilots of aircraft in distress or to expedite traffic; however, a surveillance approach might not be approved unless there is an ATC operational requirement, or in an unusual or emergency situation. Acceptance of a precision or surveillance approach by a pilot does not waive the prescribed weather minimums for the airport or for the particular aircraft operator concerned. The decision to make a radar approach when the reported weather is below the established minimums rests with the pilot.

14.3 Precision and surveillance approach minimums are published on separate pages in the Federal Aviation Administration Instrument Approach Procedure charts.

14.3.1 A Precision Approach (PAR) is one in which a controller provides highly accurate navigational guidance in azimuth and elevation to a pilot. Pilots are given headings to fly to direct them to and keep their aircraft aligned with the extended centerline of the landing runway. They are told to anticipate glidepath interception approximately 10 to 30 seconds before it occurs and when to start descent. The published decision height will be given only if the pilot requests it. If the aircraft is observed to deviate above or below the glidepath, the pilot is given the relative amount of deviation by use of terms “slightly” or “well” and is expected to adjust the aircraft’s rate of descent to return to the glidepath. Trend information is also issued with respect to the elevation of the aircraft and may be modified by the terms “rapidly” and “slowly”; e.g., “well above glidepath, coming down rapidly.” Range from touchdown is given at least once each mile. If an aircraft is observed by the controller to proceed outside of specified safety zone limits in azimuth and/or elevation and continues to operate outside these prescribed limits, the pilot will be directed to execute a missed approach or to fly a specified course unless the pilot has the runway environment (runway, approach lights, etc.) in sight. Navigational guidance in azimuth and elevation is provided the pilot until the aircraft reaches the published decision height (DH). Advisory course and glidepath information is furnished by the controller until the aircraft passes over the landing threshold, at which point the pilot is advised of any deviation from the runway centerline. Radar service is automatically terminated upon completion of the approach.

14.3.2 A Surveillance Approach (ASR) is one in which a controller provides navigational guidance in azimuth only. The pilot is furnished headings to fly to align the aircraft with the extended centerline of the landing runway. Since the radar information used for a surveillance approach is considerably less precise than that used for a precision approach, the accuracy of the approach will not be as great, and higher minimums will apply. Guidance in elevation is not possible but the pilot will be advised when to commence descent to the minimum descent altitude (MDA) or, if appropriate, to an intermediate "step down fix" minimum crossing altitude and subsequently to the prescribed MDA. In addition, the pilot will be advised of the location of the missed approach point (MAP) prescribed for the procedure and the aircraft's position each mile on final from the runway, airport/heliport, or MAP, as appropriate. If requested by the pilot, recommended altitudes will be issued at each mile, based on the descent gradient established for the procedure, down to the last mile that is at or above the MDA. Normally, navigational guidance will be provided until the aircraft reaches the MAP. Controllers will terminate guidance and instruct the pilot to execute a missed approach unless at the MAP the pilot has the runway, airport/heliport in sight or, for a helicopter point−in−space approach, the prescribed visual reference with the surface is established. Also, if at any time during the approach the controller considers that safe guidance for the remainder of the approach cannot be provided, the controller will terminate guidance and instruct the pilot to execute a missed approach. Similarly, guidance termination and missed approach will be effected upon pilot request, and for civil aircraft only, controllers may terminate guidance when the pilot reports the runway, airport/heliport, or visual surface route (point−in−space approach) in sight or otherwise indicates that continued guidance is not required. Radar service is automatically terminated at the completion of a radar approach.

NOTE−
The published MDA for straight−in approaches will be issued to the pilot before beginning descent. When a surveillance approach will terminate in a circle−to−land maneuver, the pilot must furnish the aircraft approach category to the controller. The controller will then provide the pilot with the appropriate MDA.

14.3.3 A No−Gyro Approach is available to a pilot under radar control who experiences circumstances wherein the directional gyro or other stabilized compass is inoperative or inaccurate. When this occurs, the pilot should so advise ATC and request a No−Gyro vector or approach. Pilots of aircraft not equipped with a directional gyro or other stabilized compass who desire radar handling may also request a No−Gyro vector or approach. The pilot should make all turns at standard rate and should execute the turn immediately upon receipt of instructions. For example, "TURN RIGHT," "STOP TURN." When a surveillance or precision approach is made, the pilot will be advised after the aircraft has been turned onto final approach to make turns at half standard rate.

15. Radar Monitoring of Instrument Approaches

15.1 PAR facilities operated by the FAA and the military services at some joint−use (civil/military) and military installations monitor aircraft on instrument approaches and issue radar advisories to the pilot when weather is below VFR minimum (1,000 and 3), at night, or when requested by a pilot. This service is provided only when the PAR final approach course coincides with the final approach of the navigational aid and only during the operational hours of the PAR. The radar advisories serve only as a secondary aid since the pilot has selected the navigational aid as the primary aid for the approach.

15.2 Prior to starting final approach, the pilot will be advised of the frequency on which the advisories will be transmitted. If, for any reason, radar advisories cannot be furnished, the pilot will be so advised.

15.3 Advisory information, derived from radar observations, includes information on:

15.3.1 Passing the final approach fix inbound (nonprecision approach) or passing the outer marker or the fix used in lieu of the outer marker inbound (precision approach).

15.3.2 Trend advisories with respect to elevation and/or azimuth radar position and movement will be provided.

NOTE−
At this point, the pilot may be requested to report sighting the approach lights or the runway.

NOTE−
Whenever the aircraft nears the PAR safety limit, the pilot will be advised that the aircraft is well above or below the glidepath or well left or right of course. Glidepath information is given only to those aircraft executing a precision approach, such as ILS. Altitude information is not transmitted to aircraft executing other than precision approaches because the descent portions of these approaches generally do not coincide with the depicted PAR glidepath.

15.3.3 If, after repeated advisories, the aircraft proceeds outside the PAR safety limit or if a radical deviation is observed, the pilot will be advised to execute a missed approach if not visual.

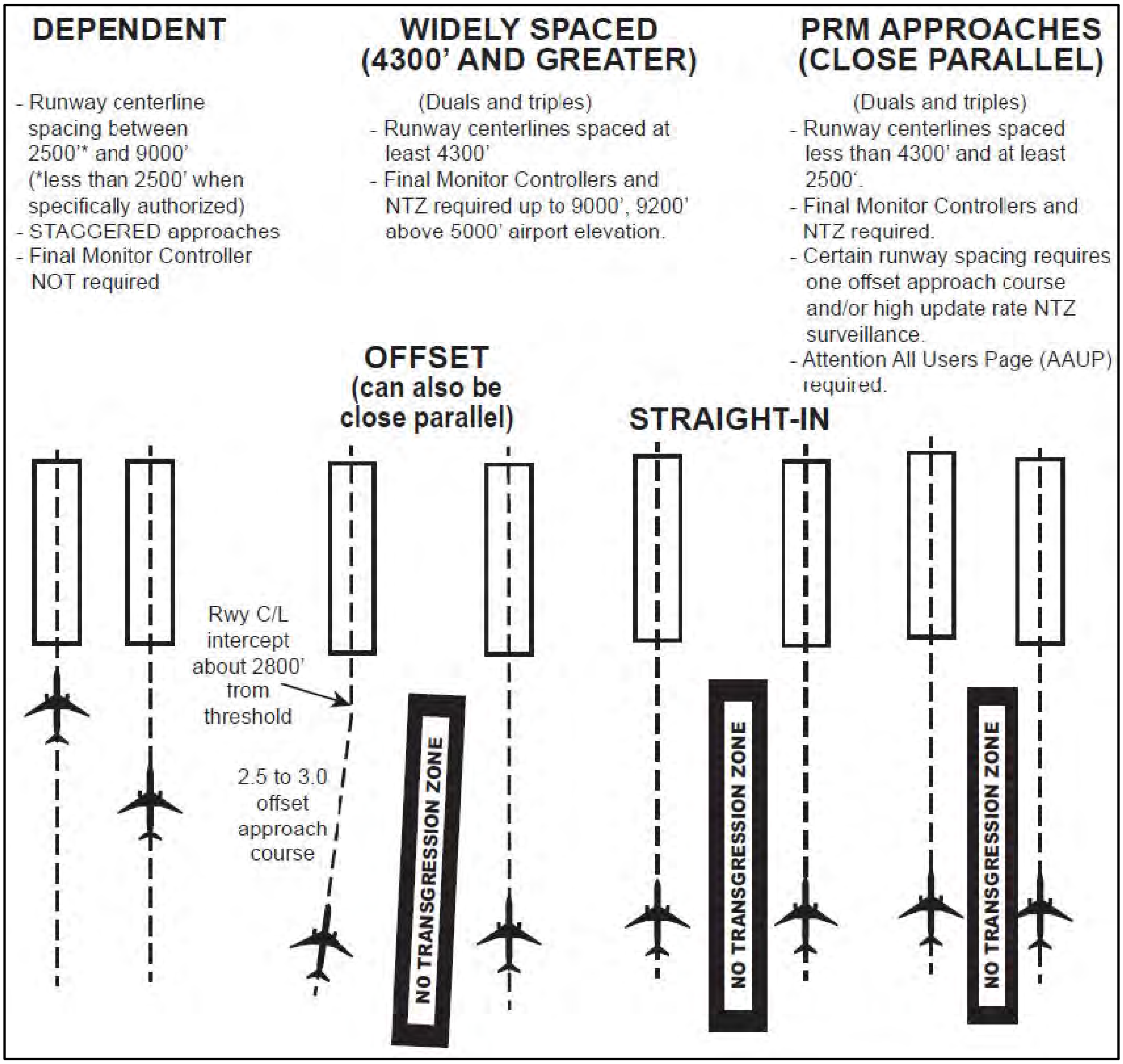
15.4 Radar service is automatically terminated upon completion of the approach.

16. ILS Approach

16.1 Communications should be established with the appropriate FAA control tower or with the FAA FSS where there is no control tower, prior to starting an ILS approach. This is in order to receive advisory information as to the operation of the facility. It is also recommended that the aural signal of the ILS be monitored during an approach as to assure continued reception and receipt of advisory information, when available.

17. Simultaneous Approaches to Parallel Runways

FIG ENR 1.5−31
Simultaneous Approaches
(Approach Courses Parallel and Offset between 2.5 and 3.0 degrees)



17.1 ATC procedures permit ILS/RNAV/GLS instrument approach operations to dual or triple parallel runway configurations. ILS/RNAV/GLS approaches to parallel runways are grouped into three classes: Simultaneous Dependent Approaches; Simultaneous Independent Approaches; and Simultaneous Close Parallel PRM Approaches. RNAV approach procedures that are approved for simultaneous operations require GPS as the sensor for position updating. VOR/DME, DME/DME and IRU RNAV updating is not authorized. The classification of a parallel runway approach procedure is dependent on adjacent parallel runway centerline separation, ATC procedures, and airport ATC final approach radar monitoring and communications capabilities. At some airports, one or more approach courses may be offset up to 3 degrees. ILS approaches with offset localizer configurations result in loss of Category II/III capabilities and an increase in decision altitude/height (50').

17.2 Depending on weather conditions, traffic volume, and the specific combination of runways being utilized for arrival operations, a runway may be used for different types of simultaneous operations, including closely spaced dependent or independent approaches. Pilots should ensure that they understand the type of operation that is being conducted, and ask ATC for clarification if necessary.

17.3 Parallel approach operations demand heightened pilot situational awareness. A thorough Approach Procedure Chart review should be conducted with, as a minimum, emphasis on the following approach chart information: name and number of the approach, localizer frequency, inbound localizer/azimuth course, glideslope/glidepath intercept altitude, glideslope crossing altitude at the final approach fix, decision height, missed approach instructions, special notes/procedures, and the assigned runway location/proximity to adjacent runways. Pilots are informed by ATC or through the ATIS that simultaneous approaches are in use.

17.4 The close proximity of adjacent aircraft conducting simultaneous independent approaches, especially simultaneous close parallel PRM approaches mandates strict pilot compliance with all ATC clearances. ATC assigned airspeeds, altitudes, and headings must be complied with in a timely manner. Autopilot coupled approaches require pilot knowledge of procedures necessary to comply with ATC instructions. Simultaneous independent approaches, particularly simultaneous close parallel PRM approaches necessitate precise approach course tracking to minimize final monitor controller intervention, and unwanted No Transgression Zone (NTZ) penetration. In the unlikely event of a breakout, ATC will not assign altitudes lower than the minimum vectoring altitude. Pilots should notify ATC immediately if there is a degradation of aircraft or navigation systems.

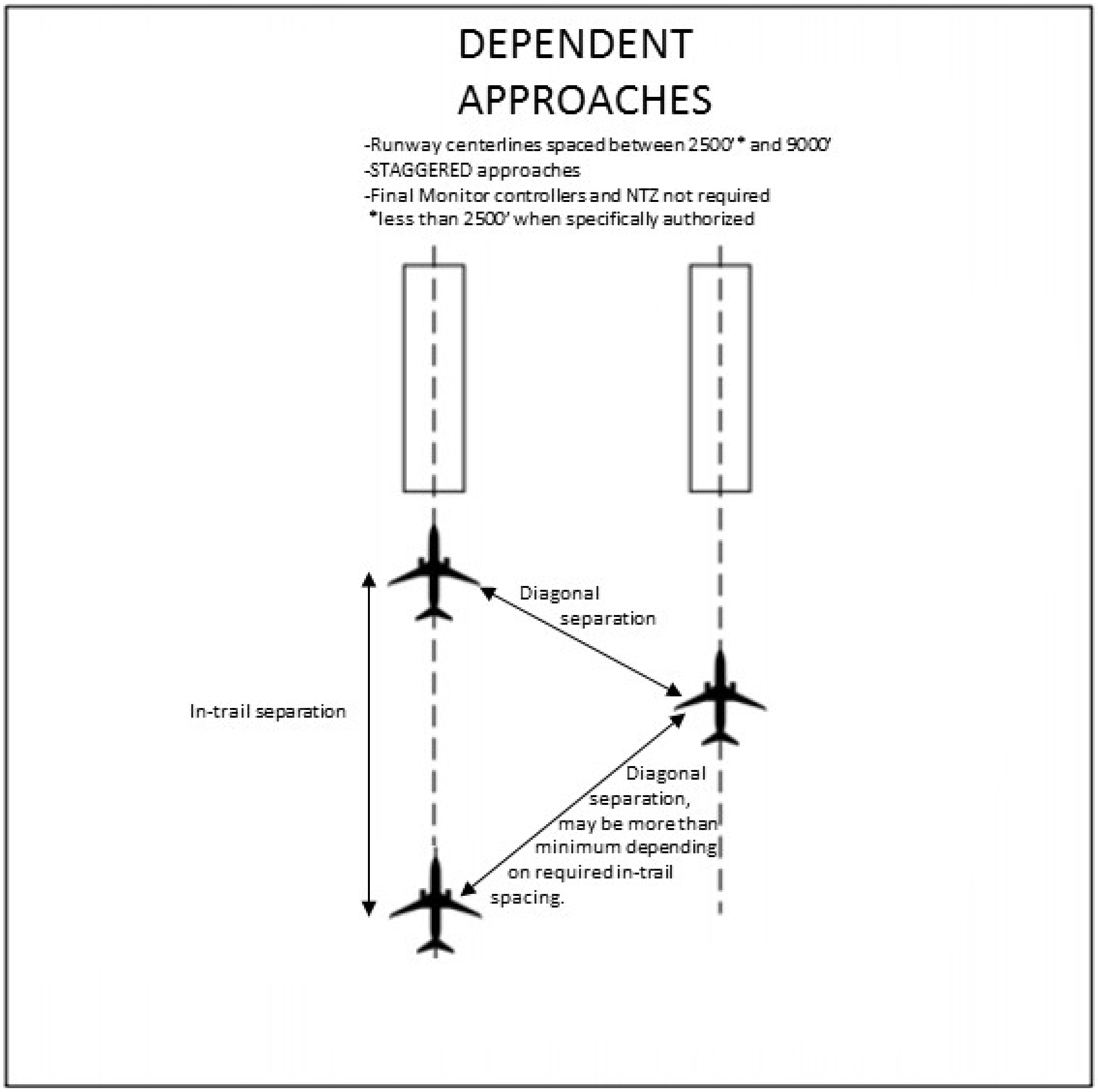
17.5 Strict radio discipline is mandatory during simultaneous independent and simultaneous close parallel PRM approach operations. This includes an alert listening watch and the avoidance of lengthy, unnecessary radio transmissions. Attention must be given to proper call sign usage to prevent the inadvertent execution of clearances intended for another aircraft. Use of abbreviated call signs must be avoided to preclude confusion of aircraft with similar sounding call signs. Pilots must be alert to unusually long periods of silence or any unusual background sounds in their radio receiver. A stuck microphone may block the issuance of ATC instructions on the tower frequency by the final monitor controller during simultaneous independent and simultaneous close parallel PRM approaches. In the case of PRM approaches, the use of a second frequency by the monitor controller mitigates the "stuck mike" or other blockage on the tower frequency.

REFERENCE−
AIP GEN 3.4, Paragraph 4.4, Radio Communications Phraseology and Techniques, gives additional communications information.

17.6 Use of Traffic Collision Avoidance Systems (TCAS) provides an additional element of safety to parallel approach operations. Pilots should follow recommended TCAS operating procedures presented in approved flight manuals, original equipment manufacturer recommendations, professional newsletters, and FAA publications.

18. Simultaneous Dependent Approaches

FIG ENR 1.5−32
Simultaneous Approaches
(Parallel Runways and Approach Courses)



18.1 Simultaneous dependent approaches are an ATC procedure permitting approaches to airports having parallel runway centerlines separated by at least 2,500 feet up to 9,000 feet. Integral parts of a total system are ILS or other system providing approach navigation, radar, communications, ATC procedures, and required airborne equipment. RNAV equipment in the aircraft or GLS equipment on the ground and in the aircraft may replace the required airborne and ground based ILS equipment. Although non−precision minimums may be published, pilots must only use those procedures specifically authorized by chart note. For example, the chart note “LNAV NA during simultaneous operations,” requires vertical guidance. When given a choice, pilots should always fly a precision approach whenever possible.

18.2 A simultaneous dependent approach differs from a simultaneous independent approach in that, the minimum distance between parallel runway centerlines may be reduced; there is no requirement for radar monitoring or advisories; and a staggered separation of aircraft on the adjacent final course is required.

18.3 A minimum of 1.0 NM radar separation (diagonal) is required between successive aircraft on the adjacent final approach course when runway centerlines are at least 2,500 feet but no more than 3,600 feet apart. A minimum of 1.5 NM radar separation (diagonal) is required between successive aircraft on the adjacent final approach course when runway centerlines are more than 3,600 feet but no more than 8,300 feet apart. When runway centerlines are more than 8,300 feet but no more than 9,000 feet apart a minimum of 2 NM diagonal radar separation is provided. Aircraft on the same final approach course within 10 NM of the runway end are provided a minimum of 3 NM radar separation, reduced to 2.5 NM in certain circumstances. In addition, a minimum of 1,000 feet vertical or a minimum of three miles radar separation is provided between aircraft during turn on to the parallel final approach course.

18.4 Whenever parallel approaches are in use, pilots are informed by ATC or via the ATIS that approaches to both runways are in use. The charted IAP also notes which runways may be used simultaneously. In addition, the radar controller will have the interphone capability of communicating with the tower controller where separation responsibility has not been delegated to the tower.

NOTE−
ATC will not specifically identify these operations as being dependent when advertised on the ATIS.

EXAMPLE−
Simultaneous ILS Runway 19 right and ILS Runway 19 left in use.

18.5 At certain airports, simultaneous dependent approaches are permitted to runways spaced less than 2,500 feet apart. In this case, ATC will provide no less than the minimum authorized diagonal separation with the leader always arriving on the same runway. The trailing aircraft is permitted reduced diagonal separation, instead of the single runway separation normally utilized for runways spaced less than 2,500 feet apart. For wake turbulence mitigation reasons:

18.5.1 Reduced diagonal spacing is only permitted when certain aircraft wake category pairings exist; typically when the leader is either in the large or small wake turbulence category, and

18.5.2 All aircraft must descend on the glideslope from the altitude at which they were cleared for the approach during these operations.

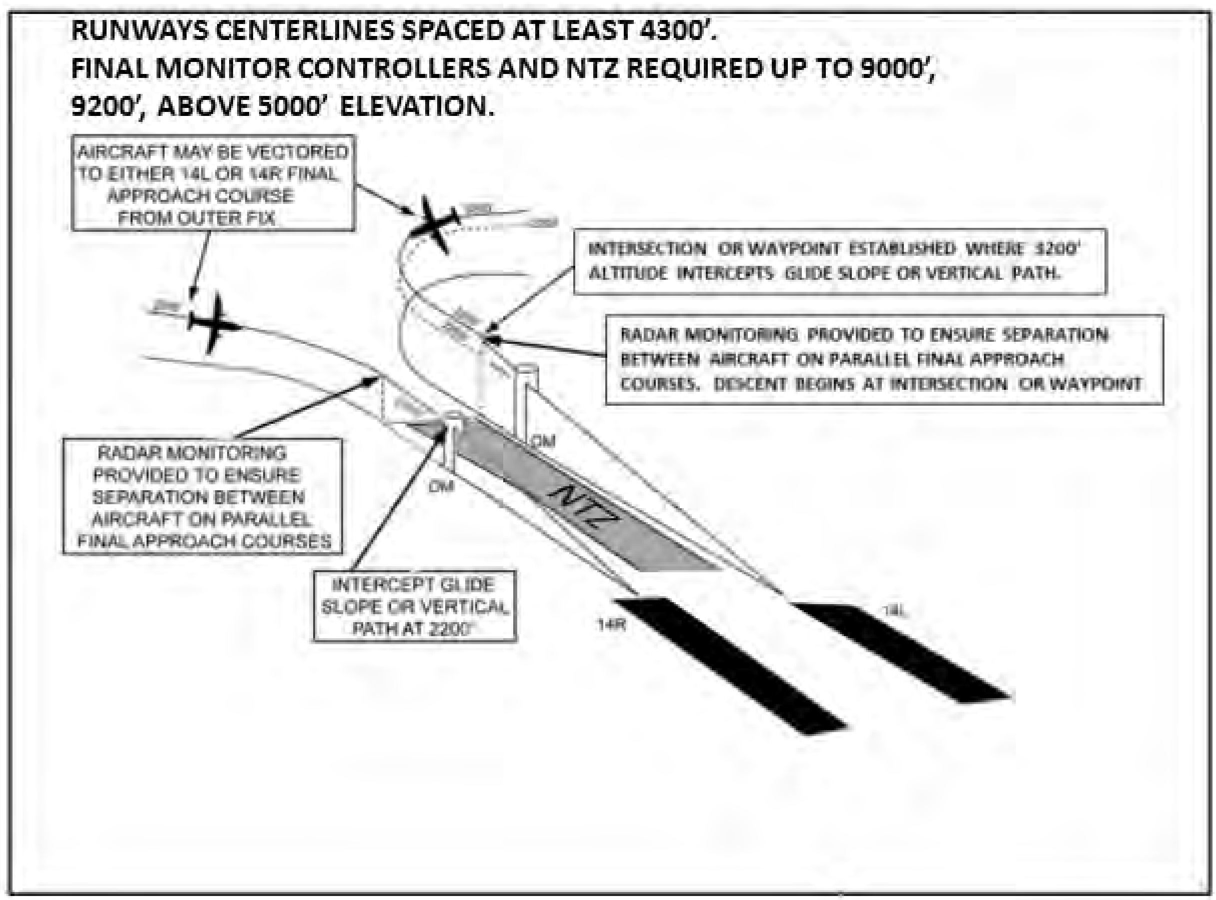
When reduced separation is authorized, the IAP briefing strip indicates that simultaneous operations require the use of vertical guidance and that the pilot should maintain last assigned altitude until intercepting the glideslope. No special pilot training is required to participate in these operations.

NOTE−
Either simultaneous dependent approaches with reduced separation or SOIA PRM approaches may be conducted to Runways 28R and 28L at KSFO spaced 750 feet apart, depending on weather conditions and traffic volume. Pilots should use caution so as not to confuse these operations. Plan for SOIA procedures only when ATC assigns a PRM approach or the ATIS advertises PRM approaches are in use. KSFO is the only airport where both procedures are presently conducted.

REFERENCE−
ENR 1.5, Para 20. Simultaneous Close Parallel PRM Approaches and Simultaneous Offset Instrument Approaches (SOIA)

19. Simultaneous Independent ILS/RNAV/GLS Approaches

FIG ENR 1.5−33
Simultaneous Independent ILS/RNAV/GLS Approaches



19.1 System. An approach system permitting simultaneous approaches to parallel runways with centerlines separated by at least 4,300 feet. Separation between 4,300 and 9,000 feet (9,200' for airports above 5,000') utilizing NTZ final monitor controllers. Simultaneous independent approaches require NTZ radar monitoring to ensure separation between aircraft on the adjacent parallel approach course. Aircraft position is tracked by final monitor controllers who will issue instructions to aircraft observed deviating from the assigned final approach course. Staggered radar separation procedures are not utilized. Integral parts of a total system are radar, communications, ATC procedures, and ILS or other required airborne equipment. A chart note identifies that the approach is authorized for simultaneous use.

When simultaneous operations are in use, it will be advertised on the ATIS. When advised that simultaneous approaches are in use, pilots must advise approach control immediately of malfunctioning or inoperative receivers, or if a simultaneous approach is not desired. Although non−precision minimums may be published, pilots must only use those procedures specifically authorized by chart note. For example, the chart note "LNAV NA during simultaneous operations," requires vertical guidance. When given a choice, pilots should always fly a precision approach whenever possible.

NOTE−
ATC does not use the word independent or parallel when advertising these operations on the ATIS.

EXAMPLE−
Simultaneous ILS Runway 24 left and ILS Runway 24 right approaches in use.

19.2 Radar Services. These services are is provided for each simultaneous independent approach.

19.2.1 During turn on to parallel final approach, aircraft are normally provided 3 miles radar separation or a minimum of 1,000 feet vertical separation. The assigned altitude must be maintained until intercepting the glidepath, unless cleared otherwise by ATC. Aircraft will not be vectored to intercept the final approach course at an angle greater than thirty degrees.

NOTE−
Some simultaneous operations permit the aircraft to track an RNAV course beginning on downwind and continuing in a turn to intercept the final approach course. In this case, separation with the aircraft on the adjacent final approach course is provided by the monitor controller with reference to an NTZ.

19.2.2 The final monitor controller will have the capability of overriding the tower controller on the tower frequency.

19.2.3 Pilots will be instructed to contact the tower frequency prior to the point where NTZ monitoring begins.

19.2.4 Aircraft observed to overshoot the turn−on or to continue on a track which will penetrate the NTZ will be instructed to return to the correct final approach course immediately. The final monitor controller may cancel the approach clearance, and issue missed approach or other instructions to the deviating aircraft.

PHRASEOLOGY−
"(Aircraft call sign) YOU HAVE CROSSED THE FINAL APPROACH COURSE. TURN (left/right) IMMEDIATELY AND RETURN TO THE FINAL APPROACH COURSE,"

or

"(aircraft call sign) TURN (left/right) AND RETURN TO THE FINAL APPROACH COURSE."

19.2.5 If a deviating aircraft fails to respond to such instructions or is observed penetrating the NTZ, the aircraft on the adjacent final approach course (if threatened), will be issued a breakout instruction.

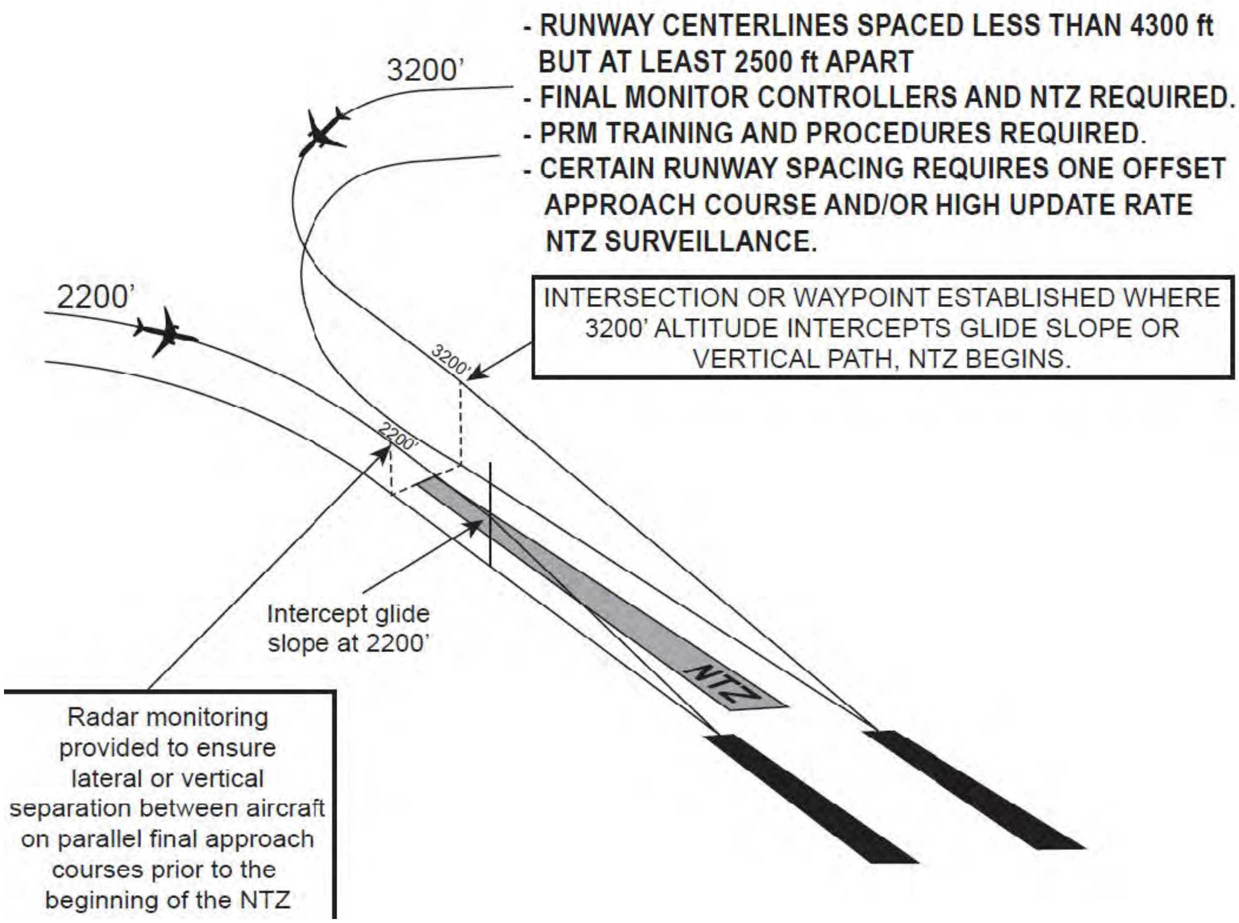
PHRASEOLOGY−
"TRAFFIC ALERT (aircraft call sign) TURN (left/right) IMMEDIATELY HEADING (degrees), (climb/descend) AND MAINTAIN (altitude)."

19.2.6 Radar monitoring will automatically be terminated when visual separation is applied, the aircraft reports the approach lights or runway in sight, or the aircraft is 1 NM or less from the runway threshold. Final monitor controllers will not advise pilots when radar monitoring is terminated.

NOTE−
Simultaneous independent approaches conducted to runways spaced greater than 9,000 feet (or 9,200' at airports above 5,000') do not require an NTZ. However, from a pilot's perspective, the same alerts relative to deviating aircraft will be provided by ATC as are provided when an NTZ is being monitored. Pilots may not be aware as to whether or not an NTZ is being monitored.

20. Simultaneous Close Parallel PRM Approaches and Simultaneous Offset Instrument Approaches (SOIA)

FIG ENR 1.5−34
PRM Approaches
Simultaneous Close Parallel



20.1 System

20.1.1 PRM is an acronym for the high update rate Precision Runway Monitor surveillance system which is required to monitor the No Transgression Zone (NTZ) for specific parallel runway separations used to conduct simultaneous close parallel approaches. PRM is also published in the title as part of the approach name for IAPs used to conduct Simultaneous Close Parallel approaches. “PRM” alerts pilots that specific airborne equipment, training, and procedures are applicable.

Because Simultaneous Close Parallel PRM approaches are independent, the NTZ and normal operating zone (NOZ) airspace between the final approach courses is monitored by two monitor controllers, one for each approach course. The NTZ monitoring system (final monitor aid) consists of a high resolution ATC radar display with automated tracking software which provides monitor controllers with aircraft identification, position, speed, and a ten−second projected position, as well as visual and aural NTZ penetration alerts. A PRM high update rate surveillance sensor is a component of this system only for specific runway spacing. Additional procedures for simultaneous independent approaches are described in ENR 1.5, paragraph 19. Simultaneous Independent ILS/RNAV/GLS Approaches.

20.1.2 Simultaneous Close Parallel PRM approaches, whether conducted utilizing a high update rate PRM surveillance sensor or not, must meet all of the following requirements: pilot training,PRM in the approach title,NTZ monitoring utilizing a final monitor aid, radar display, publication of an AAUP, and use of a secondary PRM communications frequency. PRM approaches are depicted on a separate IAP titled (Procedure type) PRM Rwy XXX (Simultaneous Close Parallel or Close Parallel).

NOTE−
ATC does not use the word "independent" when advertising these operations on the ATIS.

EXAMPLE−
Simultaneous ILS PRM Runway 33 left and ILS PRM Runway 33 right approaches in use.

20.1.2.1 The pilot may request to conduct a different type of PRM approach to the same runway other than the one that is presently being used; for example, RNAV instead of ILS. However, pilots must always obtain ATC approval to conduct a different type of approach. Also, in the event of the loss of ground−based NAVAIDS, the ATIS may advertise other types of PRM approaches to the affected runway or runways.

20.1.2.2 The Attention All Users Page (AAUP) will address procedures for conducting PRM approaches.

20.2 Requirements and Procedures. Besides system requirements and pilot procedures as identified in subparagraph 20.1.1 above, all pilots must have completed special training before accepting a clearance to conduct a PRM approach.

20.2.1 Pilot Training Requirement. Pilots must complete special pilot training, as outlined below, before accepting a clearance for a simultaneous close parallel PRM approach.

20.2.1.1 For operations under 14 CFR Parts 121, 129, and 135, pilots must comply with FAA−approved company training as identified in their Operations Specifications. Training includes the requirement for pilots to view the FAA training slide presentation, "Precision Runway Monitor (PRM) Pilot Procedures." Refer to https://www.faa.gov/training_testing/training/prm/ or search key words "FAA PRM" for additional information and to view or download the slide presentation.

20.2.1.2 For operations under Part 91:

a) Pilots operating transport category aircraft must be familiar with PRM operations as contained in this section of the AIM. In addition, pilots operating transport category aircraft must view the slide presentation, "Precision Runway Monitor (PRM) Pilot Procedures." Refer to https://www.faa.gov/training_testing/training/prm/ or search key words "FAA PRM" for additional information and to view or download the slide presentation.

b) Pilots *not* operating transport category aircraft must be familiar with PRM and SOIA operations as contained in this section of the AIM. The FAA strongly recommends that pilots *not* involved in transport category aircraft operations view the FAA training slide presentation, "Precision Runway Monitor (PRM) Pilot Procedures." Refer to https://www.faa.gov/training_testing/training/prm/ or search key words "FAA PRM" for additional information and to view or download the slide presentation.

NOTE−
Depending on weather conditions, traffic volume, and the specific combination of runways being utilized for arrival operations, a runway may be used for different types of simultaneous operations, including closely spaced dependent or independent approaches. Use PRM procedures only when the ATIS advertises their use. For other types of simultaneous approaches, see ENR 1.5 paragraphs 17.and 18.

20.3 ATC Directed Breakout. An ATC directed "breakout" is defined as a vector off the final approach course of a threatened aircraft in response to another aircraft penetrating the NTZ.

20.4 Dual Communications. The aircraft flying the PRM approach must have the capability of enabling the pilot/s to listen to two communications frequencies simultaneously. To avoid blocked transmissions, each runway will have two frequencies, a primary and a PRM monitor frequency. The tower controller will transmit on both frequencies. The monitor controller's transmissions, if needed, will override both frequencies. Pilots will ONLY transmit on the tower controller's frequency, but will listen to both frequencies. Select the PRM monitor frequency audio only when instructed by ATC to contact the tower. The volume levels should be set about the same on both radios so that the pilots will be able to hear transmissions on the PRM frequency if the tower is blocked. Site−specific procedures take precedence over the general information presented in this paragraph. Refer to the AAUP for applicable procedures at specific airports.

20.5 Radar Services

20.5.1 During turn on to parallel final approach, aircraft will be provided 3 miles radar separation or a minimum of 1,000 feet vertical separation. The assigned altitude must be maintained until intercepting the glideslope/glidepath, unless cleared otherwise by ATC. Aircraft will not be vectored to intercept the final approach course at an angle greater than thirty degrees.

20.5.2 The final monitor controller will have the capability of overriding the tower controller on the tower frequency as well as transmitting on the PRM frequency.

20.5.3 Pilots will be instructed to contact the tower frequency prior to the point where NTZ monitoring begins. Pilots will begin monitoring the secondary PRM frequency at that time (see Dual VHF Communications Required below).

20.5.4 To ensure separation is maintained, and in order to avoid an imminent situation during PRM approaches, pilots must immediately comply with monitor controller instructions.

20.5.5 Aircraft observed to overshoot the turn or to continue on a track which will penetrate the NTZ will be instructed to return to the correct final approach course immediately. The final monitor controller may cancel the approach clearance, and issue missed approach or other instructions to the deviating aircraft.

PHRASEOLOGY−
"(Aircraft call sign) YOU HAVE CROSSED THE FINAL APPROACH COURSE. TURN (left/right) IMMEDIATELY AND RETURN TO THE FINAL APPROACH COURSE,"
or
"(Aircraft call sign) TURN (left/right) AND RETURN TO THE FINAL APPROACH COURSE."

20.5.6 If a deviating aircraft fails to respond to such instructions or is observed penetrating the NTZ, the aircraft on the adjacent final approach course (if threatened) will be issued a breakout instruction.

PHRASEOLOGY−
"TRAFFIC ALERT (aircraft call sign) TURN (left/right) IMMEDIATELY HEADING (degrees), (climb/descend) AND MAINTAIN (altitude)."

20.5.7 Radar monitoring will automatically be terminated when visual separation is applied, or the aircraft reports the approach lights or runway in sight or within 1 NM of the runway threshold. Final monitor controllers will not advise pilots when radar monitoring is terminated.

20.6 Attention All Users Page (AAUP). At airports that conduct PRM operations, the AAUP informs pilots under the "General" section of information relative to all the PRM approaches published at a specific airport, and this section must be briefed in its entirety. Under the "Runway Specific" section, only items relative to the runway to be used for landing need be briefed. (See FIG ENR 1.5−35.) A single AAUP is utilized for multiple PRM approach charts at the same airport, which are listed on the AAUP. The requirement for informing ATC if the pilot is unable to accept a PRM clearance is also presented. The "General" section of AAUP addresses the following:

20.6.1 Review of the procedure for executing a climbing or descending breakout;

20.6.2 Breakout phraseology beginning with the words, "Traffic Alert;"

20.6.3 Descending on the glideslope/glidepath meets all crossing restrictions;

20.6.4 Briefing the PRM approach also satisfies the non−PRM approach briefing of the same type of approach to the same runway; and

20.6.5 Description of the dual communications procedure.

The "Runway Specific" section of the AAUP addresses those issues which only apply to certain runway ends that utilize PRM approaches. There may be no Runway Specific procedures, a single item applicable to only one runway end, or multiple items for a single or multiple runway end/s. Examples of SOIA runway specific procedures are as follows:

FIG ENR 1.5−35
PRM Attention All Users Page (AAUP)

15288
PRM APPROACH AAUP AL-166 (FAA) USA INTL (USA)
USA CITY

ATTENTION ALL USERS PAGE (AAUP)
(PRM CLOSE PARALLEL)

Pilots who are unable to participate will be afforded appropriate arrival services as operational conditions permit and must notify the controlling ATC facility as soon as practical, but at least 120 miles from destination.

ILS PRM or LOC PRM Rwys 10R, 10C, 28L, 28C
RNAV (GPS) PRM RWYS 10R, 10C, 28L, 28C

General

- Review procedure for executing a climbing and descending PRM breakout.
- Breakout phraseology: "TRAFFIC ALERT (call sign) TURN (left/right) IMMEDIATELY HEADING (degrees) CLIMB/DESCEND AND MAINTAIN (altitude)."
- All breakouts: Hand flown, initiate immediately.
- Descending on the glideslope/glidepath ensures compliance with any charted crossing restrictions.
- Dual VHF COMM: When assigned or planning a specific PRM approach, tune a second receiver to the PRM monitor frequency or, if silent, other active frequency (i.e., ATIS), set the volume, retune the PRM frequency if necessary, then deselect the audio. When directed by ATC, immediately switch to the tower frequency and select the secondary radio audio to ON.
- If later assigned the same runway, non-PRM approach, consider it briefed provided the same minimums are utilized. PRM related chart notes and frequency no longer apply.
- TCAS during breakout: Follow TCAS climb/descend if it differs from ATC, while executing the breakout turn.

Runway Specific

- Runway 10R: Exit at taxiway Tango whenever practical.

PRM APPROACH AAUP 41°59'N-87°54'W USA INTL (USA)
USA CITY

20.7 Simultaneous Offset Instrument Approach (SOIA).

20.7.1 SOIA is a procedure used to conduct simultaneous approaches to runways spaced less than 3,000 feet, but at least 750 feet apart. The SOIA procedure utilizes a straight−in PRM approach to one runway, and a PRM offset approach with glideslope/glidepath to the adjacent runway. In SOIA operations, aircraft are paired, with the aircraft conducting the straight−in PRM approach always positioned slightly ahead of the aircraft conducting the offset PRM approach.

20.7.2 The straight−in PRM approach plates used in SOIA operations are identical to other straight−in PRM approach plates, with an additional note, which provides the separation between the two runways used for simultaneous SOIA approaches. The offset PRM approach plate displays the required notations for closely spaced approaches as well as depicts the visual segment of the approach.

20.7.3 Controllers monitor the SOIA PRM approaches in exactly the same manner as is done for other PRM approaches. The procedures and system requirements for SOIA PRM approaches are identical with those used for simultaneous close parallel PRM approaches until near the offset PRM approach missed approach point (MAP), where visual acquisition of the straight−in aircraft by the aircraft conducting the offset PRM approach occurs. Since SOIA PRM approaches are identical to other PRM approaches (except for the visual segment in the offset approach), an understanding of the procedures for conducting PRM approaches is essential before conducting a SOIA PRM operation.

20.7.4 In SOIA, the approach course separation (instead of the runway separation) meets established close parallel approach criteria. (See FIG ENR 1.5−36 for the generic SOIA approach geometry.) A visual segment of the offset PRM approach is established between the offset MAP and the runway threshold. Aircraft transition in visual conditions from the offset course, beginning at the offset MAP, to align with the runway and can be stabilized by 500 feet above ground level (AGL) on the extended runway centerline. A cloud ceiling for the approach is established so that the aircraft conducting the offset approach has nominally at least 30 seconds or more to acquire the leading straight−in aircraft prior to reaching the offset MAP. If visual acquisition is not accomplished prior to crossing the offset MAP, a missed approach must be executed.

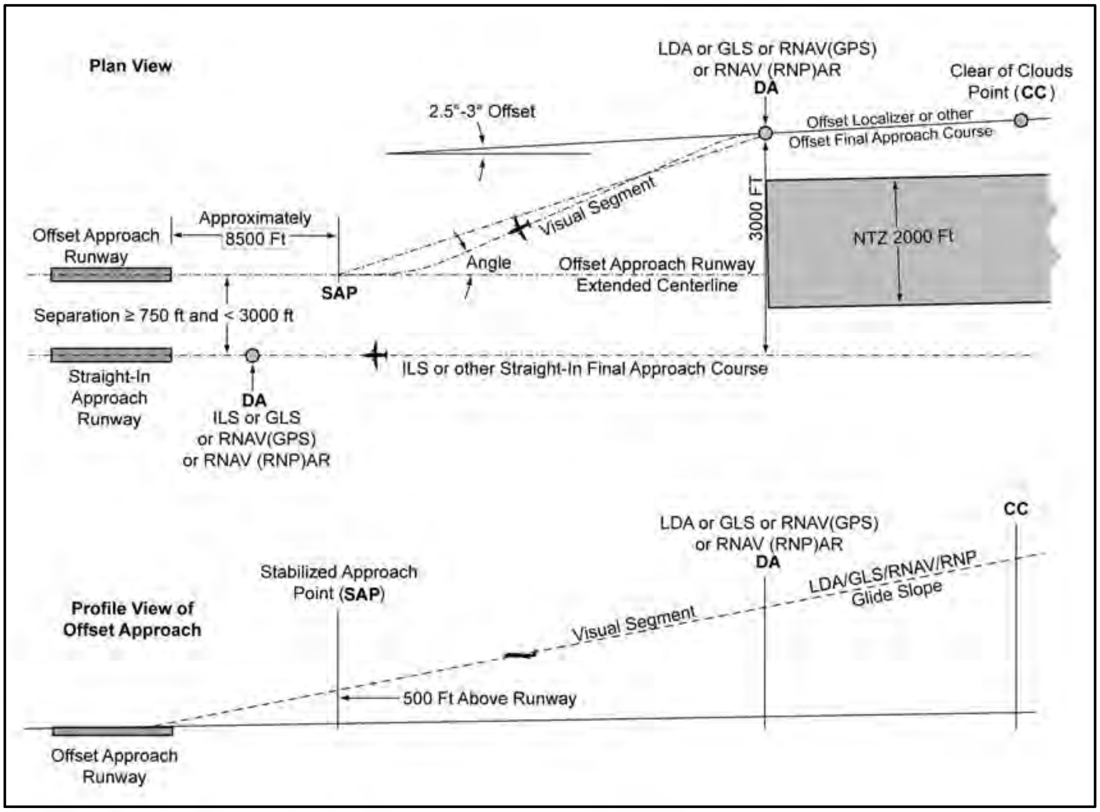
20.7.5 Flight Management System (FMS) coding of the offset RNAV PRM and GLS PRM approaches in a SOIA operation is different than other RNAV and GLS approach coding in that it does not match the initial missed approach procedure published on the charted IAP. In the SOIA design of the offset approach, lateral course guidance terminates at the fictitious threshold point (FTP), which is an extension of the final approach course beyond the offset MAP to a point near the runway threshold. The FTP is designated in the approach coding as the MAP so that vertical guidance is available to the pilot to the runway threshold, just as vertical guidance is provided by the offset LDA glideslope. No matter what type of offset approach is being conducted, reliance on lateral guidance is discontinued at the charted MAP and replaced by visual maneuvering to accomplish runway alignment.

20.7.5.1 As a result of this approach coding, when executing a missed approach at and after passing the charted offset MAP, a heading must initially be flown (either hand−flown or using autopilot “heading mode”) before engaging LNAV. If the pilot engages LNAV immediately, the aircraft may continue to track toward the FTP instead of commencing a turn toward the missed approach holding fix. Notes on the charted IAP and in the AAUP make specific reference to this procedure.

20.7.5.2 Some FMSs do not code waypoints inside of the FAF as part of the approach. Therefore, the depicted MAP on the charted IAP may not be included in the offset approach coding. Pilots utilizing those FMSs may identify the location of the waypoint by noting its distance from the FTP as published on the charted IAP. In those same FMSs, the straight−in SOIA approach will not display a waypoint inside the PFAF. The same procedures may be utilized to identify an uncoded waypoint. In this case, the location is determined by noting its distance from the runway waypoint or using an authorized distance as published on the charted IAP.

20.7.5.3 Because the FTP is coded as the MAP, the FMS map display will depict the initial missed approach course as beginning at the FTP. This depiction does not match the charted initial missed approach procedure on the IAP. Pilots are reminded that charted IAP guidance is to be followed, not the map display. Once the aircraft completes the initial turn when commencing a missed approach, the remainder of the procedure coding is standard and can be utilized as with any other IAP.

FIG ENR 1.5−36
SOIA Approach Geometry



NOTE−

SAP	*The stabilized approach point is a design point along the extended centerline of the intended landing runway on the glide slope/glide path at 500 feet above the runway threshold elevation. It is used to verify a sufficient distance is provided for the visual maneuver after the offset course approach DA to permit the pilots to conform to approved, stabilized approach criteria. The SAP is not published on the IAP.*
Offset Course DA	*The point along the LDA, or other offset course, where the course separation with the adjacent ILS, or other straight-in course, reaches the minimum distance permitted to conduct closely spaced approaches. Typically that minimum distance will be 3,000 feet without the use of high update radar; with high update radar, course separation of less than 3,000 ft may be used when validated by a safety study. The altitude of the glide slope/glide path at that point determines the offset course approach decision altitude and is where the NTZ terminates. Maneuvering inside the DA is done in visual conditions.*
Visual Segment Angle	*Angle, as determined by the SOIA design tool, formed by the extension of the straight segment of the calculated flight track (between the offset course MAP/DA and the SAP) and the extended runway centerline. The size of the angle is dependent on the aircraft approach categories (Category D or only selected categories/speeds) that are authorized to use the offset course approach and the spacing between the runways.*
Visibility	*Distance from the offset course approach DA to runway threshold in statute mile.*
Procedure	*The aircraft on the offset course approach must see the runway-landing environment and, if ATC has advised that traffic on the straight-in approach is a factor, the offset course approach aircraft must visually acquire the straight-in approach aircraft and report it in sight to ATC prior to reaching the DA for the offset course approach.*

CC *The Clear of Clouds point is the position on the offset final approach course where aircraft first operate in visual meteorological conditions below the ceiling, when the actual weather conditions are at, or near, the minimum ceiling for SOIA operations. Ceiling is defined by the Aeronautical Information Manual.*

20.7.6 SOIA PRM approaches utilize the same dual communications procedures as do other PRM approaches.

NOTE−
At KSFO, pilots conducting SOIA operations select the monitor frequency audio when communicating with the final radar controller, not the tower controller as is customary. In this special case, the monitor controller's transmissions, if required, override the final controller's frequency. This procedure is addressed on the AAUP.

20.7.6.1 SOIA utilizes the same AAUP format as do other PRM approaches. The minimum weather conditions that are required are listed. Because of the more complex nature of instructions for conducting SOIA approaches, the "Runway Specific" items are more numerous and lengthy.

20.7.6.2 Examples of SOIA offset runway specific notes:

a) Aircraft must remain on the offset course until passing the offset MAP prior to maneuvering to align with the centerline of the offset approach runway.

b) Pilots are authorized to continue past the offset MAP to align with runway centerline when:

1) the straight−in approach traffic is in sight and is expected to remain in sight,

2) ATC has been advised that "traffic is in sight." (ATC is not required to acknowledge this transmission),

3) the runway environment is in sight. Otherwise, a missed approach must be executed. Between the offset MAP and the runway threshold, pilots conducting the offset PRM approach must not pass the straight−in aircraft and are responsible for separating themselves visually from traffic conducting the straight−in PRM approach to the adjacent runway, which means maneuvering the aircraft as necessary to avoid that traffic until landing, and providing wake turbulence avoidance, if applicable. Pilots maintaining visual separation should advise ATC, as soon as practical, if visual contact with the aircraft conducting the straight−in PRM approach is lost and execute a missed approach unless otherwise instructed by ATC.

20.7.6.3 Examples of SOIA straight−in runway specific notes:

a) To facilitate the offset aircraft in providing wake mitigation, pilots should descend on, not above, the glideslope/glidepath.

b) Conducting the straight−in approach, pilots should be aware that the aircraft conducting the offset approach will be approaching from the right/left rear and will be operating in close proximity to the straight−in aircraft.

20.7.7 Recap.

The following are differences between widely spaced simultaneous approaches (at least 4,300 feet between the runway centerlines) and Simultaneous PRM close parallel approaches which are of importance to the pilot:

20.7.7.1 Runway Spacing. Prior to PRM simultaneous close parallel approaches, most ATC−directed breakouts were the result of two aircraft in−trail on the same final approach course getting too close together. Two aircraft going in the same direction did not mandate quick reaction times. With PRM closely spaced approaches, two aircraft could be alongside each other, navigating on courses that are separated by less than 4,300 feet and as close as 3,000 feet. In the unlikely event that an aircraft "blunders" off its course and makes a worst case turn of 30 degrees toward the adjacent final approach course, closing speeds of 135 feet per second could occur that constitute the need for quick reaction. A blunder has to be recognized by the monitor controller, and breakout instructions issued to the endangered aircraft. The pilot will not have any warning that a breakout is imminent because the blundering aircraft will be on another frequency. It is important that, when a pilot receives breakout instructions, the assumption is made that a blundering aircraft is about to (or has penetrated the NTZ) and is heading toward his/her approach course. The pilot must initiate a breakout as soon as safety allows. While conducting PRM approaches, pilots must maintain an increased sense of awareness in order to immediately react to an ATC (breakout) instruction and maneuver (as instructed by ATC) away from a blundering aircraft.

20.7.7.2 Communications. Dual VHF communications procedures should be carefully followed. One of the assumptions made that permits the safe conduct of PRM approaches is that there will be no blocked communications.

20.7.7.3 Hand−flown Breakouts. The use of the autopilot is encouraged while flying a PRM approach, but the autopilot must be disengaged in the rare event that a breakout is issued. Simulation studies of breakouts have shown that a hand−flown breakout can be initiated consistently faster than a breakout performed using the autopilot.

20.7.7.4 TCAS. The ATC breakout instruction is the primary means of conflict resolution. TCAS, if installed, provides another form of conflict resolution in the unlikely event other separation standards would fail. TCAS is not required to conduct a closely spaced approach.

The TCAS provides only vertical resolution of aircraft conflicts, while the ATC breakout instruction provides both vertical and horizontal guidance for conflict resolutions. Pilots should always immediately follow the TCAS Resolution Advisory (RA), whenever it is received. Should a TCAS RA be received before, during, or after an ATC breakout instruction is issued, the pilot should follow the RA, even if it conflicts with the climb/descent portion of the breakout maneuver. If following an RA requires deviating from an ATC clearance, the pilot must advise ATC as soon as practical. While following an RA, it is extremely important that the pilot also comply with the turn portion of the ATC breakout instruction unless the pilot determines safety to be factor. Adhering to these procedures assures the pilot that acceptable "breakout" separation margins will always be provided, even in the face of a normal procedural or system failure.

21. Simultaneous Converging Instrument Approaches

21.1 ATC may conduct instrument approaches simultaneously to converging runways; i.e., runways having an included angle from 15 to 100 degrees, at airports where a program has been specifically approved to do so.

21.2 The basic concept requires that dedicated, separate standard instrument approach procedures be developed for each converging runway included. These approaches can be identified by the letter "V" in the title; for example, "ILS V Rwy 17 (CONVERGING)".Missed approach points must be at least 3 miles apart and missed approach procedures ensure that missed approach protected airspace does not overlap.

21.3 Other requirements are: radar availability, nonintersecting final approach courses, precision approach capability for each runway and, if runways intersect, controllers must be able to apply visual separation as well as intersecting runway separation criteria. Intersecting runways also require minimums of at least 700 foot ceilings and 2 miles visibility. Straight in approaches and landings must be made.

21.4 Whenever simultaneous converging approaches are in use, aircraft will be informed by the controller as soon as feasible after initial contact or via ATIS. Additionally, the radar controller will have direct communications capability with the tower controller where separation responsibility has not been delegated to the tower.

22. Timed Approaches From a Holding Fix

22.1 Timed approaches may be conducted when the following conditions are met:

22.1.1 A control tower is in operation at the airport where the approaches are conducted.

22.1.2 Direct communications are maintained between the pilot and the center/approach controller until the pilot is instructed to contact the tower.

22.1.3 If more than one missed approach procedure is available, none requires a course reversal.

22.1.4 If only one missed approach procedure is available, the following conditions are met.

22.1.4.1 Course reversal is not required.

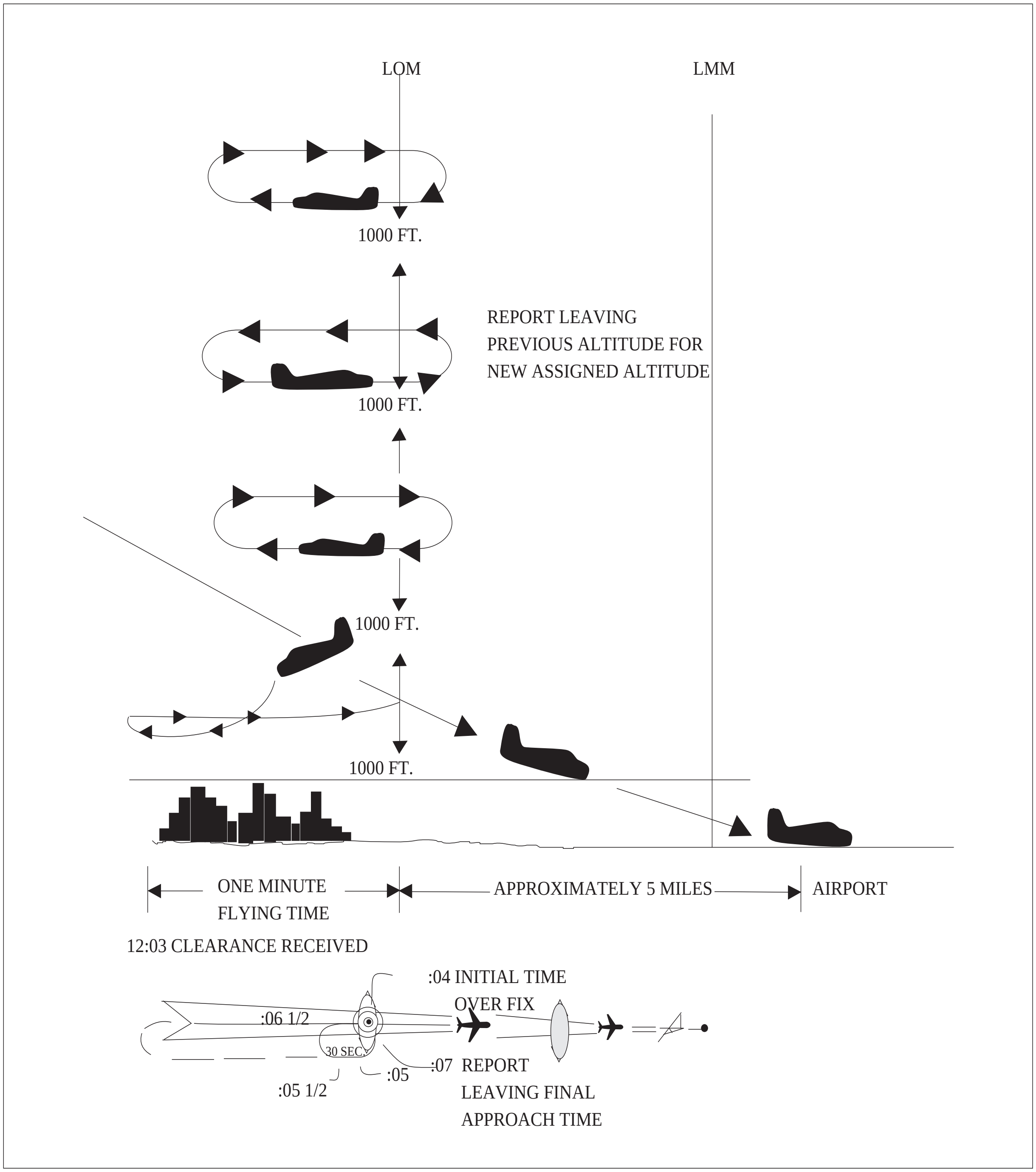
22.1.4.2 Reported ceiling and visibility are equal to or greater than the highest prescribed circling minimums for the instrument approach procedure.

22.1.5 When cleared for the approach, pilots must not execute a procedure turn. (See 14 CFR Section 91.175j.)

22.2 Although the controller will not specifically state that "timed approaches are in use," the assigning a time to depart the final approach fix inbound (nonprecision approach) or the outer marker or the fix used in lieu of the outer marker inbound (precision approach) is indicative that timed approach procedures are being utilized, or in lieu of holding, the controller may use radar vectors to the final approach course to establish a mileage interval between aircraft that will insure the appropriate time sequence between the final approach fix/outer marker or the fix used in lieu of the outer marker and the airport.

22.3 Each pilot in an approach sequence will be given advance notice as to the time he/she should leave the holding point on approach to the airport. When a time to leave the holding point has been received, the pilot should adjust his/her flight path to leave the fix as closely as possible to the designated time. (See FIG ENR 1.5−37.)

FIG ENR 1.5−37
Timed Approaches from a Holding Fix



EXAMPLE−
At 12:03 local time, in the example shown, a pilot holding, receives instructions to leave the fix inbound at 12:07. These instructions are received just as the pilot has completed turn at the outbound end of the holding pattern and is proceeding inbound toward the fix. Arriving back over the fix, the pilot notes that the time is 12:04 and that there are 3 minutes to lose in order to leave the fix at the assigned time. Since the time remaining is more than two minutes, the pilot plans to fly a race track pattern rather than a 360 degree turn, which would use up 2 minutes. The turns at the ends of the race track pattern will consume approximately 2 minutes. Three minutes to go, minus 2 minutes required for the turns, leaves 1 minute for level flight. Since two portions of level flight will be required to get back to the fix inbound, the pilot halves the 1 minute remaining

and plans to fly level for 30 seconds outbound before starting the turn back to the fix on final approach. If the winds were negligible at flight altitude, this procedure would bring the pilot inbound across the fix precisely at the specified time of 12:07. However, if expecting headwind on final approach, the pilot should shorten the 30 second outbound course somewhat, knowing that the wind will carry the aircraft away from the fix faster while outbound and decrease the ground speed while returning to the fix. On the other hand, compensating for a tailwind on final approach, the pilot should lengthen the calculated 30 second outbound heading somewhat, knowing that the wind would tend to hold the aircraft closer to the fix while outbound and increase the ground speed while returning to the fix.

23. Contact Approach

23.1 Pilots operating in accordance with an IFR flight plan, provided they are clear of clouds and have at least 1 mile flight visibility and can reasonably expect to continue to the destination airport in those conditions, may request ATC authorization for a "contact approach."

23.2 Controllers may authorize a "contact approach" provided:

23.2.1 The contact approach is specifically requested by the pilot. ATC cannot initiate this approach.

EXAMPLE−
Request contact approach.

23.2.2 The reported ground visibility at the destination airport is at least 1 statute mile.

23.2.3 The contact approach will be made to an airport having a standard or special instrument approach procedure.

23.2.4 Approved separation is applied between aircraft so cleared and between these aircraft and other IFR or special VFR aircraft.

EXAMPLE−
Cleared contact approach (and if required) at or below (altitude) (routing) if not possible (alternative procedures) and advise.

23.3 A contact approach is an approach procedure that may be used by a pilot (with prior authorization from ATC) in lieu of conducting a standard or special instrument approach procedure (IAP) to an airport. It is not intended for use by a pilot on an IFR flight clearance to operate to an airport not having a published and functioning IAP. Nor is it intended for an aircraft to conduct an instrument approach to one airport and then, when "in the clear," discontinue that approach and proceed to another airport. In the execution of a contact approach, the pilot assumes the responsibility for obstruction clearance. If radar service is being received, it will automatically terminate when the pilot is instructed to change to advisory frequency.

24. Use of Enhanced Flight Vision Systems (EFVS) on Instrument Approaches

24.1 Introduction. During an instrument approach, an EFVS can enable a pilot to see the approach lights, visual references associated with the runway environment, and other objects or features that might not be visible using natural vision alone. An EFVS uses a head−up display (HUD), or an equivalent display that is a head−up presentation, to combine flight information, flight symbology, navigation guidance, and a real−time image of the external scene to the pilot. Combining the flight information, navigation guidance, and sensor imagery on a HUD (or equivalent display) allows the pilot to continue looking forward along the flightpath throughout the entire approach, landing, and rollout.

An EFVS operation is an operation in which visibility conditions require an EFVS to be used in lieu of natural vision to perform an approach or landing, determine enhanced flight visibility, identify required visual references, or conduct a rollout. There are two types of EFVS operations:

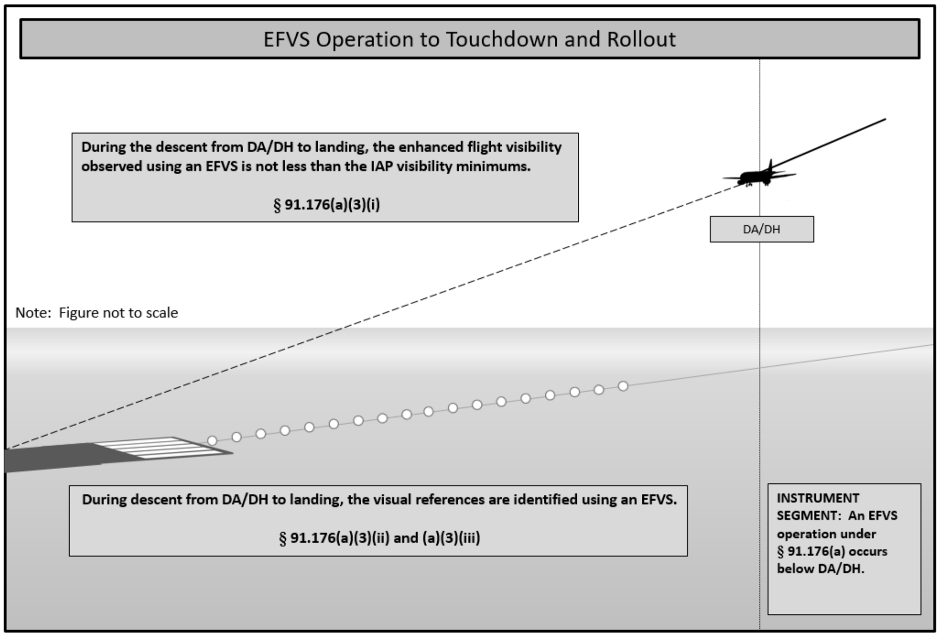
24.1.1 EFVS operations to touchdown and rollout.

24.1.2 EFVS operations to 100 feet above the touchdown zone elevation (TDZE).

24.2 EFVS Operations to Touchdown and Rollout. An EFVS operation to touchdown and rollout is an operation in which the pilot uses the enhanced vision imagery provided by an EFVS in lieu of natural vision to descend below DA or DH to touchdown and rollout. (See FIG ENR 1.5−38.) These operations may be conducted only on Standard Instrument Approach Procedures (SIAP) or special IAPs that have a DA or DH (for example, precision or APV approach). An EFVS operation to touchdown and rollout may not be conducted on an approach that has circling minimums. The regulations for EFVS operations to touchdown and rollout can be found in 14 CFR § 91.176(a).

FIG ENR 1.5−38

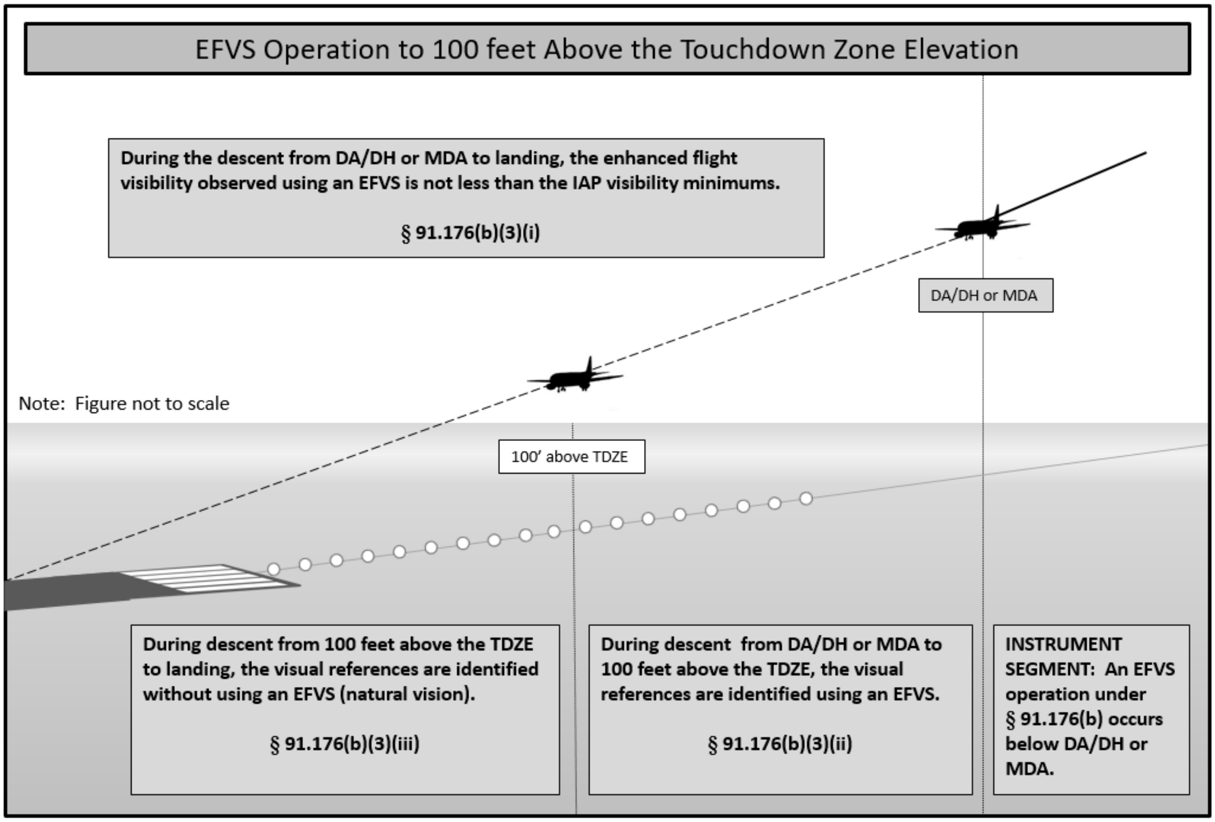
EFVS Operation to Touchdown and Rollout



24.3 EFVS Operations to 100 Feet Above the TDZE. An EFVS operation to 100 feet above the TDZE is an operation in which the pilot uses the enhanced vision imagery provided by an EFVS in lieu of natural vision to descend below DA/DH or MDA down to 100 feet above the TDZE. (See FIG ENR 1.5−39.) To continue the approach below 100 feet above the TDZE, a pilot must have sufficient flight visibility to identify the required visual references using natural vision and must continue to use the EFVS to ensure the enhanced flight visibility meets the visibility requirements of the IAP being flown. These operations may be conducted on SIAPs or special IAPs that have a DA/DH or MDA. An EFVS operation to 100 feet above the TDZE may not be conducted on an approach that has circling minimums. The regulations for EFVS operations to 100 feet above the TDZE can be found in 14 CFR § 91.176(b).

FIG ENR 1.5−39

EFVS Operation to 100 ft Above the TDZE



24.4 EFVS Equipment Requirements. An EFVS that is installed on a U.S.−registered aircraft and is used to conduct EFVS operations must conform to an FAA−type design approval (i.e., a type certificate (TC), amended TC, or supplemental type certificate (STC)). A foreign−registered aircraft used to conduct EFVS operations that does not have an FAA−type design approval must be equipped with an EFVS that has been approved by either the State of the Operator or the State of Registry to meet the requirements of ICAO Annex 6. Equipment requirements for an EFVS operation to touchdown and rollout can be found in 14 CFR § 91.176(a)(1), and the equipment requirements for an EFVS operation to 100 feet above the TDZE can be found in 14 CFR § 91.176(b)(1). An operator can determine the eligibility of their aircraft to conduct EFVS operations by referring to the Airplane Flight Manual, Airplane Flight Manual Supplement, Rotorcraft Flight Manual, or Rotorcraft Flight Manual Supplement as applicable.

24.5 Operating Requirements. Any operator who conducts EFVS operations to touchdown and rollout (14 CFR § 91.176(a)) must have an OpSpec, MSpec, or LOA that specifically authorizes those operations. Parts 91K, 121, 125, 129, and 135 operators who conduct EFVS operations to 100 feet above the TDZE (14 CFR § 91.176(b))must have an OpSpec, MSpec, or LOA that specifically authorizes the operation. Part 91 operators (other than 91K operators) are not required to have an LOA to conduct EFVS operations to 100 feet above the TDZE in the United States. However, an optional LOA is available to facilitate operational approval from foreign Civil Aviation Authorities (CAA). To conduct an EFVS operation to touchdown and rollout during an authorized Category II or III operation, the operator must have:

24.5.1 An OpSpec, MSpec, or LOA authorizing EFVS operations to touchdown and rollout (14 CFR § 91.176(a)); and

24.5.2 An OpSpec, MSpec, or LOA authorizing Category II or Category III operations.

24.6 EFVS Operations in Rotorcraft. Currently, EFVS operations in rotorcraft can only be conducted on IAPs that are flown to a runway. Instrument approach criteria, procedures, and appropriate visual references have not yet been developed for straight−in landing operations below DA/DH or MDA under IFR to heliports or platforms. An EFVS cannot be used in lieu of natural vision to descend below published minimums on copter approaches to a point in space (PinS) followed by a “proceed visual flight rules (VFR)” visual segment, or on approaches designed to a specific landing site using a “proceed visually” visual segment.

24.7 EFVS Pilot Requirements. A pilot who conducts EFVS operations must receive ground and flight training specific to the EFVS operation to be conducted. The training must be obtained from an authorized training provider under a training program approved by the FAA. Additionally, recent flight experience and proficiency or competency check requirements apply to EFVS operations. These requirements are addressed in 14 CFR §§ 61.66, 91.1065, 121.441, Appendix F to Part 121, 125.287, and 135.293.

24.8 Enhanced Flight Visibility and Visual Reference Requirements. To descend below DA/DH or MDA during EFVS operations under 14 CFR § 91.176(a) or (b), a pilot must make a determination that the enhanced flight visibility observed by using an EFVS is not less than what is prescribed by the IAP being flown. In addition, the visual references required in 14 CFR § 91.176(a) or (b) must be distinctly visible and identifiable to the pilot using the EFVS. The determination of enhanced flight visibility is a separate action from that of identifying required visual references, and is different from ground−reported visibility. Even though the reported visibility or the visibility observed using natural vision may be less, as long as the EFVS provides the required enhanced flight visibility and a pilot meets all of the other requirements, the pilot can continue descending below DA/DH or MDA using the EFVS. Suitable enhanced flight visibility is necessary to ensure the aircraft is in a position to continue the approach and land. It is important to understand that using an EFVS does not result in obtaining lower minima with respect to the visibility or the DA/DH or MDA specified in the IAP. An EFVS simply provides another means of operating in the visual segment of an IAP. The DA/DH or MDA and the visibility value specified in the IAP to be flown do not change.

24.9 Flight Planning and Beginning or Continuing an Approach Under IFR. A Part 121, 125, or 135 operator’s OpSpec or LOA for EFVS operations may authorize an EFVS operational credit dispatching or releasing a flight and for beginning or continuing an instrument approach procedure. When a pilot reaches DA/DH or MDA, the pilot conducts the EFVS operation in accordance with 14 CFR § 91.176(a) or (b) and their authorization to conduct EFVS operations.

24.10 Missed Approach Considerations. In order to conduct an EFVS operation, the EFVS must be operable. In the event of a failure of any required component of an EFVS at any point in the approach to touchdown, a missed approach is required. However, this provision does not preclude a pilot’s authority to continue an approach if continuation of an approach is considered by the pilot to be a safer course of action.

24.11 Light Emitting Diode (LED) Airport Lighting Impact on EFVS Operations. Incandescent lamps are being replaced with LEDs at some airports in threshold lights, taxiway edge lights, taxiway centerline lights, low intensity runway edge lights, windcone lights, beacons, and some obstruction lighting. Additionally, there are plans to replace incandescent lamps with LEDs in approach lighting systems. Pilots should be aware that LED lights cannot be sensed by infrared−based EFVSs. Further, the FAA does not currently collect or disseminate information about where LED lighting is installed.

24.12 Other Vision Systems. Unlike an EFVS that meets the equipment requirements of 14 CFR § 91.176, a Synthetic Vision System (SVS) or Synthetic Vision Guidance System (SVGS) does not provide a real−time sensor image of the outside scene and also does not meet the equipment requirements for EFVS operations. A pilot cannot use a synthetic vision image on a head−up or a head−down display in lieu of natural vision to descend below DA/DH or MDA. An EFVS can, however, be integrated with an SVS, also known as a Combined Vision System (CVS). A CVS can be used to conduct EFVS operations if all of the requirements for an EFVS are satisfied and the SVS image does not interfere with the pilot’s ability to see the external scene, to identify the required visual references, or to see the sensor image.

24.13 Additional Information. Operational criteria for EFVS can be found in Advisory Circular (AC) 90−106, Enhanced Flight Vision System Operations, and airworthiness criteria for EFVS can be found in AC 20−167, Airworthiness Approval of Enhanced Vision System, Synthetic Vision System, Combined Vision System, and Enhanced Flight Vision System Equipment.

25. Visual Approach

25.1 A visual approach is conducted on an IFR flight plan and authorizes a pilot to proceed visually and clear of clouds to the airport. The pilot must have either the airport or the preceding identified aircraft in sight. This approach must be authorized and controlled by the appropriate air traffic control facility. Reported weather at the airport must have a ceiling at or above 1,000 feet and visibility 3 miles or greater. ATC may authorize this type of approach when it will be operationally beneficial. Visual approaches are an IFR procedure conducted under Instrument Flight Rules in visual meteorological conditions. Cloud clearance requirements of 14 CFR Section 91.155 are not applicable, unless required by operation specifications. When conducting visual approaches, pilots are encouraged to use other available navigational aids to assist in positive lateral and vertical alignment with the runway.

25.2 Operating to an Airport Without Weather Reporting Service. ATC will advise the pilot when weather is not available at the destination airport. ATC may initiate a visual approach provided there is a reasonable assurance that weather at the airport is a ceiling at or above 1,000 feet and visibility 3 miles or greater (e.g., area weather reports, PIREPs, etc.).

25.3 Operating to an Airport With an Operating Control Tower. Aircraft may be authorized to conduct a visual approach to one runway while other aircraft are conducting IFR or VFR approaches to another parallel, intersecting, or converging runway. ATC may authorize a visual approach after advising all aircraft involved that other aircraft are conducting operations to the other runway. This may be accomplished through use of the ATIS.

25.3.1 When operating to parallel runways separated by less than 2,500 feet, ATC will ensure approved separation is provided unless the succeeding aircraft reports sighting the preceding aircraft to the adjacent parallel and visual separation is applied.

25.3.2 When operating to parallel runways separated by at least 2,500 feet but less than 4,300 feet, ATC will ensure approved separation is provided until the aircraft are issued an approach clearance and one pilot has acknowledged receipt of a visual approach clearance, and the other pilot has acknowledged receipt of a visual or instrument approach clearance, and aircraft are established on a heading or established on a direct course to a fix or cleared on an RNAV/instrument approach procedure which will intercept the extended centerline of the runway at an angle not greater than 30 degrees.

25.3.3 When operating to parallel runways separated by 4,300 feet or more, ATC will ensure approved separation is provided until one of the aircraft has been issued and the pilot has acknowledged receipt of the visual approach clearance, and each aircraft is assigned a heading, or established on a direct course to a fix, or cleared on an RNAV/instrument approach procedure which will allow the aircraft to intercept the extended centerline of the runway at an angle not greater than 30 degrees.

NOTE−
The intent of the 30 degree intercept angle is to reduce the potential for overshoots of the final and to preclude side−by−side operations with one or both aircraft in a belly−up configuration during the turn−on.

25.4 Clearance for Visual Approach. At locations with an operating control tower, ATC will issue approach clearances that will include an assigned runway. At locations without an operating control tower or where a part−time tower is closed, ATC will issue a visual approach clearance to the airport only.

25.5 Separation Responsibilities. If the pilot has the airport in sight but cannot see the aircraft to be followed, ATC may clear the aircraft for a visual approach; however, ATC retains both separation and wake vortex separation responsibility. When visually following a preceding aircraft, acceptance of the visual approach clearance constitutes acceptance of pilot responsibility for maintaining a safe approach interval and adequate wake turbulence separation.

25.6 A visual approach is not an IAP and therefore has no missed approach segment. If a go−around is necessary for any reason, aircraft operating at controlled airports will be issued an appropriate clearance or instruction by the tower to enter the traffic pattern for landing or proceed as otherwise instructed. In either case, the pilot is responsible to maintain terrain and obstruction avoidance until reaching an ATC assigned altitude if issued, and

ATC will provide approved separation or visual separation from other IFR aircraft. At uncontrolled airports, aircraft are expected to remain clear of clouds and complete a landing as soon as possible. If a landing cannot be accomplished, the aircraft is expected to remain clear of clouds and contact ATC as soon as possible for further clearance. Separation from other IFR aircraft will be maintained under these circumstances.

25.7 Visual approaches reduce pilot/controller workload and expedite traffic by shortening flight paths to the airport. It is the pilot's responsibility to advise ATC as soon as possible if a visual approach is not desired.

25.8 Authorization to conduct a visual approach is an IFR authorization and does not alter IFR flight plan cancellation responsibility. See ENR 1.10, Paragraph 11.2, Canceling IFR Flight Plan.

25.9 Radar service is automatically terminated, without advising the pilot, when the aircraft is instructed to change to advisory frequency.

26. Charted Visual Flight Procedures (CVFPs)

26.1 CVFPs are charted visual approaches established for environmental/noise considerations, and/or when necessary for the safety and efficiency of air traffic operations. The approach charts depict prominent landmarks, courses, and recommended altitudes to specific runways. CVFPs are designed to be used primarily for turbojet aircraft.

26.2 These procedures will be used only at airports with an operating control tower.

26.3 Most approach charts will depict some NAVAID information which is for supplemental navigational guidance only.

26.4 Unless indicating a Class B airspace floor, all depicted altitudes are for noise abatement purposes and are recommended only. Pilots are not prohibited from flying other than recommended altitudes if operational requirements dictate.

26.5 When landmarks used for navigation are not visible at night, the approach will be annotated "PROCEDURE NOT AUTHORIZED AT NIGHT."

26.6 CVFPs usually begin within 20 flying miles from the airport.

26.7 Published weather minimums for CVFPs are based on minimum vectoring altitudes rather than the recommended altitudes depicted on charts.

26.8 CVFPs are not instrument approaches and do not have missed approach segments.

26.9 ATC will not issue clearances for CVFPs when the weather is less than the published minimum.

26.10 ATC will clear aircraft for a CVFP after the pilot reports siting a charted landmark or a preceding aircraft. If instructed to follow a preceding aircraft, pilots are responsible for maintaining a safe approach interval and wake turbulence separation.

26.11 Pilots should advise ATC if at any point they are unable to continue an approach or lose sight of a preceding aircraft. Missed approaches will be handled as a go−around.

26.12 When conducting visual approaches, pilots are encouraged to use other available navigational aids to assist in positive lateral and vertical alignment with the assigned runway.

27. Missed Approach

27.1 When a landing cannot be accomplished, advise ATC and, upon reaching the missed approach point defined on the approach procedure chart, the pilot must comply with the missed approach instructions for the procedure being used or with an alternate missed approach procedure specified by ATC.

27.2 Obstacle protection for missed approach is predicated on the missed approach being initiated at the decision altitude/decision height (DA/DH) or at the missed approach point and not lower than minimum descent altitude

(MDA). A climb gradient of at least 200 feet per nautical mile is required, (except for Copter approaches, where a climb of at least 400 feet per nautical mile is required), unless a higher climb gradient is published in the notes section of the approach procedure chart. When higher than standard climb gradients are specified, the end point of the non−standard climb will be specified at either an altitude or a fix. Pilots must preplan to ensure that the aircraft can meet the climb gradient (expressed in feet per nautical mile) required by the procedure in the event of a missed approach, and be aware that flying at a higher than anticipated ground speed increases the climb rate requirement (feet per minute). Tables for the conversion of climb gradients (feet per nautical mile) to climb rate (feet per minute), based on ground speed, are included on page D1 of the U.S. Terminal Procedures booklets. Reasonable buffers are provided for normal maneuvers. However, no consideration is given to an abnormally early turn. Therefore, when an early missed approach is executed, pilots should, unless otherwise cleared by ATC, fly the IAP as specified on the approach plate to the missed approach point at or above the MDA or DH before executing a turning maneuver.

27.3 If visual reference is lost while circling to land from an instrument approach, the missed approach specified for that particular procedure must be followed (unless an alternate missed approach procedure is specified by ATC). To become established on the prescribed missed approach course, the pilot should make an initial climbing turn toward the landing runway and continue the turn until established on the missed approach course. Inasmuch as the circling maneuver may be accomplished in more than one direction, different patterns will be required to become established on the prescribed missed approach course depending on the aircraft position at the time visual reference is lost. Adherence to the procedure will help assure that an aircraft will remain laterally within the circling and missed approach obstruction clearance areas. Refer to paragraph 27.8 concerning vertical obstruction clearance when starting a missed approach at other than the MAP. (See FIG ENR 1.5−40.)

FIG ENR 1.5−40
Circling and Missed Approach Obstruction Clearance Areas

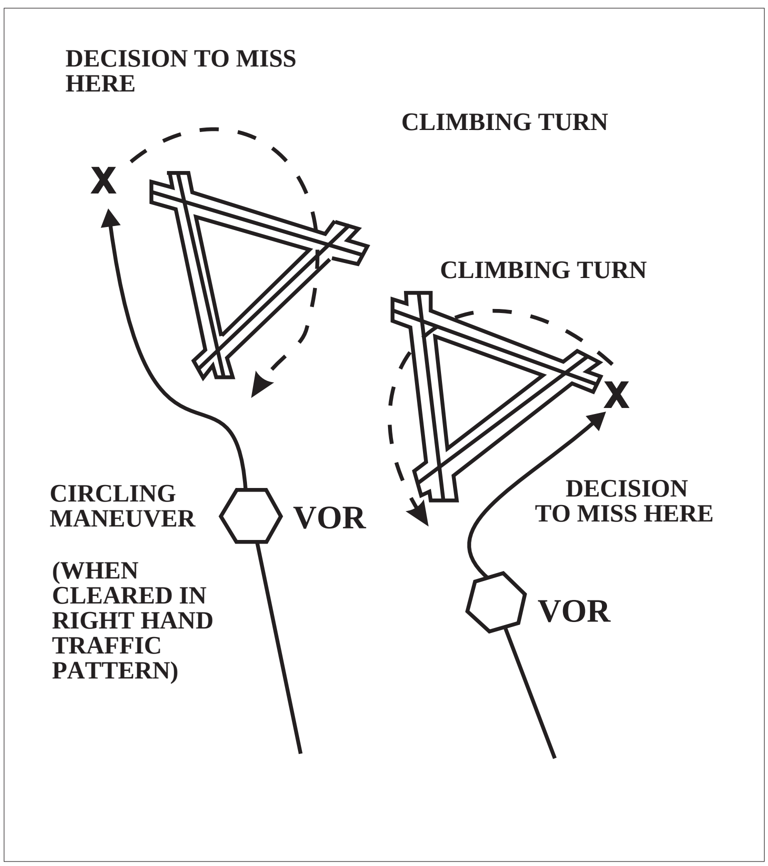


FIG ENR 1.5−41
Missed Approach

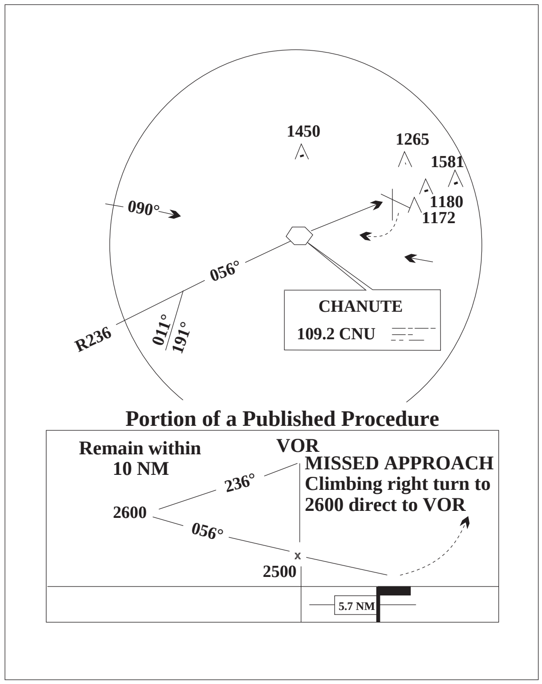
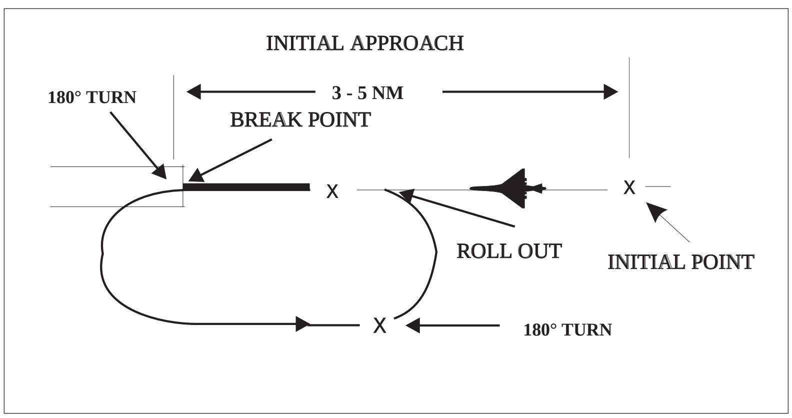


FIG ENR 1.5−42
Overhead Maneuver



27.4 At locations where ATC radar service is provided, the pilot should conform to radar vectors when provided by ATC in lieu of the published missed approach procedure.

27.5 Some locations may have a preplanned alternate missed approach procedure for use in the event the primary NAVAID used for the missed approach procedure is unavailable. To avoid confusion, the alternate missed approach instructions are not published on the chart. However, the alternate missed approach holding pattern will be depicted on the instrument approach chart for pilot situational awareness and to assist ATC by not having to issue detailed holding instructions. The alternate missed approach may be based on NAVAIDs not used in the approach procedure or the primary missed approach. When the alternate missed approach procedure is implemented by NOTAM, it becomes a mandatory part of the procedure. The NOTAM will specify both the textual instructions and any additional equipment requirements necessary to complete the procedure. Air traffic may also issue instructions for the alternate missed approach when necessary, such as when the primary missed approach NAVAID fails during the approach. Pilots may reject an ATC clearance for an alternate missed approach that requires equipment not necessary for the published approach procedure when the alternate missed approach is issued after beginning the approach. However, when the alternate missed approach is issued prior to beginning the approach the pilot must either accept the entire procedure (including the alternate missed approach), request a different approach procedure, or coordinate with ATC for alternative action to be taken, i.e., proceed to an alternate airport, etc.

27.6 When the approach has been missed, request a clearance for specific action; i.e., to alternative airport, another approach, etc.

27.7 Pilots must ensure that they have climbed to a safe altitude prior to proceeding off the published missed approach, especially in nonradar environments. Abandoning the missed approach prior to reaching the published altitude may not provide adequate terrain clearance. Additional climb may be required after reaching the holding pattern before proceeding back to the IAF or to an alternate.

27.8 A clearance for an instrument approach procedure includes a clearance to fly the published missed approach procedure, unless otherwise instructed by ATC. The published missed approach procedure provides obstacle clearance only when the missed approach is conducted on the missed approach segment from or above the missed approach point, and assumes a climb rate of 200 feet/NM or higher, as published. If the aircraft initiates a missed approach at a point other than the missed approach point (see paragraph 12.2), from below MDA or DA (H), or on a circling approach, obstacle clearance is not necessarily provided by following the published missed approach procedure, nor is separation assured from other air traffic in the vicinity.

In the event a balked (rejected) landing occurs at a position other than the published missed approach point, the pilot should contact ATC as soon as possible to obtain an amended clearance. If unable to contact ATC for any reason, the pilot should attempt to re−intercept a published segment of the missed approach and comply with route and altitude instructions. If unable to contact ATC, and in the pilot's judgment it is no longer appropriate to fly the published missed approach procedure, then consider either maintaining visual conditions if practicable and reattempt a landing, or a circle−climb over the airport. Should a missed approach become necessary when operating to an airport that is not served by an operating control tower, continuous contact with an air traffic facility may not be possible. In this case, the pilot should execute the appropriate go−around/missed approach procedure without delay and contact ATC when able to do so.

Prior to initiating an instrument approach procedure, the pilot should assess the actions to be taken in the event of a balked (rejected) landing beyond the missed approach point or below the MDA or DA (H) considering the anticipated weather conditions and available aircraft performance. 14 CFR 91.175(e) authorizes the pilot to fly an appropriate missed approach procedure that ensures obstruction clearance, but it does not necessarily consider separation from other air traffic. The pilot must consider other factors such as the aircraft's geographical location with respect to the prescribed missed approach point, direction of flight, and/or minimum turning altitudes in the prescribed missed approach procedure. The pilot must also consider aircraft performance, visual climb restrictions, charted obstacles, published obstacle departure procedure, takeoff visual climb requirements as expressed by nonstandard takeoff minima, other traffic expected to be in the vicinity, or other factors not specifically expressed by the approach procedures.

28. Overhead Approach Maneuver

28.1 Pilots operating in accordance with an IFR flight plan in Visual Meteorological Conditions (VMC) may request ATC authorization for an overhead maneuver. An overhead maneuver is not an instrument approach procedure. Overhead maneuver patterns are developed at airports where aircraft have an operational need to conduct the maneuver. An aircraft conducting an overhead maneuver is considered to be VFR and the IFR flight plan is canceled when the aircraft reaches the initial point on the initial approach portion of the maneuver. (See FIG ENR 1.5−42.) The existence of a standard overhead maneuver pattern does not eliminate the possible requirement for an aircraft to conform to conventional rectangular patterns if an overhead maneuver cannot be approved. Aircraft operating to an airport without a functioning control tower must initiate cancellation of an IFR flight plan prior to executing the overhead maneuver. Cancellation of the IFR flight plan must be accomplished after crossing the landing threshold on the initial portion of the maneuver or after landing. Controllers may authorize an overhead maneuver and issue the following to arriving aircraft:

28.1.1 Pattern altitude and direction of traffic. This information may be omitted if either is standard.

PHRASEOLOGY−
PATTERN ALTITUDE (altitude). RIGHT TURNS.

28.1.2 Request for a report on initial approach.

PHRASEOLOGY−
REPORT INITIAL.

28.1.3 "Break" information and a request for the pilot to report. The "Break Point" will be specified if nonstandard. Pilots may be requested to report "break" if required for traffic or other reasons.

PHRASEOLOGY−
BREAK AT (specified point).
REPORT BREAK.

29. Departure Procedures

29.1 Pre−Taxi Clearance Procedures

29.1.1 Locations where these procedures are in effect are indicated in the Chart Supplement.

29.1.2 Certain airports have established programs whereby pilots of departing IFR aircraft may elect to receive their IFR clearances before they start taxiing for takeoff. The following provisions are included in such procedures:

29.1.2.1 Pilot participation is not mandatory.

29.1.2.2 Participating pilots call clearance delivery/ground control not more than 10 minutes before proposed taxi time.

29.1.2.3 IFR clearance (or delay information, if clearance cannot be obtained) is issued at the time of this initial call−up.

29.1.2.4 When the IFR clearance is received on clearance delivery frequency, pilots call ground control when ready to taxi.

29.1.2.5 Normally, pilots need not inform ground control that they have received IFR clearance on clearance delivery frequency. Certain locations may, however, require that the pilot inform ground control of a portion of the routing or that the IFR clearance has been received.

29.1.2.6 If a pilot cannot establish contact on clearance delivery frequency or has not received an IFR clearance before ready to taxi, the pilot should contact ground control and inform the controller accordingly.

30. Automated Pre−Departure Clearance Procedures

30.1 Many airports in the National Airspace System are equipped with the Terminal Data Link System (TDLS) that includes the Pre−Departure Clearance (PDC) and Controller Pilot Data Link Communication–Departure Clearance (CPDLC-DCL) functions. Both the PDC and CPDLC-DCL functions automate the Clearance Delivery operations in the ATCT for participating users. Both functions display IFR clearances from the ARTCC to the ATCT. The Clearance Delivery controller in the ATCT can append local departure information and transmit the clearance via data link to participating airline/service provider computers for PDC. The airline/service provider will then deliver the clearance via the Aircraft Communications Addressing and Reporting System (ACARS) or a similar data link system, or for non-data link equipped aircraft, via a printer located at the departure gate. For CPDLC-DCL, the departure clearance is uplinked from the ATCT via the Future Air Navigation System (FANS) to the aircraft avionics and requires a response from the flight crew. Both PDC and CPDLC-DCL reduce frequency congestion, controller workload, and are intended to mitigate delivery/read back errors.

30.2 Both services are available only to participating aircraft that have subscribed to the service through an approved service provider.

30.3 In all situations, the pilot is encouraged to contact clearance delivery if a question or concern exists regarding an automated clearance. Due to technical reasons, the following limitations/differences exist between the two services:

30.3.1 PDC

30.3.1.1 Aircraft filing multiple flight plans are limited to one PDC clearance per departure airport within a 24−hour period. Additional clearances will be delivered verbally.

30.3.1.2 If the clearance is revised or modified prior to delivery, it will be rejected from PDC and the clearance will need to be delivered verbally.

30.3.1.3 No acknowledgment of receipt or read back is required for a PDC.

30.3.2 CPDLC−DCL

30.3.2.1 No limitation to the number of clearances received.

30.3.2.2 Allows delivery of revised flight data, including revised departure clearances.

30.3.2.3 A response from the flight crew is required.

30.3.2.4 Requires a logon to the FAA National Single Data Authority − KUSA − utilizing the ATC FANS application.

30.3.2.5 To be eligible, operators must have received CPDLC/FANS authorization from the responsible civil aviation authority, and file appropriate equipment information in ICAO field 10a and in the ICAO field 18 DAT (Other Data Applications) of the flight plan.

31. IFR Clearances Off Uncontrolled Airports

31.1 Pilots departing on an IFR flight plan should consult the Chart Supplement to determine the frequency or telephone number to use to contact clearance delivery. On initial contact, pilots should advise that the flight is IFR and state the departure and destination airports.

31.2 Air traffic facilities providing clearance delivery services via telephone will have their telephone number published in the Chart Supplement of that airport's entry. This same section may also contain a telephone number to use for cancellation of an IFR flight plan after landing.

31.3 Except in Alaska, pilots of MEDEVAC flights may obtain a clearance by calling 1−877−543−4733.

32. Taxi Clearance

32.1 Pilots on IFR flight plans should communicate with the control tower on the appropriate ground control/clearance delivery frequency prior to starting engines to receive engine start time, taxi, and/or clearance information.

33. Line Up and Wait (LUAW)

33.1 Line up and wait is an air traffic control (ATC) procedure designed to position an aircraft onto the runway for an imminent departure. The ATC instruction "LINE UP AND WAIT" is used to instruct a pilot to taxi onto the assigned departure runway, align the aircraft with the correct departure direction and await for further ATC instructions. LUAW is not an authorization to takeoff.

EXAMPLE−
Tower: "N234AR Runway 24L, line up and wait."

NOTE−
Previous reviews of air traffic events, involving LUAW instructions, revealed that a significant number of pilots read back LUAW instructions correctly and departed without a takeoff clearance. Do not confuse LUAW instructions with a departure clearance; the outcome could be catastrophic, especially during intersecting runway operations.

33.2 In instances where the pilot has been instructed to LUAW and has been advised of a reason/condition (wake turbulence, traffic on an intersecting runway, etc.) or the reason/condition is clearly visible (another aircraft that has landed on or is taking off on the same runway), and the reason/condition is satisfied, the pilot should expect an imminent takeoff clearance, unless advised of a delay. If you are uncertain about any ATC instruction or clearance, contact ATC immediately.

33.3 If a takeoff clearance is not received within a reasonable amount of time after instructed to LUAW, ATC should be contacted.

EXAMPLE−
Aircraft: Cessna 234AR holding in position Runway 24L.

Aircraft: Cessna 234AR holding in position Runway 24L at Bravo.

NOTE−
FAA analysis of accidents and incidents involving aircraft holding in position indicate that two minutes or more elapsed between the time the instruction was issued to "line up and wait" and the resulting event (for example, landover or go−around). Pilots should consider the length of time that they have been holding in position whenever they HAVE NOT been advised of any expected delay to determine when it is appropriate to query the controller.

REFERENCE−
Advisory Circulars 91−73A, Part 91 and Part 135 Single−Pilot Procedures during Taxi Operations, and 120−74A, Parts 91, 121, 125, and 135 Flightcrew Procedures during Taxi Operations.

33.4 Situational awareness during line up and wait operations is enhanced by monitoring ATC instructions/clearances issued to other aircraft. Pilots should listen carefully if another aircraft is on frequency that has a similar call sign and pay close attention to communications between ATC and other aircraft. If you are uncertain of an ATC instruction or clearance, query ATC immediately. Care should be taken to not inadvertently execute a clearance/instruction for another aircraft.

33.5 Pilots should be especially vigilant when conducting LUAW operations at night, when intersecting runway operations are being conducted, or during reduced visibility conditions. Pilots should scan the full length of the runway and look for aircraft crossing the runway, on final approach, or landing roll (including intersecting runways) prior to and while taxiing onto the runway. ATC should be contacted anytime there is a concern about a potential conflict or clarity is needed with assigned instructions.

NOTE−
Pilots are reminded of the importance of maintaining situational awareness during LUAW operations with intersecting/crossing runways. Ensure a takeoff clearance has been received before beginning a takeoff roll.

33.6 When two or more runways are active, aircraft may be instructed to "LINE UP AND WAIT" on two or more runways. When multiple runway operations are being conducted, it is important to listen closely for your call sign and runway. Be alert for similar sounding call signs and acknowledge all instructions with your call sign. When you are holding in position and are not sure if the takeoff clearance was for you, ask ATC before you begin takeoff roll. ATC prefers that you confirm a takeoff clearance rather than mistake another aircraft's clearance for your own.

33.7 When ATC issues intersection "line up and wait" and takeoff clearances, the intersection designator will be used. If ATC omits the intersection designator, call ATC for clarification.

EXAMPLE−
Aircraft: "Cherokee 234AR, Runway 24L at November 4, line up and wait."

33.8 If landing traffic is a factor during line up and wait operations, ATC will inform the aircraft in position of the closest traffic within 6 flying miles requesting a full−stop, touch−and−go, stop−and−go, or an unrestricted low approach to the same runway. Pilots should take care to note the position of landing traffic. ATC will also advise the landing traffic when an aircraft is authorized to "line up and wait" on the same runway.

EXAMPLE−
Tower: "Cessna 234AR, Runway 24L, line up and wait. Traffic a Boeing 737, six mile final."

Tower: "Delta 1011, continue, traffic a Cessna 210 holding in position Runway 24L."

NOTE−
ATC will normally withhold landing clearance to arrival aircraft when another aircraft is in position and holding on the runway.

33.9 Never land on a runway that is occupied by another aircraft, even if a landing clearance was issued. Do not hesitate to ask the controller about the traffic on the runway and be prepared to execute a go−around.

NOTE−
Always clarify any misunderstanding or confusion concerning ATC instructions or clearances. ATC should be advised immediately if there is any uncertainty about the ability to comply with any of their instructions.

34. Departure Restrictions, Clearance Void Times, Hold for Release, and Release Times

34.1 ATC may assign departure restrictions, clearance void times, hold for release, and release times, when necessary, to separate departures from other traffic or to restrict or regulate the departure flow. Departures from an airport without an operating control tower must be issued either a departure release (along with a release time and/or void time if applicable), or a hold for release.

REFERENCE−
FAA Order JO 7110.65, Para 4−3−4, Departure Release, Hold for Release, Release Times, Departure Restrictions, and Clearance Void Times.

34.1.1 Clearance Void Times. A pilot may receive a clearance, when operating from an airport without a control tower, which contains a provision for the clearance to be void if not airborne by a specific time. A pilot who does not depart prior to the clearance void time must advise ATC as soon as possible of his or her intentions. ATC will normally advise the pilot of the time allotted to notify ATC that the aircraft did not depart prior to the clearance void time. This time cannot exceed 30 minutes. Failure of an aircraft to contact ATC within 30 minutes after the clearance void time will result in the aircraft being considered overdue and search and rescue procedures initiated.

NOTE−

1. *Other IFR traffic for the airport where the clearance is issued is suspended until the aircraft has contacted ATC or until 30 minutes after the clearance void time or 30 minutes after the clearance release time if no clearance void time is issued.*

2. *If the clearance void time expires, it does not cancel the departure clearance or IFR flight plan. It withdraws the pilot's authority to depart IFR until a new departure release/release time has been issued by ATC and is acknowledged by the pilot.*

3. *Pilots who depart at or after their clearance void time are not afforded IFR separation, and may be in violation of 14 CFR Section 91.173, which requires that pilots receive an appropriate ATC clearance before operating IFR in controlled airspace.*

4. *Pilots who choose to depart VFR after their clearance void time has expired should not depart using the previously assigned IFR transponder code.*

EXAMPLE−
Clearance void if not off by (clearance void time) and, if required, if not off by (clearance void time) advise (facility) not later than (time) of intentions.

34.1.2 Hold for Release. ATC may issue "hold for release" instructions in a clearance to delay an aircraft's departure for traffic management reasons (i.e., weather, traffic volume, etc.). When ATC states in the clearance, "hold for release," the pilot may not depart utilizing that IFR clearance until a release time or additional instructions are issued by ATC. In addition, ATC will include departure delay information in conjunction with "hold for release" instructions. The ATC instruction, "hold for release," applies to the IFR clearance and does not prevent the pilot from departing under VFR. However, prior to takeoff the pilot should cancel the IFR flight plan and operate the transponder/ADS−B on the appropriate VFR code. An IFR clearance may not be available after departure.

EXAMPLE−
(Aircraft identification) cleared to (destination) airport as filed, maintain (altitude), and, if required (additional instructions or information), hold for release, expect (time in hours and/or minutes) departure delay.

34.1.3 Release Times. A "release time" is a departure restriction issued to a pilot by ATC, specifying the earliest time an aircraft may depart. ATC will use "release times" in conjunction with traffic management procedures and/or to separate a departing aircraft from other traffic.

EXAMPLE−
(Aircraft identification) released for departure at (time in hours and/or minutes).

34.1.4 Expect Departure Clearance Time (EDCT). The EDCT is the runway release time assigned to an aircraft included in traffic management programs. Aircraft are expected to depart no earlier than 5 minutes before, and no later than 5 minutes after the EDCT.

34.2 If practical, pilots departing uncontrolled airports should obtain IFR clearances prior to becoming airborne when two−way communication with the controlling ATC facility is available.

35. Departure Control

35.1 Departure Control is an approach control function responsible for ensuring separation between departures. So as to expedite the handling of departures, Departure Control may suggest a takeoff direction other than that which may normally have been used under VFR handling. Many times it is preferred to offer the pilot a runway that will require the fewest turns after takeoff to place the pilot on course or selected departure route as quickly as possible. At many locations particular attention is paid to the use of preferential runways for local noise abatement programs, and route departures away from congested areas.

35.2 Departure Control utilizing radar will normally clear aircraft out of the terminal area using vectors, a diverse vector area (DVA), or published DPs.

35.2.1 When a departure is to be vectored immediately following takeoff using vectors, a DVA, or published DPs that begins with an ATC assigned heading off the ground, the pilot will be advised prior to takeoff of the initial heading to be flown but may not be advised of the purpose of the heading. When ATC assigns an initial heading with the takeoff clearance that will take the aircraft off an assigned procedure (for example, an RNAV SID with a published lateral path to a waypoint and crossing restrictions from the departure end of runway), the controller will assign an altitude to maintain with the initial heading and, if necessary, a speed to maintain.

35.2.2 At some airports when a departure will fly an RNAV SID that begins at the runway, ATC may advise aircraft of the initial fix/waypoint on the RNAV route. The purpose of the advisory is to remind pilots to verify the correct procedure is programmed in the FMS before takeoff. Pilots must immediately advise ATC if a different RNAV SID is entered in the aircraft's FMC. When this advisory is absent, pilots are still required to fly the assigned SID as published.

EXAMPLE−
Delta 345 RNAV to MPASS, Runway 26L, cleared for takeoff.

NOTE−
1. *The SID transition is not restated as it is contained in the ATC clearance.*

2. *Aircraft cleared via RNAV SIDs designed to begin with a vector to the initial waypoint are assigned a heading before departure.*

35.2.3 Pilots operating in a radar environment are expected to associate departure headings or an RNAV departure advisory with vectors or the flight path to their planned route or flight. When given a vector taking the aircraft off a previously assigned nonradar route, the pilot will be advised briefly what the vector is to achieve. Thereafter, radar service will be provided until the aircraft has been reestablished "on-course" using an appropriate navigation aid and the pilot has been advised of the aircraft's position or a handoff is made to another radar controller with further surveillance capabilities.

35.3 Controllers will inform pilots of the departure control frequencies and, if appropriate, the transponder code before takeoff. Pilots must ensure their transponder/ADS−B is adjusted to the "on" or normal operating position as soon as practical and remain on during all operations unless otherwise requested to change to "standby" by ATC. Pilots should not change to the departure control frequency until requested. Controllers may omit the departure control frequency if a DP has or will be assigned and the departure control frequency is published on the DP.

36. Abbreviated IFR Departure Clearance (Cleared . . . as Filed) Procedures

36.1 ATC facilities will issue an abbreviated IFR departure clearance based on the ROUTE of flight filed in the IFR flight plan, provided the filed route can be approved with little or no revision. These abbreviated clearance procedures are based on the following conditions:

36.1.1 The aircraft is on the ground or it has departed VFR and the pilot is requesting IFR clearance while airborne.

36.1.2 That a pilot will not accept an abbreviated clearance if the route or destination of a flight plan filed with ATC has been changed by him/her or the company or the operations officer before departure.

36.1.3 That it is the responsibility of the company or operations office to inform the pilot when they make a change to the filed flight plan.

36.1.4 That it is the responsibility of the pilot to inform ATC in the initial call−up (for clearance) when the filed flight plan has been either:

36.1.4.1 Amended.

36.1.4.2 Canceled and replaced with a new filed flight plan.

NOTE−
The facility issuing a clearance may not have received the revised route or the revised flight plan by the time a pilot requests clearance.

36.2 Controllers will issue a detailed clearance when they know that the original filed flight plan has been changed or when the pilot requests a full route clearance.

36.3 The clearance as issued will include the destination airport filed in the flight plan.

36.4 ATC procedures now require the controller to state the DP name, the current number and the DP Transition name after the phrase "Cleared to (destination) airport," and prior to the phrase, "then as filed," for ALL departure clearances when the DP or DP Transition is to be flown. The procedure applies whether or not the DP is filed in the flight plan.

36.5 Standard Terminal Arrivals (STARs), when filed in a flight plan, are considered a part of the filed route of flight and will not normally be stated in an initial departure clearance. If the ARTCC's jurisdictional airspace includes both the departure airport and the fix where a STAR or STAR Transition begins, the STAR name, the current number, and the STAR Transition name MAY be stated in the initial clearance.

36.6 "Cleared to (destination) airport as filed" does NOT include the en route altitude filed in a flight plan. An en route altitude will be stated in the clearance or the pilot will be advised to expect an assigned/filed altitude within a given time frame or at a certain point after departure. This may be done verbally in the departure instructions or stated in the DP.

36.7 In a radar and a nonradar environment, the controller will state "Cleared to (destination) airport as filed" or:

36.7.1 If a DP or DP Transition is to be flown, specify the DP name, the current DP number, the DP Transition name, the assigned altitude/flight level, and any additional instructions (departure control frequency, beacon code assignment, etc.) necessary to clear a departing aircraft via the DP/DP Transition and the route filed.

EXAMPLE−
National Seven Twenty cleared to Miami Airport Intercontinental one departure, Lake Charles transition then as filed, maintain Flight Level two seven zero.

36.7.2 When there is no DP or when the pilot cannot accept a DP, specify the assigned altitude/flight level, and any additional instructions necessary to clear a departing aircraft via an appropriate departure routing and the route filed.

NOTE−
A detailed departure route description or a radar vector may be used to achieve the desired departure routing.

36.7.3 If necessary to make a minor revision to the filed route, specify the assigned DP/DP Transition (or departure routing), the revision to the filed route, the assigned altitude/flight level, and any additional instructions necessary to clear a departing aircraft.

EXAMPLE−
Jet Star One Four Two Four cleared to Atlanta Airport, South Boston two departure then as filed except change route to read South Boston Victor 20 Greensboro, maintain one seven thousand.

36.7.4 Additionally, in a nonradar environment, specify one or more fixes as necessary to identify the initial route of flight.

EXAMPLE−
Cessna Three One Six Zero Foxtrot cleared to Charlotte Airport as filed via Brooke, maintain seven thousand.

36.8 To ensure success of the program, pilots should:

36.8.1 Avoid making changes to a filed flight plan just prior to departure.

36.8.2 State the following information in the initial call−up to the facility when no change has been made to the filed flight plan: Aircraft call sign, location, type operation (IFR), and the name of the airport (or fix) to which you expect clearance.

EXAMPLE−
"Washington clearance delivery (or ground control if appropriate) American Seventy Six at gate one, IFR Los Angeles."

36.8.3 If the flight plan has been changed, state the change and request a full route clearance.

EXAMPLE−
"Washington clearance delivery, American Seventy Six at gate one. IFR San Francisco. My flight plan route has been amended (or destination changed). Request full route clearance."

36.8.4 Request verification or clarification from ATC if ANY portion of the clearance is not clearly understood.

36.8.5 When requesting clearance for the IFR portion of a VFR−IFR flight, request such clearance prior to the fix where IFR operation is proposed to commence in sufficient time to avoid delay. Use the following phraseology:

EXAMPLE−
"Los Angeles center, Apache Six One Papa, VFR estimating Paso Robles VOR at three two, one thousand five hundred, request IFR to Bakersfield."

37. Instrument Departure Procedures (DP) − Obstacle Departure Procedures (ODP), Standard Instrument Departures (SID), and Diverse Vector Areas (DVA)

37.1 Instrument departure procedures are preplanned instrument flight rule (IFR) procedures which provide obstruction clearance from the terminal area to the appropriate en route structure. There are two types of DPs, Obstacle Departure Procedures (ODP), printed either textually or graphically, and Standard Instrument Departures (SID), always printed graphically. All DPs, either textual or graphic may be designed using either conventional or RNAV criteria. RNAV procedures will have RNAV printed in the title; for example, SHEAD TWO DEPARTURE (RNAV). ODPs provide obstruction clearance via the least onerous route from the terminal area to the appropriate en route structure. ODPs are recommended for obstruction clearance and may be flown without ATC clearance unless an alternate departure procedure (SID or radar vector) has been specifically assigned by ATC. Graphic ODPs will have (OBSTACLE) printed in the procedure title; for example, GEYSR THREE DEPARTURE (OBSTACLE), or, CROWN ONE DEPARTURE (RNAV) (OBSTACLE). Standard Instrument Departures are air traffic control (ATC) procedures printed for pilot/controller use in graphic form to provide obstruction clearance and a transition from the terminal area to the appropriate en route structure. SIDs are primarily designed for system enhancement and to reduce pilot/controller workload. ATC clearance must be received prior to flying a SID. All DPs provide the pilot with a way to depart the airport and transition to the en route structure safely.

37.2 A Diverse Vector Area (DVA) is an area in which ATC may provide random radar vectors during an uninterrupted climb from the departure runway until above the MVA/MIA, established in accordance with the

TERPS criteria for diverse departures. The DVA provides obstacle and terrain avoidance in lieu of taking off from the runway under IFR using an ODP or SID.

37.3 Pilots operating under 14 CFR Part 91 are strongly encouraged to file and fly a DP at night, during marginal Visual Meteorological Conditions (VMC) and Instrument Meteorological Conditions (IMC), when one is available. The following paragraphs will provide an overview of the DP program, why DPs are developed, what criteria are used, where to find them, how they are to be flown, and finally pilot and ATC responsibilities.

37.4 Why are DPs necessary? The primary reason is to provide obstacle clearance protection information to pilots. A secondary reason, at busier airports, is to increase efficiency and reduce communications and departure delays through the use of SIDs. When an instrument approach is initially developed for an airport, the need for DPs is assessed. The procedure designer conducts an obstacle analysis to support departure operations. If an aircraft may turn in any direction from a runway within the limits of the assessment area (see paragraph 37.5.3) and remain clear of obstacles, that runway passes what is called a diverse departure assessment and no ODP will be published. A SID may be published if needed for air traffic control purposes. However, if an obstacle penetrates what is called the 40:1 obstacle identification surface, then the procedure designer chooses whether to:

37.4.1 Establish a steeper than normal climb gradient; or

37.4.2 Establish a steeper than normal climb gradient with an alternative that increases takeoff minima to allow the pilot to visually remain clear of the obstacle(s); or

37.4.3 Design and publish a specific departure route; or

37.4.4 A combination or all of the above.

37.5 What criteria is used to provide obstruction clearance during departure?

37.5.1 Unless specified otherwise, required obstacle clearance for all departures, including diverse, is based on the pilot crossing the departure end of the runway at least 35 feet above the departure end of runway elevation, climbing to 400 feet above the departure end of runway elevation before making the initial turn, and maintaining a minimum climb gradient of 200 feet per nautical mile (FPNM), unless required to level off by a crossing restriction, until the minimum IFR altitude. A greater climb gradient may be specified in the DP to clear obstacles or to achieve an ATC crossing restriction. If an initial turn higher than 400 feet above the departure end of runway elevation is specified in the DP, the turn should be commenced at the higher altitude. If a turn is specified at a fix, the turn must be made at that fix. Fixes may have minimum and/or maximum crossing altitudes that must be adhered to prior to passing the fix. In rare instances, obstacles that exist on the extended runway centerline may make an "early turn" more desirable than proceeding straight ahead. In these cases, the published departure instructions will include the language "turn left(right) as soon as practicable." These departures will also include a ceiling and visibility minimum of at least 300 and 1. Pilots encountering one of these DPs should preplan the climb out to gain altitude and begin the turn as quickly as possible within the bounds of safe operating practices and operating limitations. This type of departure procedure is being phased out.

NOTE−
"Practical" or "feasible" may exist in some existing departure text instead of "practicable."

37.5.2 ODPs, SIDs, and DVAs assume normal aircraft performance, and that all engines are operating. Development of contingency procedures, required to cover the case of an engine failure or other emergency in flight that may occur after liftoff, is the responsibility of the operator. (More detailed information on this subject is available in Advisory Circular AC 120−91, Airport Obstacle Analysis, and in the "Departure Procedures" section of chapter 2 in the Instrument Procedures Handbook, FAA−H−8083−16.)

37.5.3 The 40:1 obstacle identification surface (OIS) begins at the departure end of runway (DER) and slopes upward at 152 FPNM until reaching the minimum IFR altitude or entering the en route structure. This assessment area is limited to 25 NM from the airport in nonmountainous areas and 46 NM in designated mountainous areas. Beyond this distance, the pilot is responsible for obstacle clearance if not operating on a published route, if below (having not reached) the MEA or MOCA of a published route, or an ATC assigned altitude. See FIG ENR 1.5−43. (Ref 14 CFR 91.177 for further information on en route altitudes.)

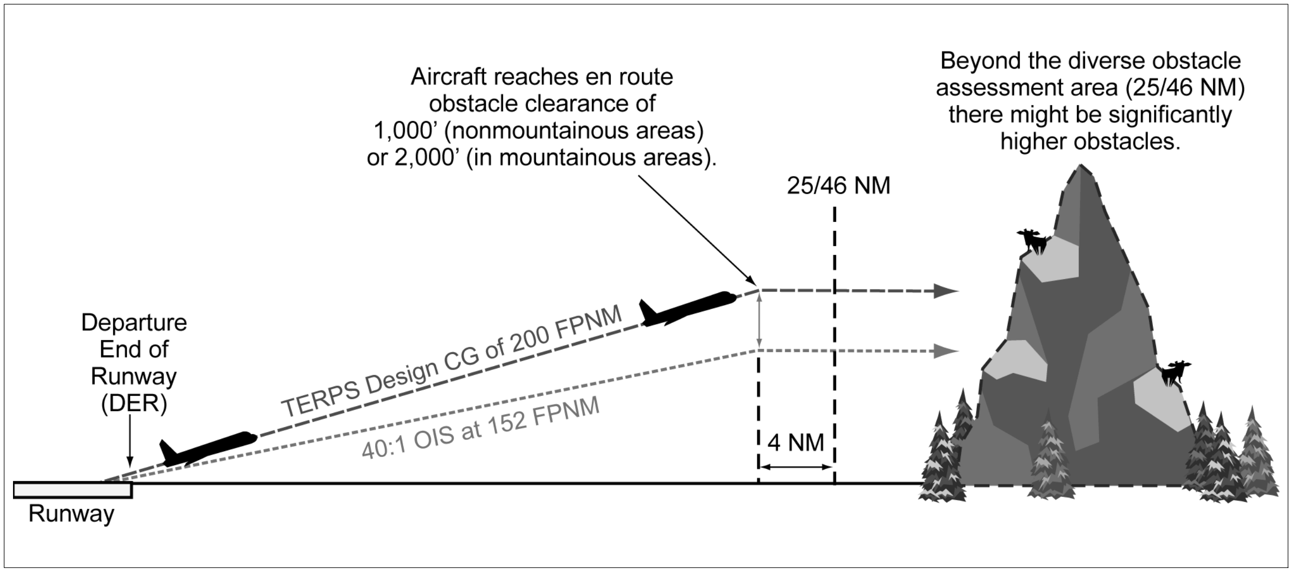
NOTE−
ODPs are normally designed to terminate within these distance limitations, however, some ODPs will contain routes that may exceed 25/46 NM; these routes will insure obstacle protection until reaching the end of the ODP.

37.5.4 Obstacles that are located within 1 NM of the DER and penetrate the 40:1 OCS are referred to as "low, close−in obstacles." The standard required obstacle clearance (ROC) of 48 feet per NM to clear these obstacles would require a climb gradient greater than 200 feet per NM for a very short distance, only until the aircraft was 200 feet above the DER. To eliminate publishing an excessive climb gradient, the obstacle AGL/MSL height and location relative to the DER is noted in the "Take−off Minimums and (OBSTACLE) Departure Procedures" section of a given Terminal Procedures Publication (TPP) booklet.

37.5.4.1 Pilots must refer to the TPP booklet or the Graphic ODP for information on these obstacles. These obstacle notes will no longer be published on SIDs. Pilots assigned a SID for departure must refer to the airport entry in the TPP to obtain information on these obstacles.

37.5.4.2 The purpose of noting obstacles in the "Take−off Minimums and (OBSTACLE) Departure Procedures" section of the TPP is to identify the obstacle(s) and alert the pilot to the height and location of the obstacle(s) so they can be avoided. This can be accomplished in a variety of ways; for example, the pilot may be able to see the obstruction and maneuver around the obstacle(s) if necessary; early liftoff/climb performance may allow the aircraft to cross well above the obstacle(s); or if the obstacle(s) cannot be visually acquired during departure, preflight planning should take into account what turns or other maneuvers may be necessary immediately after takeoff to avoid the obstruction(s).

FIG ENR 1.5−43
Diverse Departure Obstacle Assessment to 25/46 NM



EXAMPLE−
TAKEOFF OBSTACLE NOTES: Rwy 14, trees 2011' from DER, 29' left of centerline, 100' AGL/3829' MSL. Rwy 32, trees 1009' from DER, 697' left of centerline, 100' AGL/3839' MSL. Tower 4448' from DER, 1036' left of centerline, 165' AGL/3886' MSL.

NOTE−
Compliance with 14 CFR Part 121 or 135 one−engine−inoperative (OEI) departure performance requirements, or similar ICAO/State rules, cannot be assured by the sole use of "low, close−in" obstacle data as published in the TPP. Operators should refer to precise data sources (for example, GIS database, etc.) specifically intended for OEI departure planning for those operations.

37.5.5 Climb gradients greater than 200 FPNM are specified when required to support procedure design constraints, obstacle clearance, and/or airspace restrictions. Compliance with a climb gradient for these purposes is mandatory when the procedure is part of the ATC clearance, unless increased takeoff minimums are provided and weather conditions allow compliance with these minimums.

NOTE−
Climb gradients for ATC purposes are being phased out on SIDs.

EXAMPLE−
"Cross ALPHA intersection at or below 4000; maintain 6000." The pilot climbs at least 200 FPNM to 6000. If 4000 is reached before ALPHA, the pilot levels off at 4000 until passing ALPHA; then immediately resumes at least 200 FPNM climb.

EXAMPLE−
"TAKEOFF MINIMUMS: RWY 27, Standard with a minimum climb of 280' per NM to 2500." A climb of at least 280 FPNM is required to 2500 and is mandatory when the departure procedure is included in the ATC clearance.

NOTE−
Some SIDs still retain labeled "ATC" climb gradients published or have climb gradients that are established to meet a published altitude restriction that is not required for obstacle clearance or procedure design criteria. These procedures will be revised in the course of the normal procedure amendment process.

37.5.6 Climb gradients may be specified only to an altitude/fix, above which the normal gradient applies.

An ATC−required altitude restriction published at a fix, will not have an associated climb gradient published with that restriction. Pilots are expected to determine if crossing altitudes can be met, based on the performance capability of the aircraft they are operating.

EXAMPLE−
"Minimum climb 340 FPNM to ALPHA." The pilot climbs at least 340 FPNM to ALPHA, then at least 200 FPNM to MIA.

37.5.7 A Visual Climb Over Airport (VCOA) procedure is a departure option for an IFR aircraft, operating in visual meteorological conditions equal to or greater than the specified visibility and ceiling, to visually conduct climbing turns over the airport to the published "at or above" altitude. At this point, the pilot may proceed in instrument meteorological conditions to the first en route fix using a diverse departure, or to proceed via a published routing to a fix from where the aircraft may join the IFR en route structure, while maintaining a climb gradient of at least 200 feet per nautical mile. VCOA procedures are developed to avoid obstacles greater than 3 statute miles from the departure end of the runway as an alternative to complying with climb gradients greater than 200 feet per nautical mile. Pilots are responsible to advise ATC as early as possible of the intent to fly the VCOA option prior to departure. Pilots are expected to remain within the distance prescribed by the published visibility minimums during the climb over the airport until reaching the "at or above" altitude for the VCOA procedure. If no additional routing is published, then the pilot may proceed in accordance with their IFR clearance. If additional routing is published after the "at−or−above" altitude, the pilot must comply with the route to a fix that may include a climb−in−holding pattern to reach the MEA/MIA for the en route portion of their IFR flight. These textual procedures are published in the Take−Off Minimums and (Obstacle) Departure Procedures section of the Terminal Procedures Publications and/or appear as an option on a Graphic ODP.

EXAMPLE−
TAKEOFF MINIMUMS: Rwy 32, standard with minimum climb of 410' per NM to 3000' or 1100−3 for VCOA.

VCOA: Rwy 32, obtain ATC approval for VCOA when requesting IFR clearance. Climb in visual conditions to cross Broken Bow Muni/Keith Glaze Field at or above 3500' before proceeding on course.

37.6 Who is responsible for obstacle clearance? DPs are designed so that adherence to the procedure by the pilot will ensure obstacle protection. Additionally:

37.6.1 Obstacle clearance responsibility also rests with the pilot when he/she chooses to climb in visual conditions in lieu of flying a DP and/or depart under increased takeoff minima rather than fly the climb gradient. Standard takeoff minima are one statute mile for aircraft having two engines or less and one−half statute mile for aircraft having more than two engines. Specified ceiling and visibility minima will allow visual avoidance of obstacles during the initial climb with the standard climb gradient. When departing using the VCOA, obstacle avoidance is not guaranteed if the pilot maneuvers farther from the airport than the published visibility minimum for the VCOA prior to reaching the published VCOA altitude. DPs may also contain what are called Low Close in Obstacles. These obstacles are less than 200 feet above the departure end of runway elevation and within one NM of the runway end and do not require increased takeoff minimums. These obstacles are identified on the SID chart or in the Take−off Minimums and (Obstacle) Departure Procedures section of the U. S. Terminal Procedure booklet. These obstacles are especially critical to aircraft that do not lift off until close to the departure end of the runway or which climb at the minimum rate. Pilots should also consider drift following lift−off to ensure sufficient clearance from these obstacles. That segment of the procedure that requires the pilot to see and avoid obstacles ends when the aircraft crosses the specified point at the required altitude. In all cases continued obstacle clearance is based on having climbed a minimum of 200 feet per nautical mile to the specified point and then continuing to climb at least 200 foot per nautical mile during the departure until reaching the minimum en route altitude unless specified otherwise.

37.6.2 ATC may vector the aircraft beginning with an ATC−assigned heading issued with the initial or takeoff clearance followed by subsequent vectors, if required, until reaching the minimum vectoring altitude by using a published Diverse Vector Area (DVA).

37.6.3 The DVA may be established below the Minimum Vectoring Altitude (MVA) or Minimum IFR Altitude (MIA) in a radar environment at the request of Air Traffic. This type of DP meets the TERPS criteria for diverse departures, obstacles, and terrain avoidance in which vectors below the MVA/MIA may be issued to departing aircraft. The DVA has been assessed for departures which do not follow a specific ground track, but will remain within the specified area. Use of a DVA is valid only when aircraft are permitted to climb uninterrupted from the departure runway to the MVA/MIA (or higher). ATC will not assign an altitude below the MVA/MIA within a DVA. At locations that have a DVA, ATC is not permitted to utilize a SID and DVA concurrently.

37.6.3.1 The existence of a DVA will be noted in the Takeoff Minimums and Obstacle Departure Procedure section of the U.S. Terminal Procedures Publication (TPP). The Takeoff Departure procedure will be listed first, followed by any applicable DVA.

EXAMPLE−
DIVERSE VECTOR AREA (RADAR VECTORS) AMDT 1 14289 (FAA)
Rwy 6R*, headings as assigned by ATC; requires minimum climb of 290' per NM to 400.*
Rwys 6L, 7L, 7R, 24R, 25R*, headings as assigned by ATC.*

37.6.3.2 Pilots should be aware that a published climb gradient greater than the standard 200 FPNM can exist within a DVA. Pilots should note that the DVA has been assessed for departures which do not follow a specific ground track.

37.6.3.3 ATC may also vector an aircraft off a previously assigned DP. If the aircraft is airborne and established on a SID or ODP and subsequently vectored off, ATC is responsible for terrain and obstruction clearance. In all cases, the minimum 200 FPNM climb gradient is assumed.

NOTE−
As is always the case, when used by the controller during departure, the term "radar contact" should not be interpreted as relieving pilots of their responsibility to maintain appropriate terrain and obstruction clearance, which may include flying the obstacle DP.

37.6.4 Pilots must preplan to determine if the aircraft can meet the climb gradient (expressed in feet per nautical mile) required by the departure procedure or DVA, and be aware that flying at a higher than anticipated ground speed increases the climb rate requirement in feet per minute. Higher than standard climb gradients are specified by a note on the departure procedure chart for graphic DPs, or in the Take−Off Minimums and (Obstacle) Departure Procedures section of the U.S. Terminal Procedures booklet for textual ODPs. The required climb gradient, or higher, must be maintained to the specified altitude or fix, then the standard climb gradient of 200 ft/NM can be resumed. A table for the conversion of climb gradient (feet per nautical mile) to climb rate (feet per minute), at a given ground speed, is included on the inside of the back cover of the U.S. Terminal Procedures booklets.

37.7 Where are DPs located? DPs and DVAs will be listed by airport in the IFR Takeoff Minimums and (Obstacle) Departure Procedures Section, Section L, of the Terminal Procedures Publications (TPP). If the DP is textual, it will be described in TPP Section L. SIDs and complex ODPs will be published graphically and named. The name will be listed by airport name and runway in Section L. Graphic ODPs will also have the term “(OBSTACLE)” printed in the charted procedure title, differentiating them from SIDs.

37.7.1 An ODP that has been developed solely for obstacle avoidance will be indicated with the symbol “T” on appropriate Instrument Approach Procedure (IAP) charts and DP charts for that airport. The “T” symbol will continue to refer users to TPP Section C. In the case of a graphic ODP, the TPP Section C will only contain the name of the ODP. Since there may be both a textual and a graphic DP, Section C should still be checked for additional information. The nonstandard minimums and minimum climb gradients found in TPP Section C also apply to charted DPs and radar vector departures unless different minimums are specified on the charted DP. Takeoff minimums and departure procedures apply to all runways unless otherwise specified. New graphic DPs will have all the information printed on the graphic depiction. As a general rule, ATC will only assign an ODP from a nontowered airport when compliance with the ODP is necessary for aircraft to aircraft separation. Pilots may use the ODP to help ensure separation from terrain and obstacles.

37.8 Responsibilities

37.8.1 Each pilot, prior to departing an airport on an IFR flight should:

37.8.1.1 Consider the type of terrain and other obstacles on or in the vicinity of the departure airport;

37.8.1.2 Determine whether an ODP is available;

37.8.1.3 Determine if obstacle avoidance can be maintained visually or if the ODP should be flown; and

37.8.1.4 Consider the effect of degraded climb performance and the actions to take in the event of an engine loss during the departure. Pilots should notify ATC as soon as possible of reduced climb capability in that circumstance.

NOTE−
Guidance concerning contingency procedures that address an engine failure on takeoff after V_1 *speed on a large or turbine−powered transport category airplane may be found in AC 120−91, Airport Obstacle Analysis.*

37.8.1.5 Determine if a DVA is published and whether the aircraft is capable of meeting the published climb gradient. Advise ATC when requesting the IFR clearance, or as soon as possible, if unable to meet the DVA climb gradient.

37.8.1.6 Check for Takeoff Obstacle Notes published in the TPP for the takeoff runway.

37.8.2 Pilots should not exceed a published speed restriction associated with a SID waypoint until passing that waypoint.

37.8.3 After an aircraft is established on a SID and subsequently vectored or cleared to deviate off of the SID or SID transition, pilots must consider the SID canceled, unless the controller adds “expect to resume SID;” pilots should then be prepared to rejoin the SID at a subsequent fix or procedure leg. If the SID contains published altitude and/or speed restrictions, those restrictions are canceled and pilots will receive an altitude to maintain and, if necessary, a speed. ATC may also interrupt the vertical navigation of a SID and provide alternate altitude instructions while the aircraft remains established on the published lateral path. Aircraft may be vectored off of an ODP, or issued an altitude lower than a published altitude on an ODP, at which time the ODP is canceled. In these cases, ATC assumes responsibility for terrain and obstacle clearance. In all cases, the minimum 200 FPNM climb gradient is assumed.

37.8.4 Aircraft instructed to resume a SID procedure such as a DP or SID which contains speed and/or altitude restrictions, must be:

37.8.4.1 Issued/reissued all applicable restrictions, or

37.8.4.2 Advised to “Climb via SID” or resume published speed.

EXAMPLE−
“Resume the Solar One departure, Climb via SID.”
“Proceed direct CIROS, resume the Solar One departure, Climb via SID.”

37.8.5 A clearance for a SID which does not contain published crossing restrictions, and/or is a SID with a Radar Vector segment or a Radar Vector SID, will be issued using the phraseology "Maintain (*altitude).*"

37.8.6 A clearance for a SID which contains published altitude restrictions may be issued using the phraseology "climb via." Climb via is an abbreviated clearance that requires compliance with the procedure lateral path, associated speed and altitude restrictions along the cleared route or procedure. Clearance to "climb via" authorizes the pilot to:

37.8.6.1 When used in the IFR departure clearance, in a PDC, DCL or when cleared to a waypoint depicted on a SID, to join the procedure after departure or to resume the procedure.

37.8.6.2 When vertical navigation is interrupted and an altitude is assigned to maintain which is not contained on the published procedure, to climb from that previously-assigned altitude at pilot's discretion to the altitude depicted for the next waypoint.

37.8.6.3 Once established on the depicted departure, to navigate laterally and climb to meet all published or assigned altitude and speed restrictions.

NOTE−
1. *When otherwise cleared along a route or procedure that contains published speed restrictions, the pilot must comply with those speed restrictions independent of a climb via clearance.*

2. *ATC anticipates pilots will begin adjusting speed the minimum distance necessary prior to a published speed restriction so as to cross the waypoint/fix at the published speed. Once at the published speed ATC expects pilots will maintain the published speed until additional adjustment is required to comply with further published or ATC assigned speed restrictions or as required to ensure compliance with 14 CFR Section 91.117.*

3. *If ATC interrupts lateral/vertical navigation while an aircraft is flying a SID, ATC must ensure obstacle clearance. When issuing a "climb via" clearance to join or resume a procedure ATC must ensure obstacle clearance until the aircraft is established on the lateral and vertical path of the SID.*

4. *ATC will assign an altitude to cross if no altitude is depicted at a waypoint/fix or when otherwise necessary/ required, for an aircraft on a direct route to a waypoint/fix where the SID will be joined or resumed.*

5. *SIDs will have a "top altitude;" the "top altitude" is the charted "maintain" altitude contained in the procedure description or assigned by ATC.*

EXAMPLE−
1. ***Lateral route clearance:***
"Cleared Loop Six departure."

NOTE−
The aircraft must comply with the SID lateral path, and any published speed restrictions.

2. ***Routing with assigned altitude:***
"Cleared Loop Six departure, climb and maintain four thousand."

NOTE−
The aircraft must comply with the SID lateral path, and any published speed restriction while climbing unrestricted to four thousand.

3. *(A pilot filed a flight plan to the Johnston Airport using the Scott One departure, Jonez transition, then Q-145. The pilot filed for FL350. The Scott One includes altitude restrictions, a top altitude and instructions to expect the filed altitude ten minutes after departure). Before departure ATC uses PDC, DCL or clearance delivery to issue the clearance:*
"Cleared to Johnston Airport, Scott One departure, Jonez transition, Q-OneForty-five. Climb via SID."

NOTE−
In Example 3, the aircraft must comply with the Scott One departure lateral path and any published speed and altitude restrictions while climbing to the SID top altitude.

4. *(Using the Example 3 flight plan, ATC determines the top altitude must be changed to FL180). The clearance will read:*

"Cleared to Johnston Airport, Scott One departure, Jonez transition, Q-One Forty-five, Climb via SID except maintain flight level one eight zero."

NOTE−
In Example 4, the aircraft must comply with the Scott One departure lateral path and any published speed and altitude restrictions while climbing to FL180. The aircraft must stop climb at FL180 until issued further clearance by ATC.

5. *(An aircraft was issued the Suzan Two departure, "climb via SID" in the IFR departure clearance. After departure ATC must change a waypoint crossing restriction). The clearance will be:*

"Climb via SID except cross Mkala at or above seven thousand."

NOTE−
In Example 5, the aircraft will comply with the Suzan Two departure lateral path and any published speed and altitude restrictions and climb so as to cross Mkala at or above 7,000; remainder of the departure must be flown as published.

6. *(An aircraft was issued the Teddd One departure, "climb via SID" in the IFR departure clearance. An interim altitude of 10,000 was issued instead of the published top altitude of FL 230). After departure ATC is able to issue the published top altitude. The clearance will be:*

"Climb via SID."

NOTE−
In Example 6, the aircraft will track laterally and vertically on the Teddd One departure and initially climb to 10,000; Once re-issued the "climb via" clearance the interim altitude is canceled aircraft will continue climb to FL230 while complying with published restrictions.

7. *(An aircraft was issued the Bbear Two departure, "climb via SID" in the IFR departure clearance. An interim altitude of 16,000 was issued instead of the published top altitude of FL 190). After departure, ATC is able to issue a top altitude of FL300 and still requires compliance with the published SID restrictions. The clearance will be:*

"Climb via SID except maintain flight level three zero zero."

NOTE−
In Example 7, the aircraft will track laterally and vertically on the Bbear Two departure and initially climb to 16,000; Once re-issued the "climb via" clearance the interim altitude is canceled and the aircraft will continue climb to FL300 while complying with published restrictions.

8. *(An aircraft was issued the Bizee Two departure, "climb via SID." After departure, ATC vectors the aircraft off of the SID, and then issues a direct routing to rejoin the SID at Rockr waypoint which does not have a published altitude restriction. ATC wants the aircraft to cross at or above 10,000). The clearance will read:*

"Proceed direct Rockr, cross Rockr at or above one-zero thousand, climb via the Bizee Two departure."

NOTE−
In Example 8, the aircraft will join the Bizee Two SID at Rockr at or above 10,000 and then comply with the published lateral path and any published speed or altitude restrictions while climbing to the SID top altitude.

9. *(An aircraft was issued the Suzan Two departure, "climb via SID" in the IFR departure clearance. After departure ATC vectors the aircraft off of the SID, and then clears the aircraft to rejoin the SID at Dvine waypoint, which has a published crossing restriction). The clearance will read:*

"Proceed direct Dvine, Climb via the Suzan Two departure."

NOTE−
In Example 9, the aircraft will join the Suzan Two departure at Dvine, at the published altitude, and then comply with the published lateral path and any published speed or altitude restrictions.

37.8.7 Pilots cleared for vertical navigation using the phraseology "climb via" must inform ATC, upon initial contact, of the altitude leaving and any assigned restrictions not published on the procedure.

EXAMPLE−
1. *(Cactus 711 is cleared to climb via the Laura Two departure. The Laura Two has a top altitude of FL190):*
"Cactus Seven Eleven leaving two thousand, climbing via the Laura Two departure."

2. *(Cactus 711 is cleared to climb via the Laura Two departure, but ATC changed the top altitude to16,000):*
"Cactus Seven Eleven leaving two thousand for one-six thousand, climbing via the Laura Two departure."

37.8.8 If prior to or after takeoff an altitude restriction is issued by ATC, all previously issued "ATC" altitude restrictions are canceled including those published on a SID. Pilots must still comply with all speed restrictions and lateral path requirements published on the SID unless canceled by ATC.

EXAMPLE−
Prior to takeoff or after departure ATC issues an altitude change clearance to an aircraft cleared to climb via a SID but ATC

no longer requires compliance with published altitude restrictions:

"Climb and maintain flight level two four zero."

NOTE−
The published SID altitude restrictions are canceled; The aircraft should comply with the SID lateral path and begin an unrestricted climb to FL240. Compliance with published speed restrictions is still required unless specifically deleted by ATC.

37.8.9 Altitude restrictions published on an ODP are necessary for obstacle clearance and/or design constraints. Crossing altitudes and speed restrictions on ODPs cannot be canceled or amended by ATC.

37.9 PBN Departure Procedures

37.9.1 All public PBN SIDs and graphic ODPs are normally designed using RNAV 1, RNP 1, or A−RNP NavSpecs. These procedures generally start with an initial track or heading leg near the departure end of runway (DER). In addition, these procedures require system performance currently met by GPS or DME/DME/IRU PBN systems that satisfy the criteria discussed in the latest AC 90−100, U.S. Terminal and En Route Area Navigation (RNAV) Operations. RNAV 1 and RNP 1 procedures must maintain a total system error of not more than 1 NM for 95 percent of the total flight time. Minimum values for A−RNP procedures will be charted in the PBN box (for example, 1.00 or 0.30).

37.9.2 In the U.S., a specific procedure's PBN requirements will be prominently displayed in separate, standardized notes boxes. For procedures with PBN elements, the "PBN box" will contain the procedure's NavSpec(s); and, if required: specific sensors or infrastructure needed for the navigation solution, any additional or advanced functional requirements, the minimum RNP value, and any amplifying remarks. Items listed in this PBN box are REQUIRED for the procedure's PBN elements.

1.10.3 If the temperature is forecast to be at or below the published CTA temperature, pilots should calculate a correction for the appropriate segment/s or a correction for all the segments if using the "All Segments Method."

Pilots should review the operating procedures for the aircraft's temperature compensating system when planning to use the system for any cold temperature corrections. Any planned altitude correction for the intermediate and/or missed approach holding segments must be coordinated with ATC. Pilots do not have to advise ATC of a correction in the final segment.

NOTE−
The charted baro−VNAV temperature range limitation does not apply to pilots operating aircraft with an airworthiness approval to conduct an RNAV (GPS) approach to LNAV/VNAV minimums with the use of SBAS vertical guidance.

REFERENCE−
AIP, ENR 1.8, Cold Temperature Barometric Altimeter Errors, Setting Procedures and Cold Temperature Airports (CTA).

2. Follow IFR Procedures Even When Operating VFR

2.1 To maintain IFR proficiency, pilots are urged to practice IFR procedures whenever possible, even when operating VFR. Some suggested practices include:

2.1.1 Obtain a complete preflight briefing and check NOTAMs. Prior to every flight, pilots should gather all information vital to the nature of the flight. Pilots can receive a regulatory compliant briefing without contacting Flight Service. Pilots are encouraged to use automated resources and review AC 91−92, Pilot's Guide to a Preflight Briefing, for more information. NOTAMs are available online from the Federal NOTAM System (FNS) NOTAM Search website (https://notams.aim.faa.gov/notamSearch/), private vendors, or on request from Flight Service.

2.1.2 File a flight plan. This is an excellent low cost insurance policy. The cost is the time it takes to fill it out. The insurance includes the knowledge that someone will be looking for you if you become overdue at your destination. Pilots can file flight plans either by using a website or by calling Flight Service. Flight planning applications are also available to file, activate, and close VFR flight plans.

2.1.3 Use current charts.

2.1.4 Use the navigation aids. Practice maintaining a good course by keeping the needle centered.

2.1.5 Maintain a constant altitude appropriate for direction of flight.

2.1.6 Estimate en route position times.

2.1.7 Make accurate and frequent position reports to the FSSs along your route of flight.

2.2 Simulated IFR flight is recommended (under the hood); however, pilots are cautioned to review and adhere to the requirements specified in 14 CFR Section 91.109 before and during such flight.

2.3 When flying VFR at night, in addition to the altitude appropriate for the direction of flight, pilots should maintain an altitude which is at or above the minimum en route altitude as shown on charts. This is especially true in mountainous terrain, where there is usually very little ground reference. Do not depend on your eyes alone to avoid rising unlighted terrain, or even lighted obstructions such as TV towers.

3. Notice to Air Missions (NOTAM) System

3.1 The NOTAM System provides pilots with time critical aeronautical information that is temporary, or information to be published on aeronautical charts at a later date, or information from another operational publication. The NOTAM is cancelled when the information in the NOTAM is published on the chart or when the temporary condition is returned to normal status. NOTAMs may be disseminated up to 7 days before the start of activity. Pilots can access NOTAM information online via NOTAM Search at: https://notams.aim.faa.gov/notamSearch/ or from an FSS.

3.1.1 14 CFR § 91.103, Preflight Action directs pilots to become familiar with all available information concerning a planned flight prior to departure, including NOTAMs. Pilots may change their flight plan based on available information. Current NOTAM information may affect:

3.1.1.1 Aerodromes.

3.1.1.2 Runways, taxiways, and ramp restrictions.

3.1.1.3 Obstructions.

3.1.1.4 Communications.

3.1.1.5 Airspace.

3.1.1.6 Status of navigational aids or radar service availability.

3.1.1.7 Other information essential to planned en route, terminal, or landing operations.

3.1.2 Pilots should also review NOTAMs for the ARTCC area (for example, Washington Center (ZDC), Cleveland Center (ZOB), etc.) in which the flight will be operating. You can find the 3 letter code for each ARTCC on the FAA's NOTAM web page. These NOTAMs may affect the planned flight. Some of the operations include Central Altitude Reservation Function (CARF), Special Use Airspace (SUA), Temporary Flight Restrictions (TFR), Global Positioning System (GPS), Flight Data Center (FDC) changes to routes, wind turbine, and Unmanned Aircraft System (UAS).

NOTE−
NOTAM information is transmitted using ICAO contractions to reduce transmission time. See TBL ENR 1.10−2 for a listing of the most commonly used contractions, or go online to the following URL: https://www.notams.faa.gov/downloads/contractions.pdf. For a complete listing of approved NOTAM Contractions, see FAA JO Order 7340.2, Contractions.

3.1.3 Pilots should also contact ATC or FSS while en route to obtain updated airfield information for their destination. This is particularly important when flying to the airports without an operating control tower. Pilots should also ensure NOTAMs are updated for locations without an operating control tower. Snow removal, fire and rescue activities, construction, and wildlife encroachment, could provide hazards to pilots. This information may not be available to pilots prior to arrival/departure.

3.1.4 Pilots should check NOTAMs to ensure NAVAIDs required for the flight are in service. A NOTAM is published when a NAVAID is out of service or Unserviceable (U/S). Although a NAVAID is deemed U/S and planned for removal from service, it may be a long time before that NAVAID is officially decommissioned and removed from charts. A NOTAM is the primary method of alerting pilots to its unavailability. Pilots using VFR charts can also review the Aeronautical Information Services' (AIS) website concerning Safety Alerts, Charting Notices, and Digital Product Notices at https://www.faa.gov/air_traffic/flight_info/aeronav/safety_alerts/ for additional chart information.

3.2 The FAA issues information on the status of GPS through the NOTAM system. Operators may find information on GPS satellite outages, GPS testing, and GPS anomalies by specifically searching for GPS NOTAMS prior to flight.

3.2.1 The NOTAM system uses the terms UNRELIABLE (UNREL), MAY NOT BE AVAILABLE (AVBL), and NOT AVAILABLE (AVBL) when describing the status of GPS. UNREL indicates the expected level of service of the GPS and/or WAAS may not be available. Pilots must then determine the adequacy of the signal for desired use. Aircraft should have additional navigation equipment for their intended route.

NOTE−
Unless associated with a known testing NOTAM, pilots should report GPS anomalies, including degraded operation and/or loss of service, as soon as possible via radio or telephone, and via the GPS Anomaly Reporting Form. (See ENR 4.1−22.)

3.2.2 GPS operations may also be NOTAMed for testing. This is indicated in the NOTAM language with the name of the test in parenthesis. When GPS testing NOTAMS are published and testing is actually occurring, ATC will advise pilots requesting or cleared for a GPS or RNAV (GPS) approach that GPS may not be available and request intentions. TBL ENR 1.10−1 lists an example of a GPS testing NOTAM.

3.3 NOTAM information is classified as Domestic NOTAMs (NOTAM D), Flight Data Center (FDC) NOTAMs, International NOTAMs, or Military NOTAMs.

ENR 7. Oceanic Operations

ENR 7.1 General Procedures

1. IFR/VFR Operations

1.1 Flights in oceanic airspace must be conducted under Instrument Flight Rule (IFR) procedures when operating:

1.1.1 Between sunset and sunrise.

1.1.2 At or above Flight Level (FL) 055 when operating within the New York, Oakland, and Anchorage Oceanic Flight Information Regions (FIRs).

1.1.3 Above FL180 when operating within the Miami and Houston FIRs and in the San Juan Control Area. Flights between the east coast of the U.S., and Bermuda or Caribbean terminals, and traversing the New York FIR at or above 5,500 feel MSL should be especially aware of this requirement.

1.1.4 At or above FL230 when operating within the Anchorage Arctic FIR.

1.2 San Juan CTA/FIR VFR Traffic.

1.2.1 All VFR aircraft entering and departing the San Juan FIR/CTA will provide San Juan Radio with an ICAO flight plan. All aircraft must establish two−way communications with San Juan Radio on 122.2, 122.3, or 122.6.

1.2.2 Communication can also be established by transmitting on 122.1 and receive using the appropriate VOR frequency for Borinquen (BQN), Mayaguez (MAZ), Ponce (PSE), and St. Croix (COY). For St. Thomas (STT), transmit on 123.6 and receive on the VOR frequency. If unable to contact San Juan Radio, the pilot is responsible for notifying adjacent ATS units and request that a position report be relayed to San Juan Radio for search and rescue purposes and flight following.

1.3 Non−RVSM aircraft are not permitted in RVSM airspace unless they meet the criteria of excepted aircraft and are previously approved by the ATS unit having authority for the airspace. In addition to those aircraft listed in ENR 1.1 General Rules, paragraph 39., Operational Policy/Procedures for Reduced Vertical Separation Minimum (RVSM) in the Domestic U.S., Alaska, Offshore Airspace, and the San Juan FIR, the following aircraft operating within oceanic and offshore airspace are excepted:

1.3.1 Aircraft being initially delivered to the State of Registry or Operator.

1.3.2 Aircraft that was formerly RVSM−approved but has experienced an equipment failure and is being flown to a maintenance facility for repair in order to meet RVSM requirements and/or obtain approval.

1.3.3 Aircraft being utilized for mercy or humanitarian purposes.

NOTE−
These exceptions are accommodated on a workload or traffic−permitting basis.

2. Flight Plan Filing Requirements

NOTE−
In addition to the following guidance, operators must also consult current Notices to Air Missions (NOTAMs) and chart supplements (Supplement Alaska, Supplement Pacific) to gain a complete understanding of requirements. NOTAMs and supplements may contain guidance that is short term and/or short notice – i.e., having immediate effect.

2.1 If you are eligible for oceanic 50 NM lateral separation:

2.1.1 PBN/A1 or PBN/L1 in Field 18.

2.1.2 R in Field 10a.

2.1.3 See FAA Advisory Circular (AC) 90-105, Approval Guidance for RNP Operations and Barometric Vertical Navigation in the U.S. National Airspace System and in Oceanic and Remote Continental Airspace, for guidance on RNP 10 (RNAV 10) authorization.

2.2 If you are eligible for oceanic 50 NM longitudinal and lateral separation:

2.2.1 PBN/A1 or PBN/L1 in Field 18.

2.2.2 P2 in Field 10a.

2.2.3 D1 in Field 10b.

2.2.4 (J5, J6, or J7) and R in Field 10a.

2.2.5 SUR/RSP180 in Field 18.

2.2.6 See FAA Advisory Circular 90−117, Data Link Communications, for guidance on Required Communication Performance (RCP) and Required Surveillance Performance (RSP) authorization.

2.2.7 See FAA Advisory Circular 90-105 for guidance on RNP 10 (RNAV 10) authorization.

2.3 If you are eligible for 23 NM lateral or 30 NM longitudinal separation:

2.3.1 PBN/L1 in Field 18.

2.3.2 P2 in Field 10a.

2.3.3 D1 in Field 10b.

2.3.4 (J5, J6, or J7) and R in Field 10a.

2.3.5 SUR/RSP180 in Field 18.

2.3.6 See FAA Advisory Circular 90−117 for guidance on RCP and RSP authorization.

2.3.7 See FAA Advisory Circular 90-105 for guidance on RNP 4 authorization.

2.4 Oakland Oceanic FIR

2.4.1 In accordance with ICAO Doc 4444, flight plans with routes entering the Oakland Oceanic FIR (KZAK) must contain, among the estimated elapsed times (EET) in Field 18, an entry point for KZAK and an estimated time. It is not mandatory to file the boundary crossing point in Field 15 of the route of flight, but it is permitted.

2.4.2 The use of CPDLC and ADS−C in the Oakland Oceanic FIR (KZAK) is only permitted by Inmarsat and Iridium customers. All other forms of data link connectivity are not authorized. Users must ensure that the proper data link code is filed in Item 10a of the ICAO FPL in order to indicate which satellite medium(s) the aircraft is equipped with. The identifier for Inmarsat is J5 and the identifier for Iridium is J7. If J5 or J7 is not included in the ICAO FPL, then the LOGON will be rejected by KZAK and the aircraft will not be able to connect.

2.5 New York Oceanic FIR

2.5.1 The use of CPDLC and ADS−C in the New York Oceanic FIR (KZWY) is only permitted by Inmarsat and Iridium customers. All other forms of data link connectivity are not authorized. Users must ensure that the proper data link code is filed in Item 10a of the ICAO FPL in order to indicate which satellite medium(s) the aircraft is equipped with. The identifier for Inmarsat is J5 and the identifier for Iridium is J7. If J5 or J7 is not included in the ICAO FPL, then the LOGON will be rejected by KZWY and the aircraft will not be able to connect.

3. Flight Plan Addressing

3.1 In an effort to eliminate erroneous or duplicate flight plans that may be received from diverse locations, and to increase the safety of flight, operators must adhere to the following procedures when filing flight plans for departing flights from foreign aerodromes entering the United States National Airspace System:

3.1.1 If the filer sends an FPL to an FAA En Route facility in addition to the air traffic service unit (ATSU) responsible for the departure aerodrome, the filer must ensure that the flight plan filed is the same as the flight automatic position reporting via an Automatic Dependent Surveillance− Contract (ADS−C) logon, pilots should discontinue voice position reports.

5.2 Advanced Technology and Oceanic Procedures (ATOP) cannot accept CPDLC position reports containing latitude and longitude in the ARINC 424 format. The flight crew should use latitudes and longitudes encoded as waypoint names in the ICAO format (for example, 54N150W).

NOTE−
ARINC 424 describes a 5−character latitude/longitude format for aircraft navigation databases (for example, 10N40 describes a latitude/longitude of 10N140W). The ATSU will reject any downlink message containing waypoint names in the ARINC 424 format.

5.3 Oakland Oceanic FIR

5.3.1 Aircraft filed on PACOTS routes within Oakland Oceanic CTA/FIR airspace must make position reports using latitude/longitude coordinates or named fixes as specified in the track definition messages (TDM). Position reports must comprise information on present position, estimated next position, and ensuing position. Reporting points of reference not specified in the TDM and/or rounding off geographical coordinates is prohibited.

5.4 New York Oceanic FIR

5.4.1 Position reports should be made via ADSC, if the aircraft has ADS−C capability. The two types of ADS−C contracts that will be established with each aircraft are a twenty (20) minute Periodic Report Rate and a five (5) mile Lateral Deviation Event. This is in addition to normal waypoint reports.

5.4.2 Operators should not use CPDLC for position reports but it should be used for all other ATC communications. Position reports should be made via HF if ADS−C is not available.

5.5 Anchorage Oceanic FIR

5.5.1 All waypoints filed in Field 15 of the ICAO flight plan (route field) must be reported as a position report.

5.5.2 Position reports are to be made via ADS, CPDLC or Voice communication in that order of preference.

5.5.3 Aircraft with an active ADS connection must make a CPDLC position report when crossing the FIR boundary (inbound) to ensure CPDLC connectivity.

5.6 Anchorage Arctic FIR

5.6.1 Flights crossing the Anchorage Arctic FIR along 141W between 72N and 90N must file their 141W crossing point as a route element in field 15 of the ICAO flight plan.

5.6.2 All waypoints filed in Field 15 of the ICAO flight plan (route field) must be reported as a position report.

5.7 Houston Oceanic FIR

5.7.1 Position reports and the ability to communicate at any point of the route of flight is vital to the air traffic safety and control process. When flight planning, users are responsible to ensure that they will be capable of compliance. Inability to comply is in violation of ICAO requirements. The communication requirements for IFR flights within the Houston Oceanic Control Area are:

5.7.1.1 Functioning two−way radio communications equipment capable of communicating with at least one ground station from any point on the route;

5.7.1.2 Maintaining a continuous listening watch on the appropriate radio frequency; and

5.7.1.3 Reporting of mandatory points.

5.7.2 The following describes an area in the Houston CTA/FIR where reliable VHF air−to−ground communications below FL180 are not available:

5.7.2.1 26 30 00N 86 00 00W TO 26 30 00N 92 00 00W;

5.7.2.2 TO 24 30 00N 93 00 00W TO 24 30 00N 88 00 00W to;

5.7.2.3 TO 24 00 00N 86 00 00W TO BEGINNING POINT.

5.7.2.4 Communications within this area are available for all oceanic flights via HF.

NOTE−
The attention of pilots planning flights within the Houston CTA/FIR is directed to the communications and position reports requirements specified in the following ICAO Documents: Annex 2, Paragraphs 3.6.3 and 3.6.5; Annex 11, Paragraph 6.1.2; DOC 4444 Part 2 Paragraph 14; and DOC 7030 CAR Paragraph 3.

6. Satellite Voice (SATVOICE) Communication Services for Air Traffic Control (ATC)

6.1 The FAA provides Inmarsat and Iridium SATVOICE services for air−to−ground and ground−to−air calls directly with Oakland, New York, and Anchorage Air Route Traffic Control Centers (ARTCC) and New York and San Francisco RADIO. The FAA's SATVOICE services are supplemental to HF voice communication services.

6.2 The pilot must limit direct SATVOICE contact with ATC to distress and urgency situations, or when other means are not available, and communication is essential.

6.3 When unable to communicate on HF, the pilot may conduct normal and routine communications with ATC via New York RADIO or San Francisco RADIO on SATVOICE.

6.4 The aircraft SATVOICE equipment must be approved in accordance with Advisory Circular 20−150, Airworthiness Approval of Satellite Voice (SATVOICE) Equipment Supporting Air Traffic Service (ATS) Communication.

NOTE−
Portable satellite phones are NOT approved for normal and routine ATC communications.

6.5 The operator must use the SATVOICE equipment in accordance with ICAO Doc 10038, Satellite Voice Operations Manual (SVOM), with emphasis on the following:

6.5.1 If the flight intends to use SATVOICE capability, the operator must file the appropriate designator (that is, M1 or M3) in Item 10, and the ICAO aircraft address (that is, hexadecimal code) in Item 18 of the flight plan.

REFERENCE−
Aeronautical Information Manual, Chapter 5, Air Traffic Procedures.

6.5.2 The operator must establish procedures to ensure the flight maintains voice communications (that may include SATVOICE and any required HF SELCAL checks) with every ATS unit along the route of flight.

6.5.3 When using SATVOICE, the pilot must follow RTF conventions identical to HF/VHF communications in accordance with applicable standards and regulations pertaining to aeronautical communications.

6.5.4 Satellite service providers have assigned ICAO priority level 2/HGH/Q12 Operational high (second highest) to calls between aircraft and Air Navigation Service Providers. The pilot must verify the priority of the call and act only on ATC clearances/instructions from SATVOICE calls with priority level 2/HGH/Q12, and if in doubt terminate the call and initiate a new call for confirmation.

6.5.5 The pilot must answer SATVOICE calls when contacted either by the ARTCC or RADIO facility.

6.6 The SATVOICE short codes for ARTCCs and RADIO are in accordance with TBL ENR 7.1−2.

TBL ENR 7.1−2
SATVOICE Short Codes for ARTCCs and RADIO Facilities

<table>
<tr><th rowspan="2">Oceanic Control Area (OCA)</th><th colspan="2">ATC Direct
(only for distress, urgency, other means not available)</th><th colspan="2">ATC via RADIO Facility
(when unable to communicate on HF)</th></tr>
<tr><th>ARTCC</th><th>SATVOICE Short Code</th><th>RADIO Facility</th><th>SATVOICE Short Code</th></tr>
<tr><td>New York East</td><td>New York ARTCC</td><td>436695</td><td rowspan="2">New York RADIO</td><td rowspan="2">436623</td></tr>
<tr><td>New York West</td><td>New York ARTCC</td><td>436696</td></tr>
<tr><td>Oakland</td><td>Oakland ARTCC</td><td>436697</td><td rowspan="2">San Francisco RADIO</td><td rowspan="2">436625</td></tr>
<tr><td>Anchorage</td><td>Anchorage ARTCC</td><td>436602</td></tr>
</table>

7. Air−to−Air Frequency

7.1 Houston, San Juan and Miami FIRs

7.1.1 Frequency 123.45 MHz is the approved air−to−air VHF channel within the above FIRs. This frequency will be used for flights operating over remote and oceanic areas out of range of VHF ground stations to exchange necessary operational information and to facilitate the resolution of operational problems.

7.1.2 Frequency 123.45 MHz replaces the previously published frequencies used within the Houston, San Juan, and Miami FIRs. This change is necessary to comply with Amendment 74 to ICAO Annex 10, Volume II, which designated 123.45 as the global standard VHF air−to−air frequency.

8. Strategic Lateral Offset Procedures (SLOP) Within FAA−Controlled Airspace

8.1 These procedures have been developed in accordance with ICAO Document 4444 Procedures for Air Navigation Services – Air Traffic Management, paragraph 16.5.

8.2 The International Civil Aviation Organization (ICAO) has determined that allowing aircraft conducting oceanic flight to fly lateral offsets, in increments of 0.1 nautical mile (NM) up to a maximum of 2 NM right of centerline, will provide an additional safety margin and mitigate the risk of conflict when non−normal events, such as aircraft navigation errors, altitude deviation errors, and turbulence−induced altitude−keeping errors occur.

8.3 Pilots are authorized to use SLOP in the Anchorage Oceanic Control Area (OCA), Anchorage Flight Information Region (FIR), New York OCA, Oakland OCA, the airspace surrounding the island of Bermuda, the airspace controlled by the Honolulu Control Facility (HCF), and the airspace controlled by the Guam Combined Center Radar Approach Control (CERAP).

NOTE−
Within New York OCA West, pilots are not permitted to use SLOP on airway M201 between points VIRST and VEGAA, nor on airways Y485, Y488, Y493, and Y494.

8.3.1 Pilots should apply an offset outbound after reaching their cruising flight level and retain the offset until the top of descent unless ATC dictates otherwise.

8.3.2 For flights departing Hawaii, pilots should apply SLOP upon reaching their initial cruise flight level and they are within 70 NM of entering the Oakland Oceanic Control Area.

8.3.3 For flights arriving Hawaii, pilots should discontinue SLOP no later than 70 NM after entering HCF airspace, or when receiving radar vectors from HCF, whichever occurs first. Pilots of Hawaiian inter−island flights must not use SLOP.

8.3.4 Aircraft transiting Bermuda airspace, HCF airspace, or Guam CERAP airspace may remain on their established offset.

8.3.5 Aircraft flying in the Anchorage FIR may apply SLOP as follows:

8.3.5.1 Throughout the entire Anchorage Arctic FIR.

8.3.5.2 In those portions of the Anchorage Domestic and Anchorage Oceanic FIRs (including offshore control areas) which are more than twelve miles offshore.

8.3.5.3 Over the land area of the Alaska Peninsula west of 160° West longitude.

8.4 Along a route or track there will be 21 positions that an aircraft may fly: on centerline or at increments of 0.1 NM (for example, 0.1, 0.2, 0.3, 0.4...1.8, 1.9, 2.0) right of centerline out to a maximum offset of 2 NM. Offsets must not exceed 2 NM right of centerline. The intent of this procedure is to reduce risk (add safety margin) by distributing aircraft laterally across the 21 available positions.

8.4.1 Pilots must fly the track centerline if their aircraft does not have automatic offset programming capability. Pilots of aircraft unable to offset at 0.1 NM increments should fly on the track centerline, or at the 1.0 NM or 2.0 NM positions right of centerline when using SLOP.

8.4.2 Pilots should also fly one of the available offset positions described above to avoid wake turbulence. Pilots should use whatever means available to determine the best offset to fly. An aircraft overtaking a lower altitude aircraft on the same routing should offset within the confines of this procedure, if capable, so as to create the least amount of wake turbulence for the aircraft being overtaken.

8.4.3 Pilots must not offset to the left of centerline nor offset more than 2 NM right of centerline. They may contact other aircraft on VHF frequency 123.45, as necessary, to coordinate the best wake turbulence offset option.

NOTE−
Pilots should determine the action most appropriate to any given situation and, as always, have final authority and responsibility for the safe operation of the aircraft.

8.4.4 Pilots do not need ATC clearance to use SLOP nor are they required to inform ATC of their intent to use the procedure within the airspace identified in this paragraph.

ENR 7.2 Data Link Procedures

1. Oakland Oceanic Airspace

1.1 Oakland ARTCC has full CPDLC and ADS−C services in the entire Oakland Oceanic FIR for FANS−1/A capable aircraft. The Oakland Oceanic FIR log−on address is "KZAK;" the facility is "OAKODYA." CADS LOGON is not supported.

1.2 The use of CPDLC and ADS−C in the Oakland Oceanic FIR (KZAK) is only permitted by Inmarsat and Iridium customers. All other forms of data link connectivity are not authorized. Users must ensure that the proper data link code is filed in Item 10a of the ICAO FPL in order to indicate which satellite medium(s) the aircraft is equipped with. The identifier for Inmarsat is J5 and the identifier for Iridium is J7. If J5 or J7 is not included in the ICAO FPL, then the LOGON will be rejected by KZAK and the aircraft will not be able to connect.

1.3 Prior to entering the Oakland Oceanic FIR, contact San Francisco Radio and request a SELCAL check.

NOTE−

1. *Expect to receive primary and secondary HF frequency assignments from San Francisco Radio for the entire route of flight within the Oakland Oceanic FIR.*

2. *Pilots must maintain HF communications capability with San Francisco Radio at all times within the Oakland Oceanic FIR.*

1.4 Aircraft entering the Oakland Oceanic FIR data link service area from non−data link airspace should:

1.4.1 Log on to CPDLC at least 15 but not more than 45 minutes prior to entering the Oakland Oceanic FIR CPDLC service area.

1.4.2 Contact San Francisco Radio on HF for a SELCAL check.

1.5 Aircraft entering the Oakland Oceanic FIR data link service area from adjacent data link airspace should:

1.5.1 Determine the status of the CPDLC connection. If KZAK is the active center, the pilot must contact San Francisco Radio on HF for a SELCAL check.

1.5.2 If KZAK is not the active center, the pilot must, within 5 minutes after the boundary is crossed, terminate the CPDLC connection, then log on to KZAK, and contact San Francisco Radio on HF for a SELCAL check.

1.6 Flights overflying Honolulu Control Facility (HCF) airspace will receive an END SERVICE message prior to entering HCF airspace that will result in termination of CPDLC. Aircraft must re−log on to CPDLC prior to reentering Oakland Oceanic FIR airspace when HCF advises to contact en route communications or San Francisco Radio.

1.7 Flights overflying Guam Combined Center Radar Approach Control (CERAP) airspace should maintain the CPDLC connection with Oakland ARTCC; however, do not use CPDLC for ATC COM until Guam CERAP advises you to again contact en route communications or San Francisco Radio.

2. Anchorage Oceanic Airspace

2.1 Anchorage ARTCC has full CPDLC capability and normal service in the Arctic FIR for FANS−1/A capable aircraft within INMARSAT or Iridium coverage. The Anchorage Arctic FIR log-on address is "PAZN;" the facility is "ANCXFXA." CADS LOGON is not supported.

2.2 Anchorage ARTCC has full CPDLC capability and normal service in the Anchorage Domestic and Oceanic FIRs, South of N63 and west of W165 for FANS−1/A capable aircraft. The Anchorage log-on address is "PAZN;" the facility is "ANCATYA." CADS LOGON is not supported.

2.3 Prior to entering the Anchorage Oceanic FIR, contact San Francisco Radio and request a SELCAL check.

NOTE−
1. *HF service in the Anchorage Arctic FIR is provided via Gander Radio. San Francisco Radio maintains an HF Long−Distance Operational Control (LDOC) station at Barrow, Alaska that may be of use when the solar conditions inhibit normal communications via Gander. HF service in the Anchorage Oceanic FIR is provided via San Francisco Radio.*

2. *Expect to receive primary and secondary HF frequency assignments from San Francisco Radio for the entire route of flight when within the Anchorage Oceanic FIR.*

3. *Pilots must maintain HF communications capability with appropriate en route RADIO (San Francisco Radio or Gander) at all times within the Anchorage Arctic or Oceanic FIRs.*

3. New York Oceanic Airspace

3.1 New York ARTCC provides full CPDLC and ADS−C services throughout its Oceanic Airspace to FANS−1/A capable flights. The New York Oceanic FIR FANS LOGON address is “KZWY.” CADS LOGON is not supported. Flights should use ADS for position reporting and CPDLC for all other ATC communications while in the New York Oceanic Area.

3.2 The use of CPDLC and ADS−C in the New York Oceanic FIR (KZWY) is only permitted by Inmarsat and Iridium customers. All other forms of data link connectivity are not authorized. Users must ensure that the proper data link code is filed in Item 10a of the ICAO FPL in order to indicate which satellite medium(s) the aircraft is equipped with. The identifier for Inmarsat is J5 and the identifier for Iridium is J7. If J5 or J7 is not included in the ICAO FPL, then the LOGON will be rejected by KZWY and the aircraft will not be able to connect.

3.3 Prior to entering the New York Oceanic FIR, contact New York Radio and request a SELCAL check.

NOTE−
1. *Expect to receive primary and secondary HF frequency assignments from New York Radio for the route of flight within the data link service area.*

2. *Pilots must maintain HF communications capability with New York Radio at all times within the New York Oceanic FIR.*

3. *If not filed in the flight plan, NY Radio will request if the flight is CPDLC connected and confirm their exit point from the New York FIR.*

3.4 If the flight will exit ZNY oceanic airspace into domestic airspace (including over New York Bermuda RADAR):

3.4.1 Identify the flight as ADS and/or CPDLC connected;

3.4.2 If operating on the Organized Track System (OTS), state the track letter;

3.4.3 State the name of the next CTA/FIR to be entered along with the latitude and longitude or waypoint exit point leaving the ZNY FIR; and

3.4.4 Request a SELCAL check.

NOTE−
New York Radio may require flights to contact them at 60 West for HF frequency updates.

3.5 Aircraft entering the New York Oceanic FIR data link service area from non−data link airspace should:

3.5.1 LOGON to KZWY at least 15 minutes but not more than 45 minutes prior to entering the New York Oceanic CTA/FIR.

3.5.2 Prior to entering the New York Oceanic FIR contact New York Radio on HF or VHF providing the information as outlined in paragraph 3.3.

NOTE−
Do not send a CPDLC position report to confirm CDA prior to, or upon crossing, the FIR.

3.6 Aircraft entering the New York Oceanic FIR data link service area from adjacent data link airspace should:

3.6.1 Determine the status of the FANS connection when crossing the New York Oceanic FIR boundary.

1.10.3 Operators should review their Airplane Flight Manual (AFM), AFM Supplement or other appropriate documents and/or contact the airplane or avionics manufacturer to determine the RNP 10 time limit applicable to their aircraft. They will then need to determine its effect, if any, on their operation. Unless otherwise approved, the basic RNP 10 time limit is 6.2 hours between position updates for aircraft on which Inertial Navigation Systems (INS) or Inertial Reference Units (IRU) provide the only source of long range navigation. Extended RNP 10 time limits of 10 hours and greater are already approved for many IRU systems. FAA Advisory Circular 90−105 contains provisions for extending RNP 10 time limits.

1.11 Flight Planning Requirements

1.11.1 Operators must make ICAO flight plan annotations in accordance with this paragraph and, if applicable, Paragraph 1.7, Provisions for Accommodation of Non−RNP 10 Aircraft (Not Authorized RNP 10 or RNP 4).

1.11.2 ICAO flight plans must be filed for operation on oceanic routes and areas in the Houston Oceanic CTA/FIR, the Gulf of Mexico portion of the Miami CTA/FIR, the Monterrey CTA and Merida High CTA.

1.11.3 To inform ATC that they have obtained RNP 10 or RNP 4 authorization and are eligible for 50 NM lateral separation, operators must:

1.11.3.1 Annotate ICAO Flight Plan Item 10 (Equipment) with the letter "R"; and

1.11.3.2 Annotate Item 18 (Other Information) with, as appropriate, "PBN/A1" for RNP 10 aircraft or "PBN/L1" for RNP 4 aircraft (no space between letters and numbers).

NOTE−
The letter "R" indicates that the performance−based navigation specification (for example, RNP 10 or RNP 4) is specified in Item 18 following the indicator "PBN/."

1.12 Operator Procedures.

1.12.1 Operator procedures regarding RNP 10 and RNP 4 are contained in Advisory Circular 90−105 and ICAO PBN Manual, Volume II, Parts B and C, Chapter 1.

1.12.2 ICAO Doc 4444, Procedures for Air Navigation − Air Traffic Management, contains in−flight contingency procedures applicable in oceanic airspace, and is the source document for those procedures given the applicability of ICAO Rules of the Air over the high seas. The FAA publishes substantively identical contingency procedures in ENR 7.3 of the U.S. AIP and in Advisory Circular 91−70, Oceanic and Remote Continental Airspace Operations.

1.12.2.1 Contingency procedures include General Procedures, as well as Weather Deviation Procedures. The procedures are applicable to in−flight diversion and turn−back, loss of navigation capability, and weather avoidance scenarios.

1.12.2.2 Oceanic contingency procedures are important components of pilot training programs for oceanic operations.

1.12.3 When pilots suspect a navigation system malfunction, in addition to the actions suggested in ENR 7.3, the following actions should be taken:

1.12.3.1 Immediately inform ATC of navigation system malfunction or failure;

1.12.3.2 Accounting for wind drift, fly magnetic compass heading to maintain track; and

1.12.3.3 Request radar vectors from ATC, when available.

1.13 Pilot Report of Non−RNP 10 Status

1.13.1 The pilot must report the lack of RNP 10 or RNP 4 status in accordance with the following:

1.13.1.1 When the operator/aircraft is not authorized RNP 10 or RNP 4 (See paragraph 1.7.)

1.13.1.2 If approval status is requested by the controller:

1.13.1.3 The pilot must communicate approval status using the following phraseology in TBL ENR 7.4−1.

TBL ENR 7.4−1

Controller Request	Pilot Response
[*call sign*] “CONFIRM RNP 10 OR 4 APPROVED”	“AFFIRM RNP 10 APPROVED” or “AFFIRM RNP 4 APPROVED” as appropriate; or “NEGATIVE RNP 10”

2. Oakland Oceanic Airspace

2.1 The application of 50 NM lateral separation minima between aircraft authorized RNP 10 or RNP 4 is supported.

2.2 RNP 10 is required for all aircraft operating in the Central East Pacific (CEP) fixed track system and Pacific Organized Track System (PACOTS).

2.3 Flight planning guidelines for non−RNP 10 aircraft are published in the Pacific Chart Supplement.

3. Anchorage Oceanic FIR

3.1 The application of 50 NM lateral separation minima between aircraft authorized RNP 10 or RNP 4 is supported.

3.2 Non−RNP 10 approved aircraft may file via random track, at any altitude, at least 100 NM from the North Pacific (NOPAC) fixed track system. Aircraft entering the NOPAC should flight plan in accordance with Notices contained in the Alaska Chart Supplement.

4. Anchorage Arctic FIR

4.1 The application of 50 NM lateral separation minima between aircraft authorized RNP 10 is supported.

5. New York Oceanic Airspace

5.1 ATC applies 50 NM lateral separation between aircraft authorized RNP 10 or RNP 4 within New York Oceanic West airspace. ATC similarly applies 50 NM lateral separation in the Atlantic portion of the Miami Oceanic CTA as well as the San Juan CTA/FIR. ATC may apply 50 NM lateral separation between aircraft authorized RNP 10 or RNP 4 in New York Oceanic East.

5.2 Aircraft authorized RNP 10 or RNP 4 will have a better chance of obtaining their preferred routing and altitude in the most densely used airspace (that is, below FL 410) because of their ability to participate in ATC’s use of 50 NM lateral separation. Non−RNP 10 or non−RNP 4 aircraft will be spaced at least 90 NM laterally from other aircraft.

5.3 ATC will not apply 50 NM lateral separation on routes that are within ATC radar and VHF voice radio coverage. New York Oceanic airspace contains the following routes or route segments, which, at and above FL 310, are within ATC radar and VHF radio coverage:

5.3.1 M201 between VIRST and VEGAA.

5.3.2 Y485, Y488, Y493, and Y494. Refer also to ENR 7.10 for guidance on Y−routes.

NOTE−
While flying these route segments, pilots communicate directly with ATC using VHF voice radio, and domestic procedures apply. Strategic Lateral Offset Procedures (SLOP) are not to be used. Oceanic data link procedures described in ENR 7.2 (with KZWY log−on) are also not applicable.

5.4 Flight plan filing and addressing requirements are detailed in ENR 7.1, paragraphs 2. and 3.

5.5 Operators of aircraft not authorized RNP 10 or RNP 4 are expected to follow the procedures in ENR 7.4 paragraphs 1.7 and 1.13 for alerting ATC of the RNP status. Those operators are expected to indicate their "non−RNP 10" status in Item 18 of their ATC flight plan. In addition, pilots are expected to inform ATC of their "non−RNP 10" status on initial call to ATC and when reading back a clearance to descend through FL 410.

5.6 Filing a flight plan for, and conducting operations under, RNP 10 or RNP 4 navigation specifications require the aircraft to be equipped with two operable long−range navigation systems (LRNS). Operators who indicate RNP 10 or RNP 4 capability on their ATC flight plans, and subsequently experience an LRNS failure, must alert ATC to this failure. If the pilot believes the aircraft can continue to navigate along the cleared route with the single LRNS, ATC should be informed; as such, ATC may continue the aircraft on the cleared route.

5.7 In the event of LRNS failure, pilots must inform ATC of the failure and ensure ATC is aware the aircraft is no longer qualified for the RNP level indicated on the flight plan. In addition to this notification, pilots should request ATC amend their flight plan to remove the RNP capability indication in Item 18 of the flight plan.

5.8 Information regarding operations in the New York – West Oceanic CTA, the Atlantic portion of the Miami Oceanic CTA, and the San Juan Oceanic CTA can be found in the West Atlantic, Gulf of Mexico, and Caribbean Resource Guide for U.S. Operators, which is available at:
https://www.faa.gov/headquartersoffices/avs/wat-gomex-and-caribbean-resource-guide.

6. Provisions for Accommodation of Non−RNP 10 Aircraft (Not Authorized RNP 10 or RNP 4)

The guidance contained in paragraphs 1.7 and 1.13 of this section is applicable to all operations using Non−RNP 10 aircraft throughout the airspace covered by this document.

7. RNP 10 or RNP 4 Authorization Policy and Procedures for Aircraft and Operators

The guidance contained in paragraphs 1.8 and 1.9 of this section is applicable to operations throughout the airspace covered by this document.

8. Flight Planning Requirements

The guidance contained in paragraphs 1.7 and 1.11 of this section is applicable to operations throughout the airspace covered by this document.

9. Pilot and Dispatcher Basic and In−Flight Contingency Procedures

Information and guidance pertaining to in−flight contingency procedures, applicable in all the oceanic airspace covered by this AIP are provided in ENR 7.4, paragraph 1.12 as well as section ENR 7.3.

ENR 7.10 Y−Routes

1. Introduction

1.1 The FAA has established a network of area navigation (RNAV) routes to enhance efficiency of air traffic flow and control over the West Atlantic, Gulf of Mexico, the Bahamas, and Puerto Rico. These RNAV routes, charted as "Y" routes, exist largely, but not exclusively, within U.S. "offshore airspace." Operators may find U.S. offshore airspace labeled as "Atlantic High," "Atlantic Low," "Gulf of Mexico High," etc., on FAA IFR en route charts. In accordance with 14 CFR Part 71, § 71.1, § 71.33, and § 71.71, offshore airspace at and above 18,000 feet MSL is Class A airspace, while that offshore airspace below 18,000 feet MSL is Class E. The FAA normally uses domestic air traffic control procedures, vice oceanic procedures, in offshore airspace. Aircraft flying Y−routes will typically be within signal coverage of U.S. ground navigation facilities and ATC radar. Actual signal reception and radar detection are a function of aircraft altitude. The majority of Y−routes exist only in the upper altitude structure, i.e., Class A offshore airspace.

2. General Requirements

2.1 The Y−routes are designated RNAV 2 with GNSS required. Aircraft flying the Y−routes must be equipped with GNSS and able to meet RNAV 2 performance requirements. RNAV systems relying solely on DME/DME or inertial navigation are not suitable (and therefore not authorized) for use on any Y−route.

2.2 Pilots must indicate on their ATC flight plan at least the minimum equipment and capability required for RNAV 2 with GNSS. Item 10 of the flight plan must indicate G and R. Item 18 must indicate PBN/C2.

3. Operational Requirements

3.1 Pilots are expected to fly the route centerline, as defined by the aircraft RNAV system.

3.2 Operators must check predicted RAIM availability for the expected duration of their flight on a Y−route. Five (5) minutes is the maximum predicted continuous loss of RAIM allowed for flight on a Y−route.

4. Pilot Knowledge

4.1 Advisory Circular (AC) 90−100, U.S. Terminal and En Route Area Navigation (RNAV) Operations, contains pilot knowledge subject matter that is generally applicable to any RNAV operation. General aviation pilots in particular should use the RNAV subject matter contained in AC 90−100 in preparation for any flight on an RNAV route, including Y−routes.

ENR 7.11 Atlantic High Offshore Airspace Offshore Routes Supporting Florida Airspace Optimization

1. Introduction

1.1 On 27 October 2005, nine new directional offshore Class I area navigation (RNAV) Atlantic Routes (ARs) were established between Florida and northeastern US airport pairs. These routes support the Florida Airspace Optimization project and are designed to relieve traffic congestion and reduce in−trail delays. The nine new offshore RNAV routes, designated AR15, AR16, AR17, AR18, AR19, AR21, AR22, AR23 and AR24, were established between FL240 and FL600 inclusive.

1.2 None of the waypoints will be compulsory reporting points since the new and revised routes are entirely within radar coverage.

1.3 Southbound routes include AR15, AR17, AR19, and AR22, while northbound routes include AR16 and AR18. AR23, AR24 are bidirectional.

1.4 Air traffic control services for these routes in offshore airspace is provided by Washington, Jacksonville and Miami ARTCCs.

2. Filing Routes

2.1 Flights departing from and landing at airports within the domestic U.S. should file to conform with the appropriate Preferred IFR Routes listed in the Chart Supplements. International traffic southbound from the Wilmington VORTAC/Dixon NDB (ILM/DIW) area filing over MCLAW, FUNDI, Fish Hook NDB (FIS), or CANOA should file AR17. International traffic southbound from the ILM/DIW area filing over Freeport VOR (ZFP) or URSUS should file AR23 or AR24. Traffic originating south of Miami, Florida, filing over the ILM/DIW area should file AR16, AR18, AR23 or AR24.

3. Operational Requirements

3.1 Operations on these AR routes requires the use of area navigation (RNAV) systems approved for IFR enroute operations and which incorporate GPS and/or inertial system inputs. For U.S. commercial operators, i.e., those operating under 14 CFR part 91 Subpart K, 121, 125, and 135, use of RNAV systems must be authorized by their Operations Specifications, Management Specifications, or Letters of Authorization. For operators flying under part 91, their Airplane Flight Manual, Pilot Operating Handbook, or other manufacturer−provided documentation should indicate that the RNAV system meets the requirements for IFR enroute RNAV operations in Advisory Circular (AC) 20−138 or AC 90−100, or meets the requirements for inertial navigation systems in 14 CFR part 121 appendix G.

3.2 Pilots should fly the route centerlines at all times and must notify Air Traffic Control (ATC) of any loss of navigation capability that affects the aircraft's ability to track the route centerline.

3.3 ATC will provide radar separation for these routes. In the event of loss of radar, ATC will advise the aircraft and apply appropriate separation.

3.4 Pilots of aircraft without GPS and who therefore must rely on inertial RNAV systems to fly on these AR routes, are limited to one hour of operation between position updates, e.g., DME/DME update of the position in their RNAV system. This one−hour time period starts when the inertial system is placed in the navigation mode and applies en route between position updates. Pilots unable to obtain a position update for their RNAV system must inform ATC prior to one hour from the last update.

3.5 Some AR routes are co−designated Y routes, e.g., AR19/Y291. The route filed in the flight plan governs the navigation equipment and performance requirements. Filing for Y291 on a route designated AR19/Y291 for example, requires the aircraft to be equipped with GNSS and flown with RNAV 2 performance on that route, in accordance with section ENR 7.10.

ENR 7.14 Gulf of Mexico RNAV Routes Q100, Q102, and Q105

1. Introduction

The three Q routes over the northern portion of the Gulf of Mexico, Q100, Q102, and Q105, are not the same as the RNAV Q routes over the continental United States. There are some differences in operating procedures when flying the Gulf Q routes.

2. Operational Requirements

2.1 Operations on these Gulf Q routes requires the use of area navigation (RNAV) systems approved for IFR enroute operations and which incorporate GPS and/or inertial system inputs. For U.S. commercial operators, i.e., those operating under 14 CFR part 91 subpart K, 121, 125, and 135, use of RNAV systems must be authorized by their Operations Specifications, Management Specifications, or Letters of Authorization. For operators flying under part 91, their Airplane Flight Manual, Pilot Operating Handbook, or other manufacturer−provided documentation should indicate that the RNAV system meets the requirements for IFR enroute RNAV operations published in Advisory Circular (AC) 20−138 or AC 90−100, or meets the requirements for inertial navigation systems in 14 CFR part 121 appendix G.

2.2 Pilots should fly the route centerlines at all times and must notify Air Traffic Control (ATC) of any loss of navigation capability that affects the aircraft's ability to track the route centerline.

2.3 Pilots of aircraft without GPS and who therefore must rely on inertial RNAV systems to fly on a Gulf Q route, are limited to 1.5 hours of operation between position updates, e.g., DME/DME update of the position in their RNAV system. This 1.5−hour time period starts when the inertial system is placed in the navigation mode and applies en route between position updates. Pilots unable to obtain a position update for their RNAV system must inform ATC prior to 1.5 hours from the last update.

2.4 Routes Q100 and Q102 are co−designated Y280 and Y290 respectively. The route filed in the flight plan governs the navigation equipment and performance requirements. Filing for Y280 on the route designated Q100/Y280 requires the aircraft to be equipped with GNSS and flown with RNAV 2 performance on that route, in accordance with section ENR 7.10.

NOTE−
ATC normally provides radar monitoring along the three Gulf Q routes. Pilots can expect ATC to advise them when radar monitoring is unavailable and to adjust aircraft separation as necessary.

ENR 8.2 Small Unmanned Aircraft System (sUAS)

1. Part 107 sUAS and Recreational Flyers

1.1 Part 107 UAS. A regulatory first step for civil non−recreational UAS operations. To fly under 14 CFR Part 107, the UAS must weigh less than 55 pounds and the operator (called a remote pilot) must pass a knowledge test. Also, the UAS must be registered. Part 107 enabled the vast majority of routine sUAS operations, allowing flight within VLOS while maintaining flexibility to accommodate future technological innovations. Part 107 allows sUAS operations for many different purposes without requiring airworthiness certification, exemptions, or a COA for Class G airspace access. Part 107 includes the opportunity for individuals to request waivers for certain provisions of the rules, for example, Beyond Visual Line Of Sight (BVLOS). Part 107 also has specific restrictions which are not subject to waiver, such as the prohibition of the carriage or transport of Hazardous Materials (HAZMAT).

1.2 Recreational Flyer UAS:

1.2.1 The FAA considers recreational UAS to be aircraft that fall within the statutory and regulatory definitions of an aircraft, in that they are devices that are used or intended to be used for flight in the air. As aircraft, these devices generally are subject to FAA oversight and enforcement.

REFERENCE−
49 USC 40102, Definitions.
14 CFR Part 1, Definitions and Abbreviations.

1.2.2 Recreational aircraft may operate in Class G airspace where the aircraft is flown from the surface to not more than 400 feet AGL, and the operator must comply with all airspace restrictions and prohibitions. The only exception to this altitude restriction in Class G airspace is at FAA−recognized fixed sites and sanctioned events, with specifically approved procedures for flights above 400 feet AGL.

NOTE−
Higher altitude airspace authorizations for Recreational Flyers are obtained through the FAA's DroneZone website at: https://faadronezone.faa.gov/#/.

1.2.3 The Recreational UAS Safety Test (TRUST) module was developed in consultation with multiple UAS stakeholders and through interested party feedback. TRUST is available electronically, has no minimum age limit, and is provided by volunteer test administrators, vetted by the FAA. See ENR 8.5, paragraph 1., UAS Pilot Certification and Requirements for Part 107 and Recreational Flyers, for further information on TRUST. Additional information regarding TRUST is available at the FAA's The Recreational UAS Safety Test website.

NOTE−
The FAA's The Recreational UAS Safety Test website may be viewed at: https://www.faa.gov/uas/recreational_fliers/knowledge_test_updates/.

1.2.4 Recreational UAS weighing more than .55 lbs must be registered. This can be done electronically through the FAA's DroneZone website. Owners must then label all aircraft with their assigned registration number on the exterior of their aircraft so that the registration can be clearly seen and read from a reasonable distance. For more information on registering UAS See ENR 8.2, paragraph 2., Registration Requirements, for more information on registering UAS.

NOTE−
The FAA's DroneZone website may be viewed at: https://faadronezone.faa.gov/#/.

2. Registration Requirements

2.1 Nearly all UAS flown in the NAS are required to be registered in the FAA aircraft registration database. UAS weighing 55 pounds MGOW or more must be registered under 14 CFR Part 47, Aircraft Registration, while UAS less than 55 pounds may be registered under the FAA's newer 14 CFR Part 48 online system.

NOTE−
The FAA's Aircraft Registration Unmanned Aircraft (UA) website may be viewed at: https://www.faa.gov/licenses_certificates/aircraft_certification/aircraft_registry/UA/.

REFERENCE−
14 CFR Part 47, Aircraft Registration.

2.2 Registering UAS under 14 CFR Part 47. For those UAS, which do not meet the weight stipulations for registration under 14 CFR Part 48, registration is accomplished under 14 CFR Part 47. 14 CFR Part 47 registration will result in an "N"−number like those assigned to manned aircraft. To learn more about the process and to register a UAS under Part 47, see the FAA's Aircraft Registration Unmanned Aircraft (UA) website. If desired by the owner, any UAS may be registered under 14 CFR Part 47.

NOTE−
The FAA's Aircraft Registration Unmanned Aircraft (UA) website may be viewed at: https://www.faa.gov/licenses_certificates/aircraft_certification/aircraft_registry/UA/.

2.3 Registering UAS under 14 CFR Part 48. For most operators of sUAS (those UAS weighing less than 55 pounds MGOW), registration under 14 CFR Part 48, Registration and Marking Requirements for Small UA, will be most expedient and the least expensive. 14 CFR Part 48 registrants are those UAS flyers operating under either of the following statutes:

2.3.1 Part 107. Under the provisions of Part 107, all UAS must be registered regardless of weight. Operations under Part 107 are generally those involving commerce, but can be for recreation as well.

2.3.2 Recreational Flyers. UAS that are flown exclusively for recreational purposes must be registered if they weigh more than 0.55 pounds (250 grams).

NOTE−
1. *If you are not sure what kind of a drone flyer you are, refer to the FAA's User Identification Tool at: https://www.faa.gov/uas/getting_started/user_identification_tool/ , or visit the FAA Getting Started webpage at: https://www.faa.gov/uas/getting_started/ .*

2. *Registrations cannot be transferred between 14 CFR Part 107 UAS and 49 USC 44809 UAS.*

REFERENCE−
14 CFR Part 48, Registration and Marking Requirements for Small Unmanned Aircraft.

2.4 How to Register a UAS under 14 CFR Part 48:

2.4.1 To register a UAS online under Part 48, refer to the FAA's DroneZone website. When registering a UAS online under Part 48, you will need to select registration in either Part 107 or the exception for recreational flyers.

2.4.2 Registration fees for Part 107 registration are per sUAS, and the registration is valid for three years. Each Part 107 registered sUAS will receive a different number. Recreational flyer registration fees are per UAS and valid for three years, but the same registration number can be applied to any UAS in the registrant's ownership. The recreational flyer will receive one registration number that can be used for all UAS flown by that person. In order to register, a person must be 13 years of age or older and be a U. S. citizen or legal permanent resident. If the owner is less than 13 years of age, another person 13 years of age or older must register the UAS and that person must be a U.S. citizen or legal permanent resident.

2.4.3 An FAA registration certificate will be issued after UAS registration. The registration certificate (either paper copy or digital copy) must be available for inspection during all flight operations. If an individual other than the registered owner operates a UAS the registration certificate (either paper copy or digital copy) must also be available for inspection during all flight operations. Federal law requires registered UAS operators, if asked, to show their certificate of registration to any federal, state, or local law enforcement officer. Failure to register a UAS that requires registration may result in regulatory and criminal penalties. The FAA may assess civil penalties up to $27,500.

NOTE−
The FAA's DroneZone website may be viewed at: https://faadronezone.faa.gov/#/ .

2.5 Labeling a UAS with a Registration Number. All UAS requiring registration must be marked with a registration number before being flown. The UAS registration number can be applied to the aircraft by

PART 3 − AERODROMES (AD)

AD 0.

AD 0.1 Preface − Not applicable
AD 0.2 Record of AIP Amendments − See GEN 0.2−1
AD 0.3 Record of AIP Supplements − Not applicable

AD 0.4 Checklist of Pages

PAGE	DATE
PART 3 − AERODROMES (AD)	
AD 0	
AD 0.4−1	20 FEB 25
AD 0.6−1	20 FEB 25
AD 1	
1.1−1	21 MAR 24
1.1−2	21 MAR 24
1.1−3	21 MAR 24
1.1−4	21 MAR 24
1.1−5	21 MAR 24
1.1−6	21 MAR 24
1.1−7	21 MAR 24
1.1−8	21 MAR 24
1.1−9	21 MAR 24
1.1−10	21 MAR 24
1.1−11	21 MAR 24
1.1−12	21 MAR 24
1.1−13	21 MAR 24
1.1−14	21 MAR 24
1.1−15	21 MAR 24
1.1−16	21 MAR 24
1.1−17	21 MAR 24
1.1−18	21 MAR 24
1.1−19	21 MAR 24
1.1−20	21 MAR 24
1.1−21	21 MAR 24
1.1−22	21 MAR 24
1.1−23	21 MAR 24
1.1−24	21 MAR 24
1.1−25	21 MAR 24
1.1−26	21 MAR 24
1.1−27	21 MAR 24
1.1−28	21 MAR 24
1.1−29	21 MAR 24
1.1−30	21 MAR 24
1.1−31	21 MAR 24
1.1−32	21 MAR 24
1.1−33	21 MAR 24
1.1−34	21 MAR 24

PAGE	DATE
1.1−35	21 MAR 24
1.1−36	21 MAR 24
1.1−37	21 MAR 24
1.1−38	21 MAR 24
1.1−39	21 MAR 24
1.1−40	21 MAR 24
1.1−41	21 MAR 24
1.1−42	21 MAR 24
1.1−43	21 MAR 24
1.1−44	21 MAR 24
1.1−45	21 MAR 24
1.1−46	21 MAR 24
1.1−47	21 MAR 24
1.1−48	21 MAR 24
1.1−49	21 MAR 24
1.1−50	21 MAR 24
1.1−51	21 MAR 24
1.1−52	21 MAR 24
1.1−53	21 MAR 24
AD 2	
AD 2−1	20 FEB 25
AD 3	
AD 3−1	20 FEB 25

PAGE	DATE
APPENDIX	
Appendix 1−1	5 SEP 24
Appendix 1−2	5 SEP 24
Appendix 1−3	5 SEP 24
Appendix 1−4	5 SEP 24
Appendix 1−5	5 SEP 24
Appendix 1−6	5 SEP 24
Appendix 1−7	5 SEP 24
Appendix 1−8	5 SEP 24
Appendix 1−9	5 SEP 24
Appendix 1−10	5 SEP 24
Appendix 1−11	5 SEP 24
Appendix 1−12	5 SEP 24
Appendix 1−13	5 SEP 24
Appendix 1−14	5 SEP 24
Appendix 1−15	5 SEP 24
Appendix 1−16	5 SEP 24
Appendix 1−17	5 SEP 24
Appendix 1−18	5 SEP 24
Appendix 1−19	5 SEP 24
Appendix 1−20	5 SEP 24
Appendix 1−21	5 SEP 24
Appendix 1−22	5 SEP 24
Appendix 1−23	20 FEB 25
INDEX	
Index I−1	20 FEB 25
Index I−2	20 FEB 25
Index I−3	20 FEB 25
Index I−4	20 FEB 25
Index I−5	20 FEB 25
Index I−6	20 FEB 25
Index I−7	20 FEB 25
Index I−8	20 FEB 25

AD 0.6 Table of Contents to Part 3

AD 2. AERODROMES

Aerodrome information can be found on the FAA website at: https://www.faa.gov/air_traffic/flight_info/aeronav/aero_data/Airport_Data/ or the Electronic National Airspace System Resource (eNASR) at: https://enasr.faa.gov/eNASR/nasr/ Airport diagrams can also be found in the Terminal Procedures Publication (TPP) at: https://www.faa.gov/air_traffic/flight_info/aeronav/digital_products/dtpp/. For additional aerodrome information, see the Chart Supplement at: https://www.faa.gov/air_traffic/flight_info/aeronav/digital_products/dafd/.

AD 3. HELIPORTS

Heliport information can be found on the FAA website at https://www.faa.gov/air_traffic/flight_info/aeronav/aero_data/Airport_Data/ or the Electronic National Airspace System Resource (eNASR) at: https://enasr.faa.gov/eNASR/nasr/ . For additional heliport information, see the Chart Supplement at https://www.faa.gov/air_traffic/flight_info/aeronav/digital_products/dafd/.

FIG 1−1

FAA Form 7233−4, Pre−Flight Pilot Checklist and International Flight Plan

PRIVACY ACT STATEMENT: This statement is provided pursuant to the Privacy Act of 1974, 5 USC § 552a: The authority for collecting this information is contained in 49 U.S.C. §§ 40113, 44702, 44703, 44709, and 14 C.F.R. Part 6 - [Part 61, 63, 65, or 67. The principal purpose for which the information is intended to be used is to allow you to submit your flight plan. Submission of the data is voluntary. Failure to provide all required information may result in you not being able to submit your flight plan. The information collected on this form will be included in a Privacy Act System of Records known as DOT/FAA 847, titled "Aviation Records on Individuals" and will be subject to the routine uses published in the System of Records Notice (SORN) for DOT/FAA 847 (see www.dot.gov/privacy/privacyactnotices).

Paperwork Reduction Act Statement: A federal agency may not conduct or sponsor, and a person is not required to respond to, nor shall a person be subject to a penalty for failure to comply with a collection of information subject to the requirements of the Paperwork Reduction Act unless that collection of information displays a currently valid OMB Control Number. The OMB Control Number for this information collection is 2120-0026. Public reporting for this collection of information is estimated to be approximately 2.5 minutes per response, including the time for reviewing instructions, searching existing data sources, gathering and maintaining the data needed, completing and reviewing the collection of information. All responses to this collection of information are required to obtain or retain a benefit per 14 CFR Part 91. Send comments regarding this burden estimate or any other aspect of this collection of information, including suggestions for reducing this burden to the FAA at: 800 Independence Ave. SW, Washington, DC 20591, Attn: Information Collection Clearance Officer, ASP-110.

Pre-Flight Pilot Checklist

Aircraft Identification

Time of Briefing

		Remarks
Weather (Destination) (Alternate)	☐ Present	
	☐ Forecast	
Weather (En Route)	☐ Present	
	☐ Forecast	
	☐ Pireps	
Winds Aloft	Best Crzg. Alt.	
Nav. Aid & Comm. Status.	☐ Destination	
	☐ En Route	
Airport Conditions	☐ Destination	
	☐ Alternate	
ADIZ	☐ Airspace Restrictions	

Report Weather Conditions Aloft

Report immediately weather conditions encountered---particularly cloud tops, upper cloud layers, thunderstorms, ice, turbulence, winds and temperature

Position	Altitude	Time	Weather Conditions

Civil Aircraft Pilots

FAR Part 91 states that each person operating a civil aircraft of U.S. registry over the high seas shall comply with Annex 2 to the Convention of International Civil Aviation, International Standards - Rules of the Air. Annex 2 requires the submission of a flight plan containing items 1-1 9 prior to operating any flight across international waters. Failure to file could result in a civil penalty not to exceed $1,000 for each violation (Section 901 of the Federal Aviation Act of 1958, as amended).

International briefing information may not be current or complete. Data should be secured, at the first opportunity, from the country in whose airspace the flight will be conducted.

U S Department of Transportation
Federal Aviation Administration

International Flight Plan

PRIORITY
<=FF

ADDRESSEE(S)
<=

FILING TIME

ORIGINATOR
<=

SPECIFIC IDENTIFICATION OF ADDRESSEE(S) AND / OR ORIGINATOR

3 MESSAGE TYPE
<=(FPL

7 AIRCRAFT IDENTIFICATION
—

8 FLIGHT RULES
—

TYPE OF FLIGHT
— <=

9 NUMBER
—

TYPE OF AIRCRAFT

WAKE TURBULENCE CAT.
/

10 EQUIPMENT
— / <=

13 DEPARTURE AERODROME
—

TIME
<=

15 CRUISING SPEED
—

LEVEL

ROUTE

<=

16 DESTINATION AERODROME

TOTAL EET
HR MIN

ALTN AERODROME

2ND ALTN AERODROME
<=

18 OTHER INFORMATION
—

<=

SUPPLEMENTARY INFORMATION (NOT TO BE TRANSMITTED IN FPL MESSAGES)

19 ENDURANCE
HR MIN
—E/

PERSONS ON BOARD
P/

EMERGENCY RADIO
UHF VHF ELT
R/ U V E

SURVIVAL EQUIPMENT
POLAR DESERT MARITIME JUNGLE
/ P D M J

JACKETS
LIGHT FLUORES UHF VHF
/ L F U V

DINGHIES
NUMBER CAPACITY COVER
D / C

COLOR
<=

AIRCRAFT COLOR AND MARKINGS
A/

REMARKS
N / <=

PILOT-IN-COMMAND
C/)<=

FILED BY

ACCEPTED BY

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION

FAA Form 7233-4 (7/15)

SAMPLE

NOTE−
Current FAA Form 7233−4 available at https://www.faa.gov/forms/.

A

B

C

D

E

F

G

H

I

J

L

M

N

O

P

R

S

T

U

V

W